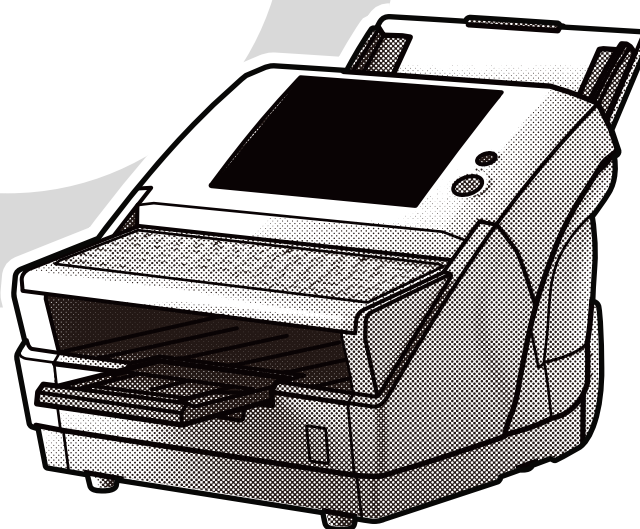


fi-6010N Network Scanner

iScanner

Operator's Guide



Contents

Copyright	xvii
Introduction	xxiii
■ Manuals	xxiii
■ Regulatory Information	xxiv
■ Trademarks	xxvi
■ Notice of Liability	xxvii
■ Safety Precautions	xxix
 Chapter 1 Scanner Overview	 1
1.1 Scanner Features	2
■ Basic uses for scanned documents	2
■ Configure and manage with ease	3
■ Advanced security measures	3
1.2 Part Names and Functions	4
1.2.1 External Parts	4
1.2.2 Internal Parts	6
1.3 User Types and Operations	7
1.4 System Requirements	11
1.4.1 Requirements for Admin Tool.....	11
■ Software	11
■ Hardware	11
1.4.2 Requirements for Central Admin Console	12
■ Software	12
■ Hardware	12

1.4.3	Requirements for Central Admin Server.....	13
	■ Software	13
	■ Hardware	13
1.4.4	Requirements for Related Servers	14
	■ LDAP Server	15
	■ SMTP Server	15
	■ File Server	15
	■ FTP Server	15
	■ Print Server	16
	■ DNS Server	16
	■ WINS Server	16
	■ DHCP Server	16
	■ NTP Server	16
	■ Fax Server	16
1.4.5	Network Requirements	17
1.4.6	Scanner Requirements for iScanner Central Admin.....	17
1.4.7	Port Number List.....	18

Chapter 2 Basic Scanner Operations 21

2.1 Using the Scanner Buttons 22

2.1.1	Using the Startup Button	22
2.1.2	Using the Top Cover [SCAN] Button	23

2.2 Using the LCD Touch Panel 24

2.3 Using the Keyboard 25

2.3.1	Using the Keyboard: Administrator	25
2.3.2	Using the Keyboard: Regular Users	26

Chapter 3 Administrator Operations (Overview) 27

3.1 Operating and Managing Scanners 28

3.2 Required Scanner Function Settings 29

Chapter 4	Administrator Operations (Touch Panel and Admin Tool)	31
4.1	Administrator Screens via the Touch Panel	32
4.1.1	Menu Tabs and Buttons	32
4.1.2	Input Fields and Entering Characters	33
4.2	Administrator Screens via the Network Interface	34
4.2.1	Menu Tabs and Buttons	34
4.2.2	Input Fields and Entering Characters	36
4.3	iScanner Administrator Login: via the Touch Panel	37
4.4	Setting up for Administrator Access via the Admin Tool	39
4.4.1	Checking the Internet Explorer cache settings	39
4.4.2	Setting the Internet Explorer trusted sites	40
4.4.3	Installing the Admin Tool	42
4.4.4	Uninstalling the Admin Tool	47
4.5	iScanner Administrator Login: via the Admin Tool	48
4.6	Using the System Settings Menus	51
4.6.1	Calibrating the Touch Panel	51
4.6.2	Setting the Scanner Name	54
4.6.3	Setting the Language	57
4.6.4	Setting the Region/Timezone	58
4.6.5	Setting the Date/Time	59
4.6.6	Setting the Time to Standby Mode	61
4.6.7	Setting the Login Method	63
4.6.8	Changing the Admin Password	66
4.6.9	Setting a File Name Format	67
4.6.10	Setting the Multifeed Detection Method	71

4.6.11	Setting Scanning Performance	74
	■ Offset Settings	75
	■ Length Magnification Setting	75
4.7	Using the Network Settings Menus	76
4.7.1	Giving the Scanner an IP Address	76
4.7.2	Setting the Admin Network	78
4.7.3	Setting a Central Admin Server	80
4.7.4	Setting the DNS Server	82
4.7.5	Setting the WINS Server	84
4.7.6	Setting the NTP Server	85
4.7.7	Setting the Proxy Server	87
4.7.8	Setting the Login LDAP Server	88
	■ LDAP Search Target	89
4.7.9	Setting the e-Mail LDAP Server	93
4.7.10	Setting the LDAP Search Parameters	95
4.7.11	Setting the e-Mail Server (SMTP Server)	100
4.7.12	Setting the Fax Server	101
4.7.13	Setting the Network Printers	102
	■ Checking the Printer Drivers	103
	■ Setting the Printer Properties	104
	■ Registering a Network Printer (Network Tree)	107
	■ Registering a Network Printer (Network Path)	110
	■ Renaming a Network Printer	112
	■ Removing a Network Printer	113
	■ Viewing the Printer Details	114
4.7.14	Setting the Network Folders	115
	■ Registering a Network Folder (Network Tree)	116
	■ Registering a Network Folder (Network Path)	119
	■ Registering a Network Folder (FTP Path)	121
	■ Renaming a Network Folder	124
	■ Removing a Network Folder	126
	■ Viewing the Network Folder Details	127
4.7.15	Setting the Destination for Alert Notifications	128
4.7.16	Checking the Network Connection with a Ping Test	129

4.7.17	Checking the Network Operating Status	131
	■ Checking the Network Status	131
	■ Setting the Link Speed/Duplex Mode	132
4.8	Using the Device Status Menus	133
4.8.1	Viewing the System Status	133
4.8.2	Viewing the Usage Status	134
	■ Viewing the Status of Consumable Parts	134
	■ Resetting the Usage Counter	135
4.8.3	Viewing the Add-in Status	136
4.9	Using the Operation Logs Menus	137
4.9.1	Managing User Logs	137
	■ Viewing the User Log Details	137
	■ Downloading the User Logs in CSV Format	139
	■ Clearing the User Logs	139
4.9.2	Managing the System Log	140
	■ Viewing the System Log Details	140
	■ Downloading the System Log in CSV Format	142
	■ Clearing the System Log	142
4.10	Using the Maintenance Menus	143
4.10.1	Maintaining the User Data Store	143
	■ Backing up the User Data Store	145
	■ Restoring the User Data Store	147
	■ Clearing the User Data Store	148
4.10.2	Maintaining the System Settings	149
	■ Downloading the System Settings in CSV Format	149
	■ Backing up System Settings	150
	■ Restoring System Settings	151
	■ Resetting Factory Defaults	152
4.10.3	Updating the Scanner's System Software	153
4.10.4	Installing/Uninstalling an Add-in Module	155
	■ Installing an Add-in Module	155
	■ Uninstalling an Add-in Module	156
4.10.5	Setting the Information Output Level	157

4.10.6	Obtaining Technical Support	158
--------	-----------------------------------	-----

4.11	Setting Job Features	159
-------------	-----------------------------------	------------

4.11.1	Job Setting Quick User Guide	161
4.11.2	Setting a Job Sequence	163
	■ Adding a job sequence	163
	■ Cloning a job sequence	171
	■ Editing a job sequence	171
	■ Deleting a job sequence	172
	■ Filtering job sequences	172
	■ Filtering the LDAP List	173
4.11.3	Setting a Job Menu	176
	■ Adding a job menu	176
	■ Cloning a job menu	180
	■ Editing a job menu	180
	■ Deleting a job menu	181
	■ Viewing the detailed settings for a job menu	181
4.11.4	Setting a Job Group	182
	■ Adding a job group	182
	■ Editing a job group	187
	■ Deleting a job group	187
	■ Viewing the detailed settings for a job group	188
	■ Assigning job menus to users not included in a job group	188
	■ Filtering the LDAP List	190

Chapter 5	Administrator Operations (Central Admin Console)	193
------------------	---	------------

5.1	Using Central Admin Console Window	194
------------	---	------------

5.1.1	Buttons	194
5.1.2	Input Fields and Entering Characters	195

5.2	Central Admin Console Quick Guide	196
------------	--	------------

5.3	Pre-settings for Using Central Admin Console	198
5.3.1	Installing the Central Admin Server Software.....	198
	■ Importing the Certificate	201
5.3.2	Installing the Central Admin Console	202
5.3.3	Setting up a Firewall for the Central Admin Server	205
5.3.4	Configuring the Scanner Settings for Central Admin Management.....	205
5.3.5	Uninstalling the Central Admin Server Software/Console	206
	■ Uninstalling the Central Admin Server Software	206
	■ Uninstalling the Central Admin Console	206
5.4	Central Admin Server Login: via the Central Admin Console	207
5.4.1	Using Central Admin Console Main Window.....	210
	■ Links and Buttons	210
	■ Lists	212
5.5	Setting the Central Admin Server	215
	■ [Change Administrator Password] button	216
	■ [User Roaming Data (Select & Clear)] button	217
	■ Scanner Registration	218
	■ Network Connection	218
	■ LDAP Server	219
	■ Data Import/Export	219
	■ Log Retention	219
	■ [OK] button	219
	■ [Cancel] button	219
5.6	Setting Scanner Configuration	220
	■ [Import Config] button	222
	■ [Export Config] button	223
	■ Filter Conditions	223
	■ [New] button	224
	■ [Clone] button	225
	■ [Edit] button	225
	■ [Delete] button	225

■ [Select All] button	225
■ [Deselect All] button	226
■ Scanner information list	226
■ [Back] button	227
5.7 Updating the System	228
■ Registered System Update	228
■ Upload & Release a New System Update	228
■ [Back] button	229
5.8 Installing an Add-in	230
■ Add-in Groups	230
■ Registered Add-in Module	230
■ Upload & Release a New Add-in	231
■ [Back] button	231
5.9 Updating the Scanner System Settings	232
■ Settings Groups	232
■ Registered Scanner Settings	232
■ Upload & Release a New Set of Scanner Settings	233
■ [Back] button	235
5.10 Setting the Job Mode	236
■ Registered Job Mode Settings	236
■ Create & Release a New Set of Job Mode Settings	237
■ [Back] button	238
5.11 Viewing Scanner-Side Status	239
■ Filter Conditions	239
■ [Call Now] button	240
■ [Clear Errors] button	240
■ [Select All] button	240
■ [Deselect All] button	240
■ Scanner list	240
■ [Back] button	241

5.12 Viewing Event Log	242
■ [Download] button	242
■ [Clear Log] button	242
■ Filter Conditions	242
■ Event Log	243
■ [Back] button	243
5.13 Maintaining Central Admin Settings	244
5.13.1 Backing Up Central Admin Settings	244
5.13.2 Restoring Central Admin Settings	246
5.13.3 Obtaining Technical Support on the Central Admin Server	247
Chapter 6 Regular User Operations	249
6.1 Loading Documents	250
6.1.1 How to Load Documents	250
6.1.2 Loading Documents Using a Carrier Sheet	253
6.2 Using Touch Panel Screens: Regular User	256
6.2.1 Common Buttons and Indicators	256
6.2.2 Regular User Settings Overview	257
6.2.3 Main Menu Screen	258
6.2.4 Job Menu Screen	260
6.2.5 Input Fields and Entering Characters	261
6.3 Logging in: Regular User Mode	262
6.4 Sending the Scanned Data by e-Mail	265
6.4.1 Selecting an e-Mail Address from the e-Mail Address Book	269
6.4.2 Adding a Contact to the e-Mail Address Book	273
6.4.3 Editing a Contact in the e-Mail Address Book	275
6.4.4 Deleting a Contact from the e-Mail Address Book	276

6.5	Sending the Scanned Data by Fax	277
6.5.1	Selecting a Fax Number from the Fax Number List	279
6.5.2	Adding a Contact to the Fax Number List.....	282
6.5.3	Editing a Contact in the Fax Number List	284
6.5.4	Deleting a Contact from the Fax Number List	285
6.6	Printing the Scanned Data	286
6.6.1	Scaling.....	291
6.6.2	Positioning	296
6.6.3	Simplex/Duplex.....	298
6.7	Saving the Scanned Data to a Network Folder	299
6.8	Setting the Scan Options	304
6.8.1	Carrier Sheet	310
6.8.2	Color Mode	311
6.8.3	Paper Size	312
	■ Long Page Mode	314
6.8.4	Resolution.....	316
6.8.5	Scan Mode	317
6.8.6	File Format	318
6.8.7	Searchable PDF	320
6.8.8	PDF Password.....	323
6.8.9	Compression	325
6.8.10	Brightness.....	328
6.8.11	Contrast	329
6.8.12	Sharpness	330
6.8.13	Dropout Color	331
6.8.14	Background Removal	332
6.8.15	Blank Page Skip	333
6.8.16	Page Orientation.....	334
6.8.17	Multifeed Detection (Layer and Length)	337
6.8.18	Edge Cropping.....	338

6.9	Enabling/Disabling the Scan Viewer	340
6.10	Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer	343
6.10.1	Viewing a Scanned Page	343
6.10.2	Rotating a Scanned Page.....	344
6.10.3	Adding a Scanned Page.....	344
6.10.4	Deleting a Scanned Page.....	345
6.11	Checking the User Log	346
6.12	Maintenance	348
6.13	Processing a Job	349
6.13.1	Enabling/Disabling the Message Screen.....	352
Chapter 7	Scanner Care	355
7.1	Cleaning	356
7.1.1	Cleaning Materials.....	356
7.1.2	Which Parts and When.....	357
7.2	Cleaning the ADF	358
7.2.1	Cleaning the ADF	358
7.3	Cleaning the LCD Touch Panel	364
7.4	Cleaning the Keyboard/Keyboard Cover	365
7.5	Cleaning the Carrier Sheet	366
7.6	Replacing Parts	367
7.6.1	Part Numbers and Replacement Cycles	367
	■ Part numbers and replacement cycle for consumable parts	367
	■ Part numbers and replacement cycle for Carrier Sheet	368

7.6.2	Checking the Consumable Alert Status	369
7.6.3	Replacing the Pad Assembly	370
7.6.4	Replacing the Pick Roller	371
7.6.5	Purchasing the Carrier Sheet	375
7.7	Replacing the Keyboard Cover	376
7.8	Performing a Scan Test	378
Chapter 8	Troubleshooting	381
8.1	Removing Jammed Documents	382
8.2	Dealing with Detached Keycaps	386
8.3	Network Connection Troubleshooting	388
8.3.1	Basic Network Operation Tests	388
	■ Checking basic network operation with a Ping test	388
	■ Checking the network operating status	390
	■ Checking the NTP server settings by synchronizing the system time	391
	■ Checking the mail server by sending a test mail	392
8.3.2	Other Network Connection Troubleshooting	393
	■ Failure to connect to a server using its IP address	393
	■ Failure to connect to a server using its host name or FQDN	395
	■ Failure to add a network printer	396
	■ Failure to print on a network printer	396
8.3.3	Failure to Access the Scanner using a Web Browser, Admin Tool, or Central Admin Server	397
8.4	Other Troubleshooting	400
8.5	Points to Check before Contacting Your FUJITSU Scanner Dealer	404
8.5.1	General Details	404

8.5.2	Error Status	405
■	Problem when connecting to the scanner via personal computer	405
■	Document feed trouble	405
■	Problem with Central Admin	406
■	Other problems	406
8.6	Checking the Scanner Labels	407
8.7	Pre-Maintenance Preparations	408
Appendix A	ADF Paper Specifications	409
A.1	Paper Size	410
A.2	Paper Requirements	411
A.2.1	Paper Type	411
A.2.2	Paper Weight.....	411
A.2.3	Precautions.....	411
A.3	Maximum Document Loading Capacity	414
A.4	Area not to be Perforated	415
A.5	Multifeed Detection Conditions	416
A.5.1	Detection by Layer.....	416
A.5.2	Detection by Length.....	416
A.5.3	Detection by both Layer and Length.....	417
Appendix B	Management Settings and Files	419
B.1	e-Mail Address Setting Values	420
B.2	Scanner Configuration File Format	421
B.2.1	Scanner Configuration File Format (for Importing)	421
B.2.2	Scanner Configuration File Format (for Exporting).....	422

Appendix C	Root Certification Authority	425
C.1	Root Certification Authority List	426
Appendix D	Scanner Specifications	429
D.1	Device Specifications	430
D.2	Scanner Specifications	431
Appendix E	Operation Messages	433
E.1	Administrator Messages	434
E.1.1	Administrator Screen Messages.....	435
E.1.2	System Log Messages	449
■	Information	449
■	Error	451
■	Warning	452
E.1.3	Alert Monitor System Log Messages.....	453
■	Information	453
■	Error	454
■	Warning	456
E.2	Regular User Messages	457
E.2.1	Regular User Screen Messages.....	457
E.2.2	System Log Messages	475
■	Information	475
■	Warning	477
■	Error	477
E.2.3	User Log.....	493
E.3	Central Admin Messages	502
E.3.1	Central Admin Console Messages	502

E.3.2	System Log Messages	506
	■ Information	506
	■ Warning	506
	■ Error	507
E.3.3	Event Log	512
	■ System Event Log	512
	■ Central Admin Console Event Log	514
E.3.4	Backup/Restore Command Messages	517
	■ Information	517
	■ Error	517
Appendix F Glossary		521
Index		527

Copyright

NetAdvantage 2007

Copyright 2000-2007 Infragistics, Inc.

LEADTOOLS for .NET

Copyright© 2005 LEAD Technologies, Inc.

WinPcap3.1

Copyright© 1999 - 2005 NetGroup, Politecnico di Torino (Italy).
Copyright© 2005 - 2006 CACE Technologies, Davis (California).
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the Politecnico di Torino, CACE Technologies nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory and its contributors.

This product includes software developed by the Kungliga Tekniska Hogskolan and its contributors.

This product includes software developed by Yen Yen Lim and North Dakota State University.

Portions Copyright© 1990, 1991, 1992, 1993, 1994, 1995, 1996, 1997 The Regents of the University of California.
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: "This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors."
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE INSTITUTE AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Portions Copyright© 1983 Regents of the University of California.
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms are permitted provided that the above copyright notice and this paragraph are duplicated in all such forms and that any documentation, advertising materials, and other materials related to such distribution and use acknowledge that the software was developed by the University of California, Berkeley. The name of the University may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Portions Copyright© 1995, 1996, 1997 Kungliga Tekniska Hogskolan (Royal Institute of Technology, Stockholm, Sweden).
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: "This product includes software developed by the Kungliga Tekniska Hogskolan and its contributors."
4. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE INSTITUTE AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE INSTITUTE OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Portions Copyright© 1997 Yen Yen Lim and North Dakota State University.
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: "This product includes software developed by Yen Yen Lim and North Dakota State University"
4. The name of the author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT,

INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Portions Copyright© 1993 by Digital Equipment Corporation.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies, and that the name of Digital Equipment Corporation not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the document or software without specific, written prior permission.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORP. DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS. IN NO EVENT SHALL DIGITAL EQUIPMENT CORPORATION BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, DIRECT, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Portions Copyright© 1995, 1996, 1997, 1998, and 1999 WIDE Project.
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the project nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE PROJECT AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE PROJECT OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Portions Copyright© 1996 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that: (1) source code distributions retain the above copyright notice and this paragraph in its entirety, (2) distributions including binary code include the above copyright notice and this paragraph in its entirety in the documentation or other materials provided with the distribution.

The name of Juniper Networks may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Portions Copyright© 2001 Daniel Hartmeier
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Portions Copyright 1989 by Carnegie Mellon.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this program for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that this copyright and permission notice appear on all copies and supporting documentation, the name of Carnegie Mellon not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the program without specific prior permission, and notice be given in supporting documentation that copying and distribution is by permission of Carnegie Mellon and Stanford University. Carnegie Mellon makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.

WinDump3.9.5

Copyright© 1999 - 2005 NetGroup, Politecnico di Torino (Italy).
Copyright© 2005 - 2006 CACE Technologies, Davis (California).
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the Politecnico di Torino, CACE Technologies nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory and its contributors.

Secure iNetSuite 2.0J

Copyright© 2007 Dart Communications

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the fi-6010N Network Scanner.

This easy-to-use image scanner is designed to be connected to a computer network system and is primarily for office use.

■ Manuals

The following manuals are prepared for the scanner. Read them as needed.

Manual	Description
fi-6010N Network Scanner Getting Started (paper)	Provides useful and detailed information on setting up, connecting, and caring for your scanner. Read this manual first. In this guide, it is indicated as "Getting Started".
fi-6010N Network Scanner Operator's Guide (This Manual) (PDF)	Contains further information about scanner settings, scanner administration, and scanner operations, and may be used as a general reference. To read the manual, download it from the scanner. For more details about how to download the manual, refer to the "Getting Started".

■Regulatory Information

FCC Declaration

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is located.
- Consult your dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician.

FCC warning: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTICE

The use of a shielded interface cable is required to comply with the Class B limits of Part 15 of FCC rules. The length of the AC cable must be 2 meters (6.6 feet) or less.

Canadian DOC Regulations

This digital apparatus does not exceed the Class B limit for radio noise emissions from digital apparatus set out in the Radio interference Regulations of the Canadian Department of Communications.

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Le présent appareil numérique n'émet pas de parasites radioélectriques dépassant les limites applicables aux appareils numériques de la classe B et prescrites dans le Règlement sur le brouillage radioélectrique dictées par le Ministère des Communications du Canada.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Bescheinigung des Herstellers / Importeurs


Für den fi-6010N wird folgendes bescheinigt:

- In Übereinstimmung mit den Bestimmungen der EN45014(CE) funkentstört
- Maschinenlärminformationsverordnung 3.GPSGV: Der höchste Schalldruckpegel beträgt 70 dB (A) oder weniger, gemäß EN ISO 7779.

Use in High-safety Applications

This product has been designed and manufactured on the assumption that it will be used in office, personal, domestic, regular industrial, and general-purpose applications. It has not been designed and manufactured for use in applications (simply called "high-safety applications" from here on) that directly involve danger to life and health when a high degree of safety is required, for example, in the control of nuclear reactions at nuclear power facilities, automatic flight control of aircraft, air traffic control, operation control in mass-transport systems, medical equipment for sustaining life, and missile firing control in weapons systems, and when provisionally the safety in question is not ensured. The user should use this product with adopting measures for ensuring safety in such high-safety applications. PFU LIMITED assumes no liability whatsoever for damages arising from use of this product by the user in high-safety applications, and for any claims or compensation for damages by the user or a third party.

About the Use of Mercury

	Lamp(s) inside this product contain mercury and must be recycled or disposed of according to local, state, or federal laws.
---	---

To avoid unexpected injury, read the following carefully.
Doing the following actions may result in serious personal injuries:

- Do not lick or consume the substance contained in the lamp.
- Do not incinerate, crush, or shred the lamps or scanner parts.
- Do not breathe the chemical liquid contained in the scanner lamps.

LCD Peculiarities

- The LCD backlight is a fluorescent tube that contains some mercury.
- Be aware that neither of the following is considered a fault.
 - Despite the fact that the latest advanced technology has been used to produce the scanner's TFT color LCD's, the large number of pixels involved means that an occasional (always-on) bright dot or (always-off) dark dot may be visible.
 - The characteristics of the LCD mean that there may be some variation in hue and intensity of colors across the screen.

Replacing Batteries

This product has a battery (CMOS RAM battery) on board to retain data such as

- **Warning**
 - Do not replace the battery yourself, as there is a risk of explosion if the wrong type is used. Please contact your maintenance engineer in charge when the battery runs low.
 - Do not touch the battery. Never install or remove the battery by yourself.
Doing so may cause electric shock or static electricity which can damage the device.

About Maintenance

The user must not perform repairs on this scanner.

Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for repairs to this product.

■Trademarks

Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Vista are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe, the Adobe logo, and Acrobat are either registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

ABBYY™ FineReader™ 7.x Engine © ABBYY Software House 2005.

OCR by ABBYY Software House. All rights reserved.

ABBYY, FineReader are trademarks of ABBYY Software House.

Other product names are the trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

How Trademarks are Indicated in This Manual

References to operating systems (OS) and applications are indicated as follows:

Windows	Microsoft® Windows® operating system
Windows® XP	Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system
Windows Vista®	Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Basic operating system Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Premium operating system Microsoft® Windows Vista® Business operating system Microsoft® Windows Vista® Enterprise operating system Microsoft® Windows Vista® Ultimate operating system
Windows® 2000 Server	Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server Microsoft® Small Business Server 2000 Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Advanced Server
Windows Server® 2003	Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Standard Edition Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Enterprise Edition Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Datacenter Edition
Windows Server® 2008	Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard Edition Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise Edition Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Datacenter Edition
.NET Framework	Microsoft® .NET Framework
IIS	Microsoft® Internet Information Services
Adobe Acrobat	Adobe® Acrobat®
RightFax	Captaris® RightFax Business Server (Version 9.3)

Where there is no distinction between the different versions of the above operating system, the general term "Windows" is used.

Where there is no distinction between the different versions of the above application, the general term "Adobe Acrobat" is used.

The version of Adobe Acrobat provided with this product may change without notice. If the instructions described in this manual differ from the actual displayed screen, refer to Acrobat's Help.

Manufacturer

PFU LIMITED

International Sales Dept., Imaging Business Division, Products Group
Solid Square East Tower, 580 Horikawa-cho, Saiwai-ku, Kawasaki-shi Kanagawa 212-8563, Japan
Phone : (81-44) 540-4538

All Rights Reserved, Copyright© PFU LIMITED 2008

■ Notice of Liability

BEFORE USING THIS PRODUCT, PLEASE READ THIS MANUAL CAREFULLY. IF THIS PRODUCT IS NOT USED CORRECTLY, UNEXPECTED INJURY CAN OCCUR TO USERS OR BYSTANDERS.

Keep this manual in a safe place so that it can be easily referred to during use of this product.

While all efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy of all information in this manual, PFU assumes no liability to any party for any damage caused by errors or omissions or by statements of any kind in this manual, its updates or supplements, whether such errors are omissions or statements resulting from negligence, accidents, or any other cause. PFU further assumes no liability arising from the application or use of any product or system described herein; nor any liability for incidental or consequential damages arising from the use of this manual. PFU disclaims all warranties regarding the information contained herein, whether expressed, implied, or statutory.

Warning Indications Used in This Manual



This indication alerts operators to an operation that, if not strictly observed, may result in severe injury or death.



This indication alerts operators to an operation that, if not strictly observed, may result in safety hazards to personnel or damage to equipment.

Symbols Used in This Manual

This manual uses the following symbols in the explanations in addition to the warning indications.



This symbol alerts operators to particularly important information. Be sure to read this information.



This symbol alerts operators to helpful advice regarding operation.



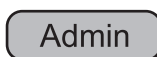
A TRIANGLE symbol indicates that special care and attention is required. The drawing inside the triangle shows the specific caution.



A CIRCLE with a diagonal line inside shows action which users may not perform. The drawing inside or under the circle shows the specific action that is not allowed.



Outline characters on a colored background show instructions users should follow. It may also include the drawing that shows the specific instruction.



This symbol is used to indicate information about administrator operations. In Chapter 4, operations that can be performed by either or both of the administrator login modes one indicated by the following symbols:



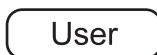
: Administrator operating via the touch panel.



: Administrator operating via the network interface using the fi Network Scanner Admin Tool.



: Administrator operating via the network interface using the iScanner Central Admin Console.



This symbol is used to indicate information about regular user operations.

Screen Examples in This Manual

The screen examples in this manual are subject to change without notice in the interest of product improvement. If the actual displayed screen differs from the screen examples in this manual, operate by following the actual displayed screen while referring to the User's Manual of the scanner application you are using.

The screen examples in this manual are created according to Microsoft Corporation guidelines.

Warning Label



High Temperature

The glass scanner windows surface inside the ADF becomes hot when the scanner is used. Be careful not to touch the surface of the glass scanner windows.



Do NOT remove from the scanner, stain or scratch the warning labels.



■ Safety Precautions

This manual describes important details for ensuring the safe and correct use of this product. Thoroughly read this manual before you start to use this product. In particular, be sure to read and fully understand the Safety Precautions described in this manual before you use this product.

Also, store this manual in a safe place so that it can be easily referred to during use of this product.



Do not damage the AC cable.



A damaged AC cable may cause fire or electric shock. Do not place heavy objects on AC cables, or pull, bend, twist, heat, damage or modify AC cables.

Do not use damaged AC cables or power plugs, or install any cables or power plugs to loose wall sockets.

Use only specified AC cables and connector cables.



Use only specified AC cables and connector cables. Failure to use the correct cables might cause electric shock and/or equipment failure.

Please do not use the AC cable provided with this scanner for other devices, since this might cause equipment failure and other troubles or an electric shock.

Use this scanner only at the indicated power voltage. Do not connect to multiple-power strips.



Use this scanner only at the indicated power voltage and current. Improper power voltage and current might cause fire or electric shock. Do not connect to multiple-power strips.

Do not touch the AC cable with wet hands.



Do not touch the power plug with wet hands. Doing so can cause electric shock.

Wipe any dust from the power plug.



Wipe off any dust from metal parts on the power plug or metal fittings with a soft, dry cloth. Accumulated dust can cause fire or electric shock.

Do not install the device in locations that has oil smoke, steam, humidity, and dust.



Do not install the scanner in locations subject to oil smoke, steam, humidity, and dust. Doing so might cause a fire or electric shock.

Turn the scanner OFF if it is damaged.



If the scanner is damaged for any reason, turn the scanner off and unplug the power cable. Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

Do not use the scanner if there is a strange odor.



If you detect heat coming from the device or detect other problems such as smoke, strange smells or noises, immediately turn off the scanner and disconnect its power plug. Make sure that any smoke coming from it has stopped, before contacting your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

Do not put liquids inside the scanner.



Do not insert or drop metal objects in to the scanner. Do not scan wet documents or documents with paper clips or staples. Do not splash or allow the scanner to get wet.



If foreign objects (water, small metal objects, liquids, etc.) get inside the scanner, immediately turn off the scanner and disconnect the power plug from the power outlet. Then, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider. Pay particular attention to this warning in households where there are small children.



Do not touch the inside of the scanner unless necessary.



Do not take apart or modify the scanner. The inside of the scanner contains high-voltage components. Touching these components might cause electric shock or fire.

Do not use aerosol sprays near the scanner.



Do not use any aerosol sprays or alcohol based sprays to clean the scanner. Dust blown up by strong air from the spray may enter the inside of the scanner. This may cause the scanner to fail or malfunction. Sparks, caused by static electricity, generated when blowing off dust and dirt from the outside of the scanner may cause a fire.

Do not place the scanner within the reach of small children.



To avoid injuries, do not place the scanner in an area where small children may be able to reach.

Do not touch the heated section for a long time.



Do not touch the heated section such as the bottom of the scanner for a long time. Doing so may cause a low-temperature burn on your skin.

Do not cover the scanner with something during its operation.

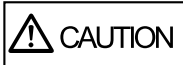


Do not use the scanner while covered with a blanket, etc. Doing so may raise the temperature inside and cause a fire.

Do not use the scanner where it gets wet.



Do not use the scanner at a place such as a bathroom, shower room, or swimming pool where it may easily get wet. Doing so might cause electric shock or fire.



Do not install the scanner on unstable surfaces.



Make sure that the scanner is installed on a flat, level surface and that none of its parts extend beyond the surface top, such as a desk or table. Do not install the scanner on unstable surfaces. Install the scanner on a level surface that is free of vibration to prevent it from falling.



Install the scanner on a strong surface that will support the weight of the scanner and other devices.

Firmly insert the power plug.



Firmly insert the power plug as far it can go into the power outlet.

Do not block the ventilation ports.



Do not block the ventilation ports. Blocking the ventilation ports generates heat inside of scanner, which may result in fire or scanner failure.

Do not place heavy objects or stand on top of the scanner.



Do not place heavy objects on the scanner or use the scanner's surface top to perform other work. Improper installation might cause injuries and equipment failure.

Do not use the scanner immediately after moving it from a cold place into a warm room.



Do not use the device immediately after moving it from a cold place into a warm room. Condensation may occur, which might lead to scanning errors. Let the device dry about one or two hours before you use it.

Before moving the scanner, disconnect the power plug from the power outlet.



Do not move the scanner with the power and interface cables connected as this can damage the cables, which can later cause fire, electric shock as well as injury. Before moving the scanner, be sure to disconnect the power plug from the power outlet, and all other data cables. Make sure that the floor is free of any obstructions.

Protect the scanner from static electricity.



Install the scanner away from strong magnetic fields and other sources of electronic noise. Also, protect the scanner against any static electricity, which can cause the scanner to malfunction.

Avoid any contact when scanner is in use.



Avoid touching any scanner mechanism during scanning since this may cause injuries.

Disconnect the power plug from the power outlet when the scanner is not used for a long period of time.



When the scanner is not going to be used for a long period of time, be sure to disconnect the power plug from the power outlet.

Do not install the scanner in direct sunlight.



Do not install the scanner under direct sunlight or near heating apparatus. Doing so might cause excessive heat to build up inside the scanner, which can cause scanner trouble or even fire. Install the scanner in a well-ventilated location.

Handle documents carefully.



When handling documents, be careful not to cut your fingers with them.

Do not make the scanner wet while carrying it outside.



When carrying the scanner outside while it is raining or snowing, pay special attention so the scanner does not get wet.

Do not place the scanner in areas, which are subject to high levels of shock or vibration.



Do not place the scanner in areas, which are subject to high levels of shock or vibration. Doing so may cause the scanner to malfunction.

Scanner Overview

Admin

User

1.1 Scanner Features2

1.2 Part Names and Functions4

1.3 User Types and Operations.....7

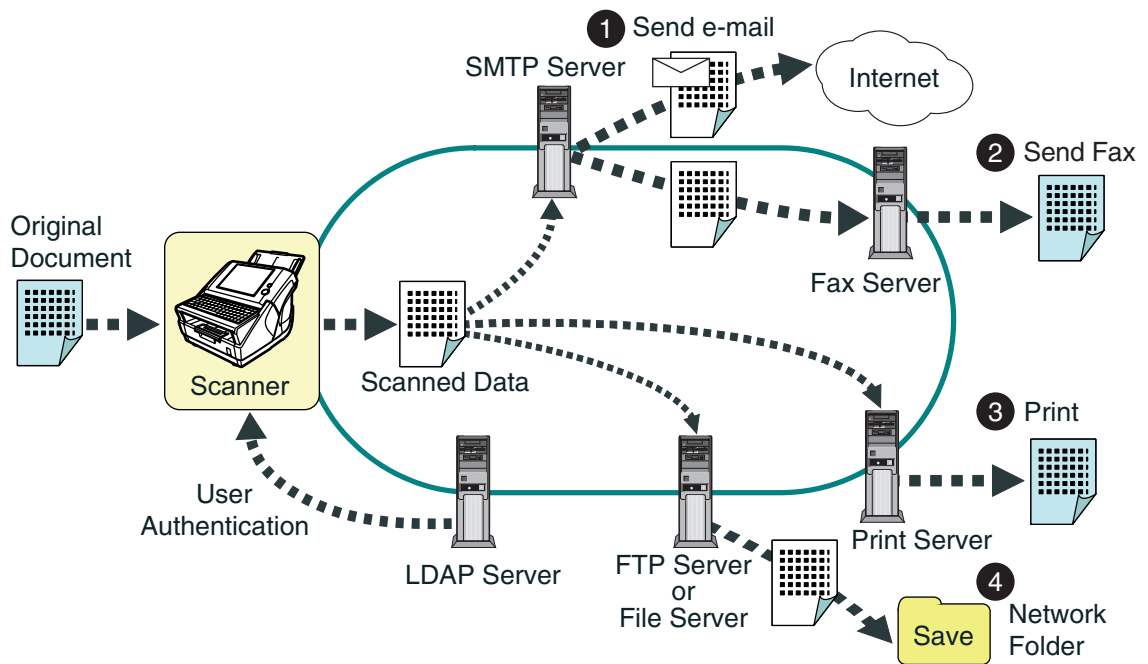
1.4 System Requirements.....11

1.1 Scanner Features

■ Basic uses for scanned documents

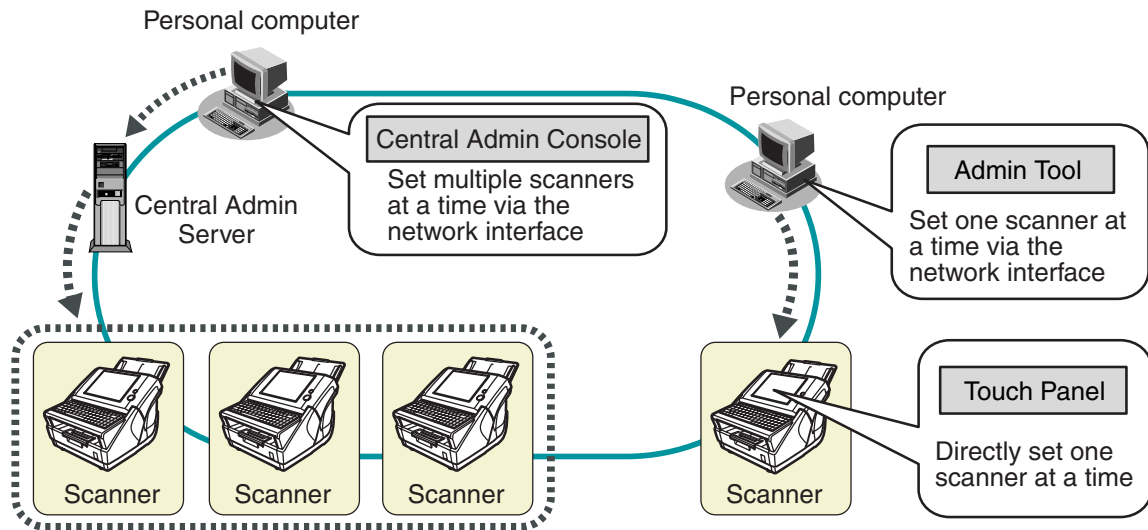
This easy-to-operate network scanner is used to scan documents for further use:

1. Scanned document files can be sent as an e-mail attachment.
2. Scanned document files can be sent by fax.
3. Scanned document files can be printed on a network printer.
4. Scanned document files can be saved in a network folder.



■ Configure and manage with ease

Configuration and management of the scanner can be easily performed via the touch panel, or via the fi Network Scanner Admin Tool (hereinafter referred to as Admin Tool) or the iScanner Central Admin Console (hereinafter referred to as Central Admin Console), installed on a personal computer.



■ Advanced security measures

The following security functions are provided for the scanner.

- Login authentication can restrict user access.
- Scans can be converted to password protected PDF files.
- Scanned data can be protected.

Since the scanner is intended to be shared by multiple users, data privacy is an important factor.

The following security measures are used to protect the data against untoward access:

- **Encryption**
While it may be temporarily stored in the scanner before being e-mailed, faxed, printed, or saved, the scanned data is always kept in an encrypted form, in order to prevent exposure of data via analysis of the disk contents.
- **Scanned data deletion**
After the scanned data has been e-mailed, faxed, printed or saved, the temporary data is deleted. Even if an error interrupts this process, leaving some scanned data in the scanner, this will automatically be deleted at the next start up.
- **Key regeneration**
When the user data store is cleared from the scanner, the old cipher key is deleted and a new cipher key is generated. This totally eliminates the possibility of access to any user data remaining in the freed disk space.

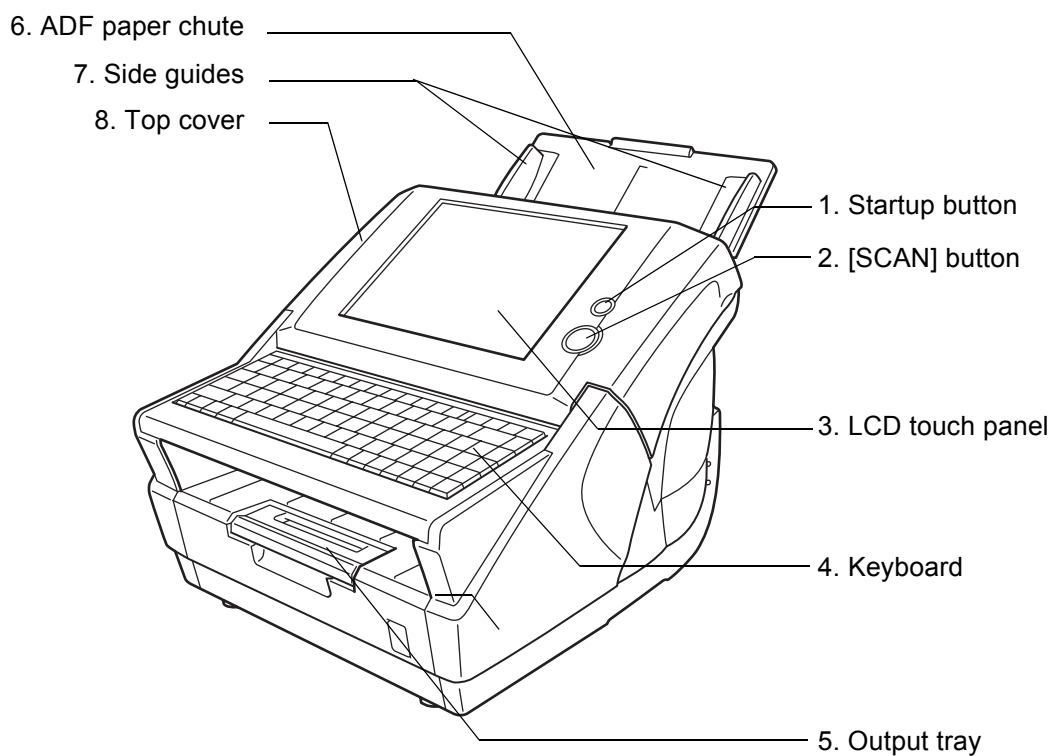
In addition, input of files from external media or networks is not possible.

Therefore, the scanner is protected against virus infection.

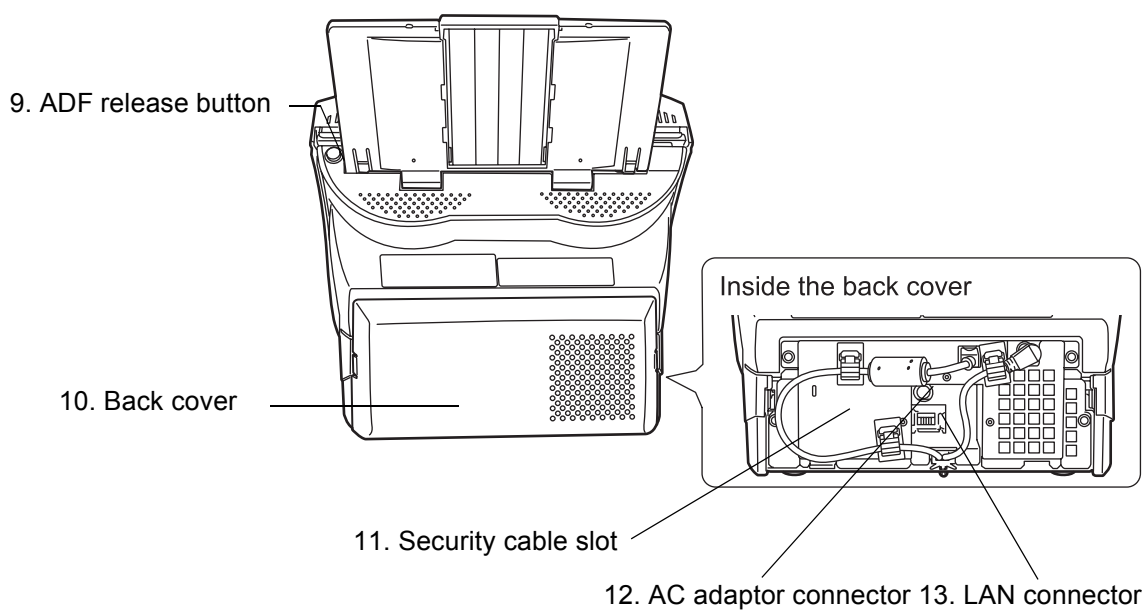
1.2 Part Names and Functions

1.2.1 External Parts

- Front view

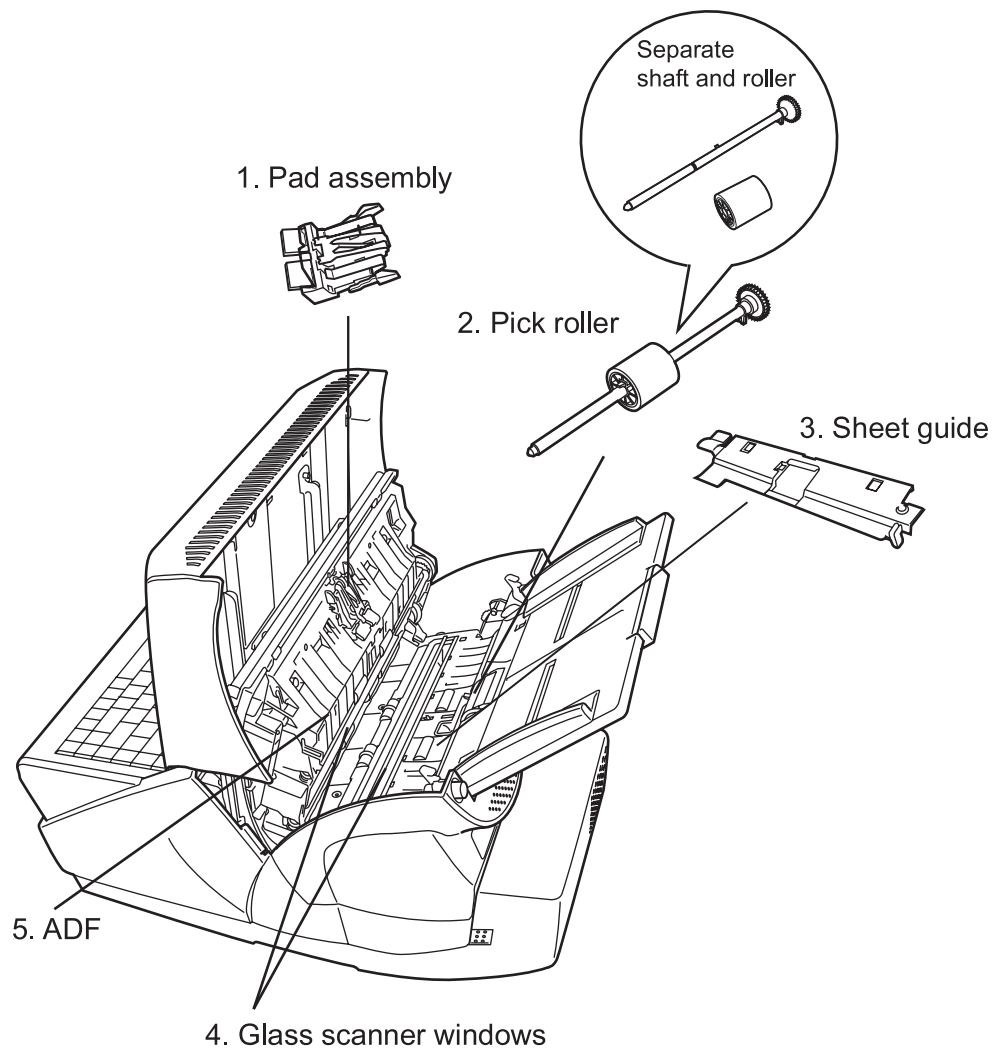


- Rear view



No.	Part name	Function
1	Startup button	Turns on scanner or brings up the "Login" screen from standby mode. For details, refer to "2.1.1 Using the Startup Button" (page 22) .
2	[SCAN] button	Starts the scan process. For details, refer to "2.1.2 Using the Top Cover [SCAN] Button" (page 23) .
3	LCD touch panel	Accepts user input and displays the scanner control screens. The LCD touch panel buttons are used to setup scans. For details, refer to "2.2 Using the LCD Touch Panel" (page 24) .
4	Keyboard	Used to enter text in the control screen input fields. May also be used instead of the touch panel to operate the control screens. For details, refer to "2.3 Using the Keyboard" (page 25) .
5	Output tray	Scanned documents are ejected from the ADF onto this tray. Small documents may be retrieved by lifting up the keyboard after scanning has completed.
6	ADF paper chute	Holds the documents waiting to be scanned (scan side down).
7	Side guides	Adjust to the width of the paper, to prevent skewing of the scanned pages.
8	Top cover	Frames the LCD touch panel, and covers the upper scanner/ADF mechanism. Must be opened to clean inside the scanner, or when replacing consumable parts.
9	ADF release button	Push to unlock the top cover.
10	Back cover	When connecting cables, press the tabs on both sides of the back cover to unlock it, and pull it out from the scanner.
11	Security cable slot	Slot for commercially available security cable to prevent against theft. The following security cable is recommended. Type: Right angle Cylindrical part: diameter 25mm (max), length 50mm (max) (includes bent part if a straight cable is used)
12	AC adaptor connector	Connects the scanner to the AC adaptor.
13	LAN connector	Connects the scanner to the network.

1.2.2 Internal Parts



No.	Part name	Function
1	Pad assembly	Help to guide documents from the ADF paper chute to the glass scanner windows.
2	Pick roller	
3	Sheet guide	
4	Glass scanner windows	Place where the documents are scanned.
5	ADF (Automatic Document Feeder)	Drives the documents from the ADF paper chute, past the glass scanner windows, to the output tray.

1.3 User Types and Operations

The scanner functions available after login vary in the following ways for different types of user:

- **Administrator**
Can setup and manage the scanner. The administrator can operate via the scanner's touch panel, or via the network interface by using the Admin Tool, or Central Admin Console installed in a personal computer. With the Central Admin Console, settings pre-defined on the Central Admin Server can be applied to multiple scanners at a time.
- **Regular User**
Can scan documents and then send, print, or save the resulting data.

Top Menu Tab /Side Menu Tab	Used to ...	Administrator			Regular User	See ...
		Touch Panel	Admin Tool	Central Admin		
System Settings						
Import Scanner Settings	Import scanner settings	—	—	A	—	page 233
Screen Calibration	Calibrate the touch panel	A	—	—	—	page 51
Scanner Name	Set the scanner name	A	A	—	—	page 54
Language/Keyboard Selection	Set the language	A	A	—	—	page 57
Region/Time-zone	Set the region/timezone	A	A	A	—	page 58
Date/Time	Set the date/time	A	A	A (*1)	—	page 59
Standby Mode	Set the standby mode and/or automatic logout	A	A	A	—	page 61
Login Settings	Set the login settings	A	A	A	—	page 63
Admin Password	Change the admin password	A	A	—	—	page 66
File Names	Set the file name format	A	A	A	—	page 67
Multifeed Settings	Set the multifeed detection method	A	A	A	—	page 71
Scanner Adjustment	Set the offset and magnification settings	A	A	—	—	page 74

Top Menu Tab /Side Menu Tab	Used to ...	Administrator			Regular User	See ...
		Touch Panel	Admin Tool	Central Admin		
Network Settings						
IP Address	Set the IP address	A	A	—	—	page 76
Admin Network	Set the admin network	A	A	A (*2)	—	page 78
Central Admin Server	Set the Central Admin Server	A	A	A (*3)	—	page 80
DNS Server	Set the DNS server	A	A	A	—	page 82
WINS Server	Set the WINS server	A	A	A	—	page 84
NTP Server	Set the NTP server	A	A	A (*4)	—	page 85
Proxy Server	Set the proxy server	A	A	A	—	page 87
Login LDAP Server	Set the login LDAP server	A	A	A	—	page 88
e-Mail LDAP Server	Set the e-Mail LDAP server	A	A	A	—	page 93
Customize LDAP Search	Customize the LDAP search parameters	A	A	A	—	page 95
SMTP Server	Set the e-mail server (SMTP server)	A	A	A	—	page 100
Fax Server	Set the fax server	A	A	A	—	page 101
Network Printer	Set the network printers	A	A	A (*5)	—	page 102
Network Folder	Set the network folders	A	A	A (*5)	—	page 115
Alert Notifica- tion	Set the destination for alert notifications	A	A	A	—	page 128
Ping	Check the network connec- tion with a Ping test	A	A	—	—	page 129
Network Status	Check the network operat- ing status	A	A	—	—	page 131
Device Status						
System Status	View the system status	A	A	—	—	page 133
Usage Status	View the usage status	A	A	A (*6)	—	page 134
Add-in Status	View the Add-in status	A	A	A (*6)	—	page 136

Top Menu Tab /Side Menu Tab	Used to ...	Administrator			Regular User	See ...
		Touch Panel	Admin Tool	Central Admin		
Operation Logs						
User Log	Manage user logs	A (*7)	A	—	—	page 137
System Log	Manage the system log	A (*7)	A	—	—	page 140
Maintenance						
User Data Store	Maintain the user data store	—	A	—	—	page 143
System Settings File	Maintain the system set- tings	—	A	—	—	page 149
System Update	Update the scanner system software	—	A	A (*8)	—	page 153
Add-in Manager	Install/uninstall an Add-in module	—	A	A (*8)	—	page 155
Technical Sup- port	Set the information output level	A	A	—	—	page 157
	Obtain technical support	—	A	—	—	page 158
Job Mode Settings						
Job Sequences	Set a job sequence	—	A	A	—	page 163
Job Menus	Set a job menu	—	A	A	—	page 176
Job Groups	Set a job group	—	A	A	—	page 182
e-Mail	Send the scanned data by e-mail	—	—	—	A	page 265
Fax	Send the scanned data by fax	—	—	—	A	page 277
Print	Print the scanned data	—	—	—	A	page 286
Save	Save the scanned data to a network folder	—	—	—	A	page 299
Scan Settings	Set the scan options	—	—	—	A	page 304
Scan Viewer	Enable/disable the scan viewer	—	—	—	A	page 340

Top Menu Tab /Side Menu Tab	Used to ...	Administrator			Regular User	See ...
		Touch Panel	Admin Tool	Central Admin		
Maintenance						
Edit e-Mail Addresses	Edit contacts in the e-mail address book	—	—	—	A	page 275
Edit Fax Num- bers	Edit contacts in the fax number list	—	—	—	A	page 284
Roller Cleaning	Clean the ADF	—	—	—	A	page 358
Scan Test	Perform a scan test	—	—	—	A	page 378
Consumable Alert	Indicate when parts need replacing	—	—	—	A	page 367
User Log	Check user operations	—	—	—	A	page 346
Job Menu	Process a job	—	—	—	A	page 349

A: available —: not available

- (*1): The "Date/Time" input field and [Get Time] button cannot be used.
- (*2): Contents of the SSL Certificate are not shown.
- (*3): Address or port number cannot be set.
- (*4): Synchronization not possible.
- (*5): Printers and/or folders that can be accessed from the Central Admin Server can all be set at one time.
- (*6): Operations cannot be performed from the "Edit Scanner Settings" screen, but can be performed from the Central Admin Console "Scanner List & Config" screen.
- (*7): The [Download] button is not displayed.
- (*8): Operations cannot be performed from the "Edit Scanner Settings" screen, but can be performed from the Central Admin Console Main Menu.

1.4 System Requirements

1.4.1 Requirements for Admin Tool

For use of the Admin Tool, the following requirements apply:

■ Software

- Operating System
 - Windows® XP SP2 or later
 - Windows Vista®
 - Windows Server® 2003 SP2 or later
 - Windows Server® 2008
- .NET Framework 2.0 SP1 or later, or .NET Framework 3.0 SP1 or later (*1)
- Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6 SP2 or later (*2)

(*1): Installation of Microsoft® .NET Framework is required.
When installing the Admin Tool, confirm that .NET Framework is installed. If not already installed, a message will appear telling you to install .NET Framework from the Microsoft Web site. When installing .NET Framework 2.0, at least 280MB of additional free disk space is required.

(*2): Confirm that the latest security patch has been applied. If the latest patch has not been applied, downloading operations (such as manual download) may not be possible. For Windows® XP, "KB933566" must be applied to Microsoft® Internet Explorer.

■ Hardware

- Any personal computer which runs the supported software
 - 32MB or more of free memory space
 - 64MB or more of free disk space
- XGA monitor or better
- LAN cable
- Pointing device (e.g. mouse)

1.4.2 Requirements for Central Admin Console

For use of the Central Admin Console, the following requirements apply:

■ Software

- Operating System
 - Windows® XP SP2 or later
 - Windows Vista®
 - Windows Server® 2003 SP2 or later
 - Windows Server® 2008
- Admin Tool
- .NET Framework 2.0 SP1 or later, or .NET Framework 3.0 SP1 or later (*1)
- Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6 SP2 or later (*2)

(*1): Installation of Microsoft® .NET Framework is required.
When installing the Admin Tool, confirm that .NET Framework is installed. If not already installed, a message will appear telling you to install .NET Framework from the Microsoft Web site. When installing .NET Framework 2.0, at least 280MB of additional free disk space is required.

(*2): Confirm that the latest security patch has been applied. If not applied, problems with the screen display may arise. MS08-024 (KB947864) and subsequent security update programs are required.

■ Hardware

- Any personal computer which runs the supported software
 - 32MB or more of free memory space
 - 64MB or more of free disk space
- XGA monitor or better
- LAN cable
- Pointing device (e.g. mouse)

1.4.3 Requirements for Central Admin Server

For use of the Central Admin Server, the following requirements apply:

■ Software

- Operating System
 - Windows® 2000 Server SP4 or later
 - Windows Server® 2003 SP2 or later
 - Windows Server® 2008 (*1)
- .NET Framework 2.0 SP1 or later, or .NET Framework 3.0 SP1 or later
- Microsoft® Internet Explorer 6 SP2 or later (*2)
- Microsoft® Internet Information Services 5.0 or later (*3)
- Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2005 Express Edition (*4)

(*1): To use HTTPS, CAPICOM must be previously installed. If CAPICOM is not installed, the self-signed certificate is not imported for communicating with HTTPS.

(*2): Confirm that the latest security patch has been applied. If the latest patch has not been applied, downloading operations (such as manual download) may not be possible.

(*3): A Web server function of Microsoft® Internet Information Services 5.0 or later must be installed.

(*4): If Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2005 Express Edition is not already installed, install it at the same time as the Central Admin Sever installation.
For Windows® 2000 Server, Microsoft Data Access Components (MDAC) 2.8 SP1 or later, must also be installed.

■ Hardware

- Any personal computer which runs the supported software
 - Intel® Pentium® III processor, 1GHz and above, or equally interchangeable processor
 - 512MB or more of free memory space
 - 700MB or more of free disk space
- XGA monitor or better
- LAN cable

1.4.4 Requirements for Related Servers

For related servers, the following requirements apply:

Server	Operating system	Required Function
LDAP Server	Windows® 2000 Server (*1)	Active Directory
	Windows Server® 2003 (*2)	Active Directory
	Windows Server® 2008 (*3)	Active Directory
SMTP Server	Windows® 2000 Server (*1)	SMTP
	Windows Server® 2003 (*2)	SMTP
	Windows Server® 2008 (*3)	SMTP
File Server	Windows® 2000 Server (*1)	Windows Shared Folder
	Windows Server® 2003 (*2)	Windows Shared Folder
	Windows Server® 2008 (*3)	Windows Shared Folder
FTP Server	Windows® 2000 Server (*1)	FTP
	Windows Server® 2003 (*2)	FTP
	Windows Server® 2008 (*3)	FTP
Print Server	Windows® 2000 Server (*1)	Windows Shared Printer (*4)
	Windows Server® 2003 (*2)	Windows Shared Printer (*4)
	Windows Server® 2008 (*3)	Windows Shared Printer (*4)
DNS Server	Windows® 2000 Server (*1)	DNS
	Windows Server® 2003 (*2)	DNS
	Windows Server® 2008 (*3)	DNS
WINS Server	Windows® 2000 Server (*1)	WINS
	Windows Server® 2003 (*2)	WINS
	Windows Server® 2008 (*3)	WINS
DHCP Server	Windows® 2000 Server (*1)	DHCP
	Windows Server® 2003 (*2)	DHCP
	Windows Server® 2008 (*3)	DHCP
NTP Server	Redhat Enterprise Linux	NTP
Fax Server	Windows® 2000 Server (*1)	RightFax
	Windows Server® 2003 (*2)	RightFax
	Windows Server® 2008 (*3)	RightFax

- (*1): Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server
Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Advanced Server
Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Datacenter Server
- (*2): Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Standard Edition
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Enterprise Edition
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003, Datacenter Edition
- (*3): Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise
Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Datacenter
- (*4): To use as network printer, Windows® XP compatible printer driver must be installed.

■ LDAP Server

LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol) is a protocol for accessing a directory databases over a TCP/IP network. It can be used to administrator networked users e-mail addresses and operating environments.

When connected using encryption (SSL), this is called the "LDAPS Server".

The LDAP server can be used to perform the following:

- User authentication at login
- Finding or entering e-mail addresses in an address book

■ SMTP Server

SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) is a protocol for sending e-mail.

The SMTP server can be used to perform the following:

- Sending the scanned data as an e-mail
- Sending the scanned data by fax

■ File Server

The file server shares the disk on a server with other computers on a network, and enables use of the disk from an external computer.

Using this file server enables a scanned image to be saved to a file server network folder.

■ FTP Server

The FTP (File Transfer Protocol) is a protocol for transmitting files.

An FTP server which connects with SSL encryption is called an "FTPS Server".

Using this FTP server enables a scanned image to be saved to an FTP server network folder.

■ Print Server

The print server is used to print the scanned data. Printers to be used are set on the print server.



- Windows® XP compatible printer drivers must be registered.
- Printer must be able to spool print jobs (to hard disk or memory). Contact your printer dealer if uncertain whether your printer has a spool function.
- Printers that allow the status of print errors to be easily checked (via an LCD control panel, or similar) are recommended.



For printing, use only printers connected to the print server.



■ DNS Server

A DNS server provides name-resolution which determines IP address corresponding to host name or FQDN.

■ WINS Server

The WINS server handles name registration requests from WINS clients, register their names and IP addresses, and responds to NetBIOS name queries submitted by clients, returning the IP address of a queried name if it is listed in the server database.

In addition, when a DNS name resolution fails, the query can be transferred to the WINS server.

■ DHCP Server

The DHCP server automatically assigns an IP address for this scanner and other client PCs.

■ NTP Server

The NTP server is used when a client makes a time query through network.

■ Fax Server

The fax server is used for sending faxes.

This scanner supports the following fax servers:

- Captaris® RightFax Business Server (Version 9.3)

This fax server can be used to send the scanned data by fax.

1.4.5 Network Requirements

This section describes the required network conditions for Central Admin.

For Central Admin, the following network conditions are required.

- HTTP/HTTPS communication is possible from the Central Admin Server to the scanner
- HTTP/HTTPS communication is possible from the scanner to the Central Admin Server
- HTTP/HTTPS communication is possible from the Central Admin Console to the Central Admin Server.
- Wake-On-LAN Magic Packet routing is possible from the Central Admin Server to the scanner (when Wake-On-LAN is used)



The connection between a scanner and Central Admin Server has the following limitations.

- Communication via an HTTP proxy is not supported.
- Networks where IP addresses using NAT/NAPT are not supported.



1.4.6 Scanner Requirements for iScanner Central Admin

Up to 1,000 scanners can be managed with iScanner Central Admin. If 1,000 scanners are registered on the server, no more scanners can be registered as targets for central admin. If the number of scanners exceeds 1,000, multiple Central Admin Servers will be prepared. The target scanners for each server should not exceed 1,000.

1.4.7 Port Number List

Function	From/To	Port Number	Protocol Number
Admin Tool Connection	Admin Tool ⇒ Scanner	80 (HTTP) (*1)	6 (TCP)
		443 (HTTPS) (*1)	6 (TCP)
Central Admin Server Connection	Central Admin Server ⇒ Scanner	80 (HTTP) (*1)	6 (TCP)
		443 (HTTPS) (*1)	6 (TCP)
	Scanner ⇒ Central Admin Server	20444 (HTTP/HTTPS) (*1)	6 (TCP)
	Central Admin Console ⇒ Central Admin Server	10444(HTTP/HTTPS) (*1)	6 (TCP)
	Central Admin Server ⇒ LDAP server	389 (LDAP)	6 (TCP)
		636 (LDAPS)	6 (TCP)
		3268 (Global Catalog)	6 (TCP)
		3269 (Global Catalog over SSL)	6 (TCP)
	Central Admin Server ⇒ Print server	137,138,139,445 (SMB)	6 (TCP) 17 (UDP)
	Central Admin Server ⇒ File server	137,138,139,445 (SMB)	6 (TCP) 17 (UDP)
	Central Admin Server ⇒ FTP server	20,21 (FTP) (*1)	6 (TCP)
	Central Admin Server ⇒ FTPS server	989,990 (FTPS) (*1)	6 (TCP)
DHCP Server	Scanner ⇒ DHCP server	67 (DHCP)	17 (UDP)
DNS Server	Scanner ⇒ DNS server	53 (DNS)	17 (UDP)
WINS Server	Scanner ⇒ WINS server	1512 (WINS)	17 (UDP)
Synchronization	Scanner ⇒ SNTP server	123 (SNTP)	17 (UDP)
Proxy Server	Scanner ⇒ Proxy server	Free	6 (TCP)
Authentication/e-Mail Address Search	Scanner ⇒ LDAP server	389 (LDAP)	6 (TCP)
		636 (LDAPS)	6 (TCP)
		3268 (Global Catalog)	6 (TCP)
		3269 (Global Catalog over SSL)	6 (TCP)
Sending e-Mail	Scanner ⇒ SMTP server	25 (SMTP)	6 (TCP)

Function	From/To	Port Number	Protocol Number
Sending Fax	Scanner ⇒ SMTP server	25 (SMTP)	6 (TCP)
Print	Scanner ⇒ Print server	137,138,139,445 (SMB)	6 (TCP) 17 (UDP)
FTP Server	Scanner ⇒ FTP server	20,21 (FTP) (*1)	6 (TCP)
FTPS Server	Scanner ⇒ FTPS server	989,990 (FTPS) (*1)	6 (TCP)
Saving to a Folder	Scanner ⇒ File server	137,138,139,445 (SMB)	6 (TCP) 17 (UDP)
Ping	Scanner ⇒ Another personal computer or server	—	1 (ICMP)

(*1): Changing the Port Number is possible

Chapter 2

Basic Scanner Operations

Admin

User

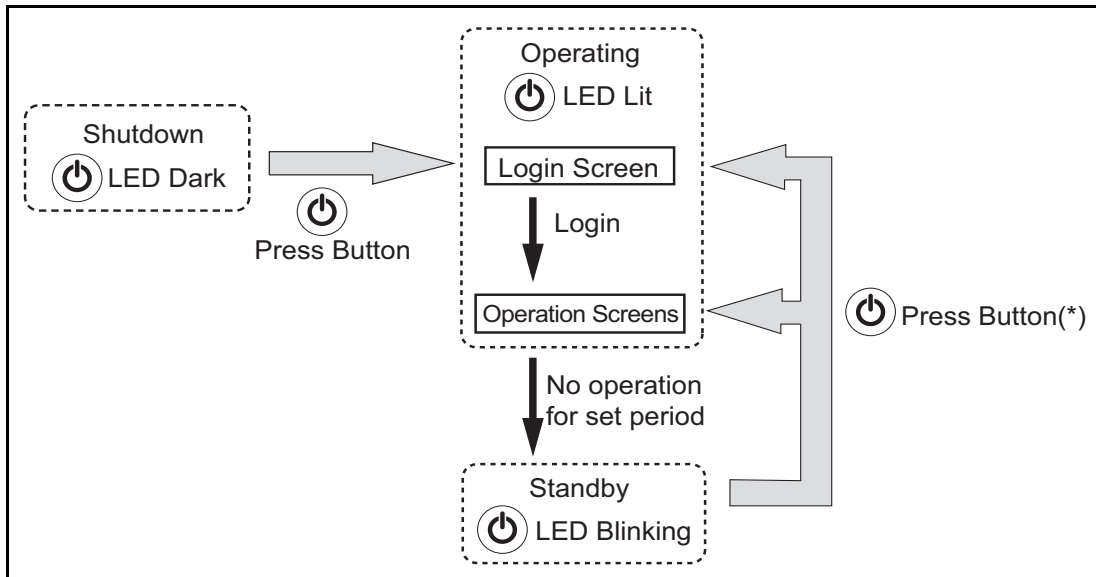
2

2.1 Using the Scanner Buttons	22
2.2 Using the LCD Touch Panel	24
2.3 Using the Keyboard	25

2.1 Using the Scanner Buttons

2.1.1 Using the Startup Button

When the scanner is off or in standby mode, pressing the startup button will start the scanner up and display the login screen.



* Other than pressing the startup button, any of the following operations will startup the scanner from standby mode.

- Loading the document in the ADF paper chute.
- Closing the top cover.
- Pressing a keyboard key.

The screen displayed after a re-startup varies according automatic login settings in the following way:

- If automatic login is enabled, the operation screen is displayed.
However, if "Never" is specified for "Standby after", and automatic login is disabled for the currently logged in user, the login screen is displayed.
- If automatic login is disabled, the login screen is displayed.

The idle time before standby mode entered can be changed. For details, refer to ["4.6.6 Setting the Time to Standby Mode" \(page 61\)](#).




When the scanner is starting up or in standby mode, be careful to never hold the startup button down for four seconds, as this will cause the scanner to shutdown. If this happens, saved scanned data may become unusable. If the startup button is accidentally held down too long, causing the scanner to shutdown, temporarily detach the AC adaptor to ensure that the power is completely off.

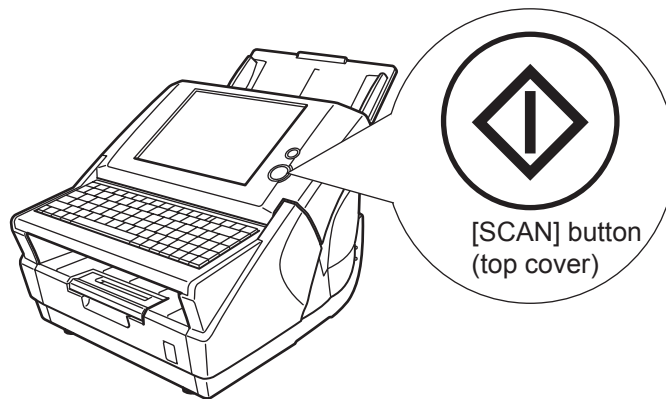
After turning the power off, wait for at least ten seconds before turning the power back on again. To shutdown the scanner correctly, press the [Shut-down] button on the "Login" screen.



Automatic login without displaying the "Login" screen is possible. For more details about how to set automatic login, refer to ["4.6.7 Setting the Login Method" \(page 63\)](#).

2.1.2 Using the Top Cover [SCAN] Button

When the  icon is displayed in a [Scan] button on the touch panel, either the touch panel [Scan] button or top cover [SCAN] button may be pressed to start the scan.



The touch panel [Scan] button may appear as follows:

- [Scan]
- [Scan & Send]
- [Scan & Print]
- [Scan & Save]
- [Scan More]

2.2 Using the LCD Touch Panel

When using the LCD touch panel, buttons only need to be lightly pressed to select them. For details how to operate the touch panel, refer to ["4.1 Administrator Screens via the Touch Panel" \(page 32\)](#) or ["6.2 Using Touch Panel Screens: Regular User" \(page 256\)](#).



- Do not use a pen or other hard object on the LCD touch panel.
The LCD touch panel may be damaged.
- If the screen is dirty, this may cause the LCD touch panel to malfunction.
Clean the screen if it is visibly dirty.
For details, refer to ["7.3 Cleaning the LCD Touch Panel" \(page 364\)](#).



2.3 Using the Keyboard

Selecting buttons or entering text can also be done on the keyboard.

The keyboard can be used in the following ways:

2.3.1 Using the Keyboard: Administrator

Key	Used to ...
Tab	Switch focus to the next field or button.
Space	Select the button in focus. However, this cannot be used for the [Download], [Get CSV], and [Backup] buttons.
Enter	Set the contents of the current screen. (Used instead of the [OK] button or [Login] button.)
↑ ↓	Change the value of the numerical input for the field in focus.
Page Up Page Down	Scroll up or down the contents on the screen. (Used instead of the scroll buttons.)



The keyboard cannot be used to select a top or left side menu button. Select buttons in the top menu by pressing the touch panel, or by using the mouse via the network interface.

2.3.2 Using the Keyboard: Regular Users

Key	Used to ...
Tab	Switch focus to the next field or button.
Space	Select the button in focus.
Enter	Set the contents of the current screen. (Used instead of the [OK] button or [Login] button.) (On Search screens, may be used instead of the [Find] button.)
Esc	Return to the previous screen. (On the "Main Menu" screen, may be used instead of the [Logout] button.)
Alt+F4	Shutdown the scanner. (Used instead of the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen.)
↑ ↓	Scroll up or down between items.
Page Up Page Down	Scroll up or down the page on the screen.

Chapter 3

Administrator Operations (Overview)

Admin

User

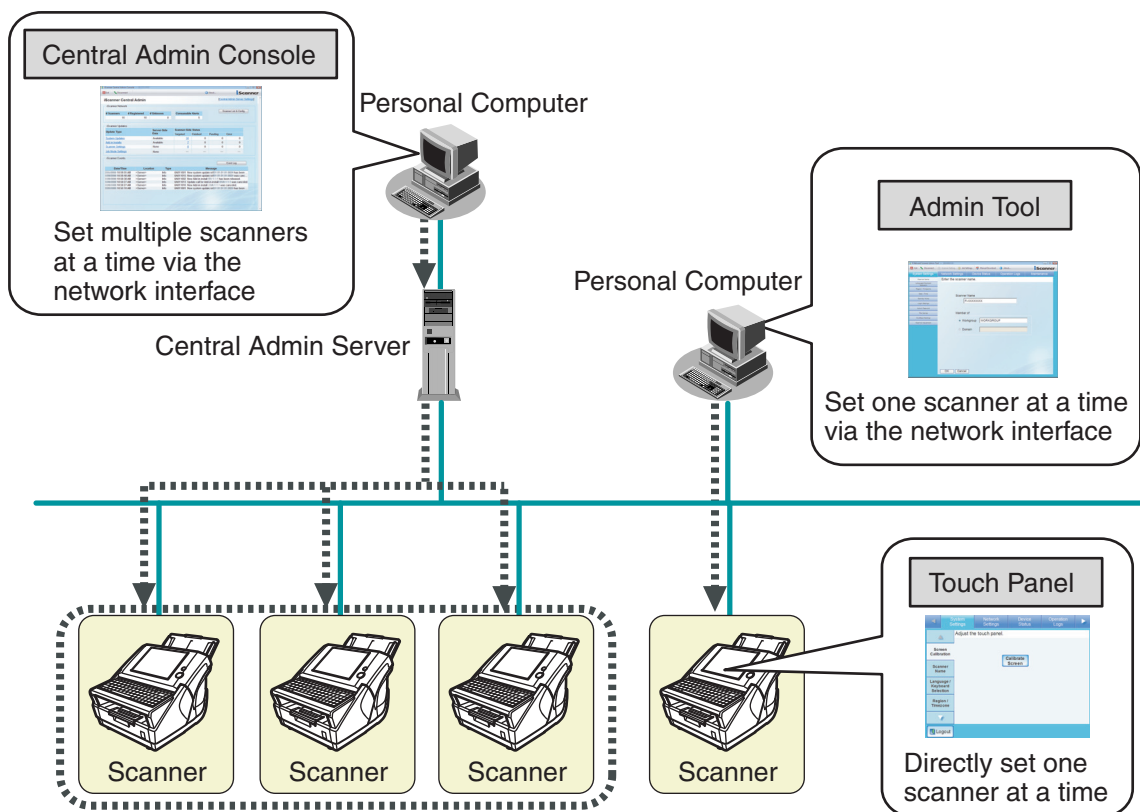
3.1 Operating and Managing Scanners..... 28

3.2 Required Scanner Function Settings 29

3.1 Operating and Managing Scanners

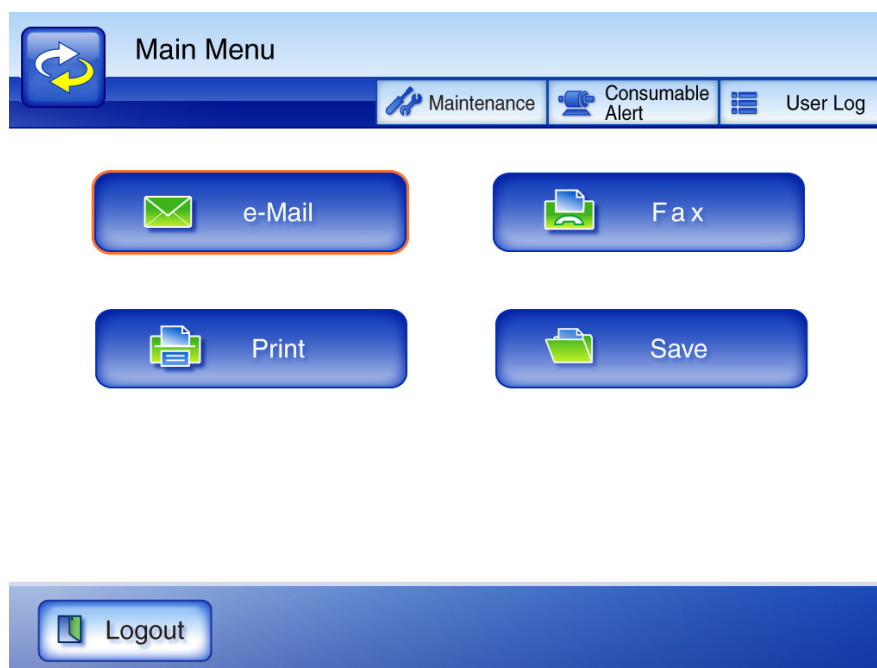
Scanner settings management can be implemented in the following ways.

- **LCD Touch Panel**
Scanner settings management can be implemented directly via the scanner's touch panel.
- **Admin Tool**
Scanner settings management, and updates can be implemented via the network interface by using the Admin Tool installed on a personal computer.
Settings can be performed for one scanner at a time.
- **Central Admin Console**
Scanner settings management, and updates can be implemented via the network interface by using the Central Admin Console installed on a personal computer.
Settings can be performed for multiple scanners at a time.
In this case, settings made with the Central Admin Console are applied to scanners via a Central Admin Server.



3.2 Required Scanner Function Settings

Which scanner settings are required differs according to scanner functions to be used.
The function buttons are displayed on the "Main Menu" screen, in accordance with the specified settings.



Top Menu						
	Left Side Menu	e-Mail	Fax	Print	Save	See ...
System Settings						
	Import Scanner Settings	—	—	—	—	page 233
	Screen Calibration	—	—	—	—	page 51
	Scanner Name	N	N	N	N	page 54
	Language/Keyboard Selection	—	—	—	—	page 57
	Region/Timezone	A	A	A	A	page 58
	Date/Time	A	A	A	A	page 59
	Standby Mode	—	—	—	—	page 61
	Login Settings	—	—	—	—	page 63
	Admin Password	A	A	A	A	page 66
	File Names	—	—	—	A	page 67
	Multifeed Settings	—	—	—	—	page 71
	Scanner Adjustment	—	—	—	—	page 74

Top Menu						
	Left Side Menu	e-Mail	Fax	Print	Save	See ...
Network Settings						
	IP Address	N	N	N	N	page 76
	Admin Network	—	—	—	—	page 78
	Central Admin Server	—	—	—	—	page 80
	DNS Server	A	A	A	A	page 82
	WINS Server	A	A	A	A	page 84
	NTP Server	A	A	A	A	page 85
	Proxy Server	—	—	—	—	page 87
	Login LDAP Server	A (*1)	A (*1)	A (*1)	A (*1)	page 88
	e-Mail LDAP Server	—	—	—	—	page 93
	Customize LDAP Search	—	—	—	—	page 95
	SMTP Server	N	N	—	—	page 100
	Fax Server	—	N	—	—	page 101
	Network Printer	—	—	N	—	page 102
	Network Folder	—	—	—	N	page 115
	Alert Notification	A	A	A	A	page 128
	Ping	—	—	—	—	page 129
	Network Status	—	—	—	—	page 131

N: Necessary A: Advisable —: Not required

(*1): Only necessary if connecting to an LDAP server

Chapter 4

Administrator Operations (Touch Panel and Admin Tool)



This chapter provides an explanation of administrator operations (setting up and managing the scanner) via the scanner's touch panel, or via the network interface using the Admin Tool. The same operations may also be performed via the Central Admin Console [Edit Scanner Settings] and [Job Mode Settings] screens. For more details about the Central Admin Console screens, refer to ["Chapter 5 Administrator Operations \(Central Admin Console\)" \(page 193\)](#). Messages may appear while performing operations described in this chapter. For more details about these messages and actions to take, refer to ["E.1.2 System Log Messages" \(page 449\)](#).

Symbols used in this chapter:



: Administrator operating via the touch panel.



: Administrator operating via the network interface using the Admin Tool.



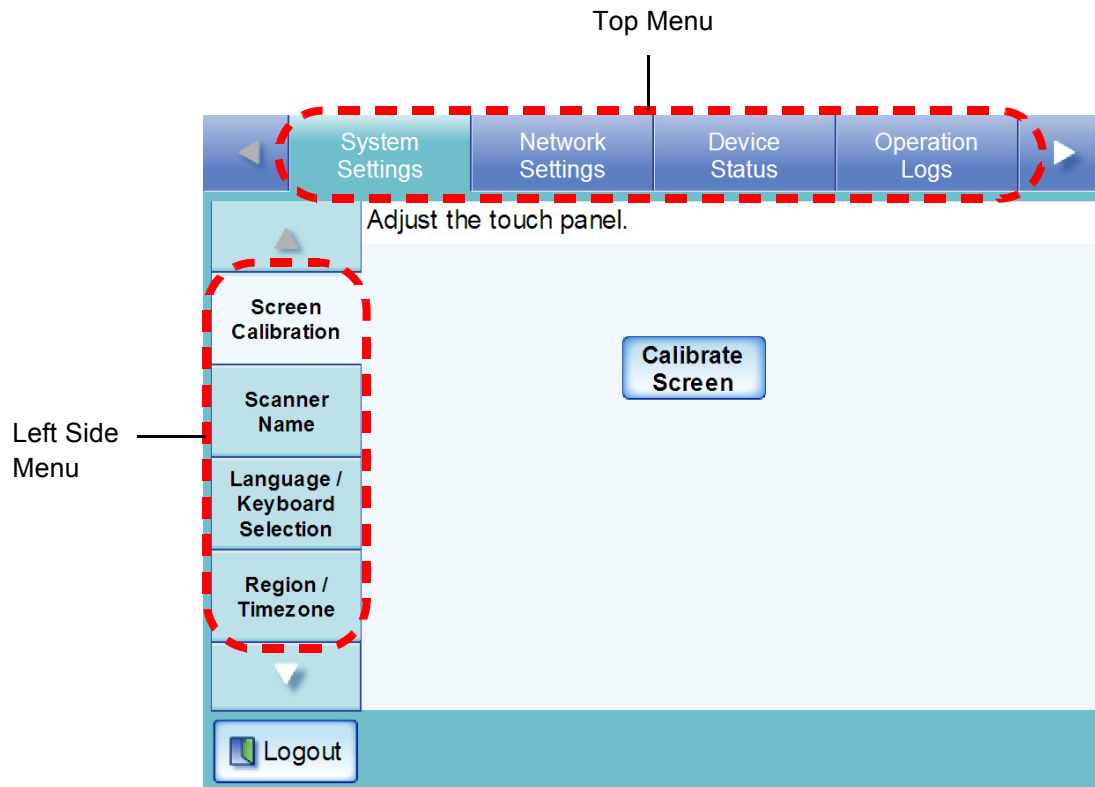
: Administrator operating via the network interface using the Central Admin Console.





4.1 Administrator Screens via the Touch Panel.....	32
4.2 Administrator Screens via the Network Interface	34
4.3 iScanner Administrator Login: via the Touch Panel.....	37
4.4 Setting up for Administrator Access via the Admin Tool	39
4.5 iScanner Administrator Login: via the Admin Tool	48
4.6 Using the System Settings Menus	51
4.7 Using the Network Settings Menus	76
4.8 Using the Device Status Menus.....	133
4.9 Using the Operation Logs Menus.....	137
4.10 Using the Maintenance Menus.....	143
4.11 Setting Job Features.....	159

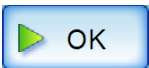
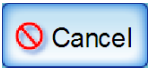
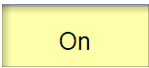
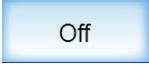
4.1 Administrator Screens via the Touch Panel

4.1.1 Menu Tabs and Buttons

On the touch panel screens (administrator), when one of the top menu tabs is selected, the related function tabs are displayed on the left side menu.



Actual icon	Shown in manual as...	Used to ...
	[Left] button, [Right] button	Switch between top menu tabs (scrolling the top menu as necessary).
	[Up] button, [Down] button	Switch between side menu tabs (scrolling the left side menu as necessary).
	[List] button	Display a list of possible selections.
	[Logout] button	Log the current user out.

Actual icon	Shown in manual as...	Used to ...
	[OK] button	Accept any changes to the current screen settings.
	[Cancel] button	Abandon any input to the current screen, and keep present settings and/or return to the previous screen.
	[On] button	If the button color is yellow, it means that the button is selected.
	[Off] button	If the button color is blue, it means that the button is not selected.

4.1.2 Input Fields and Entering Characters

Only passwords for the following fields are case sensitive.

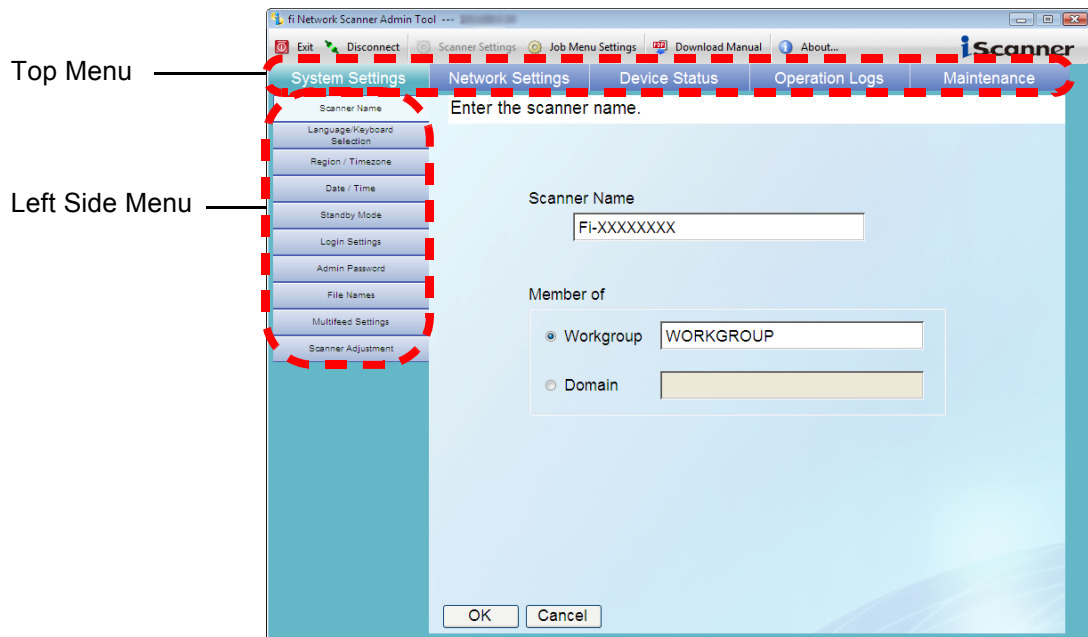
Screen	Field name	See...
Login	Password	page 37 page 48
Authentication screen for setting a domain	Password	page 54
Login Settings	Password	page 63
Admin Password	Current Password New Password Confirm New Password	page 66
Authentication screen for setting a network printer	Password	page 102
Authentication screen for setting a network folder	Password	page 115
FTP Path for setting a network folder	Password	page 121

4.2 Administrator Screens via the Network Interface

4.2.1 Menu Tabs and Buttons

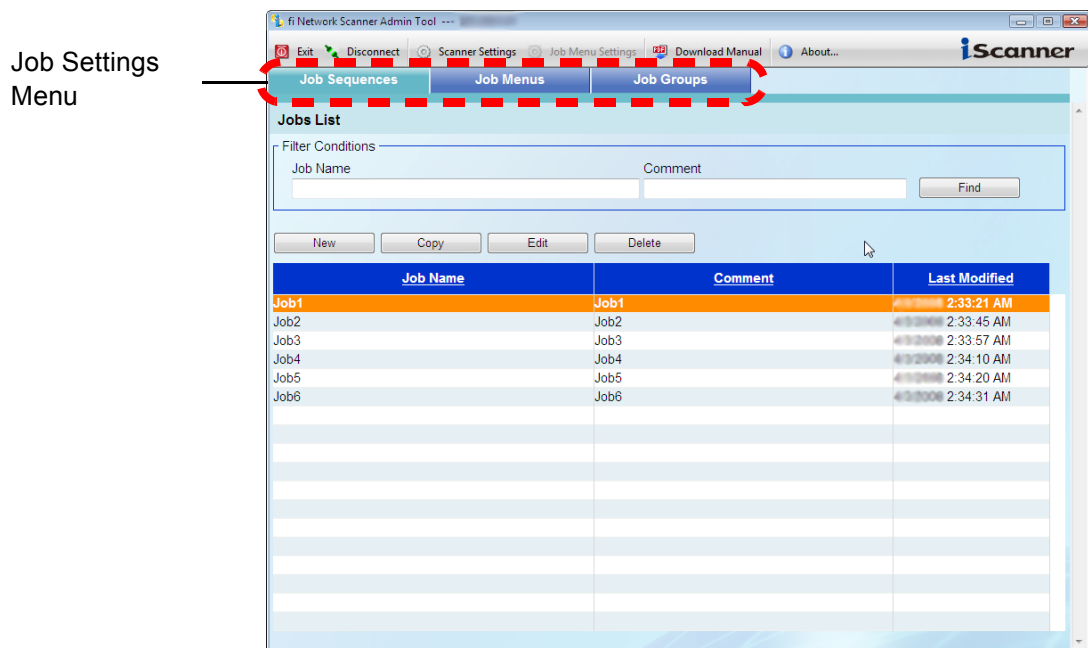
- When the [Scanner Settings] button is pressed


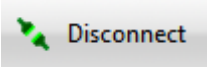
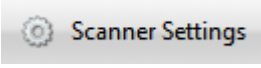

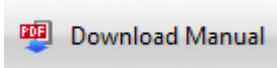
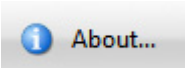
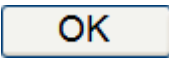
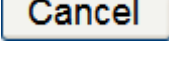
On the Admin Tool scanner settings screens, when one of the top menu tabs is selected, the related function tabs are displayed on the left side menu.



- When the [Job Mode Settings] button is pressed

On the Admin Tool job mode settings screens, when one of the Job Settings Menu tabs is selected, the associated settings screen is displayed.



Actual icon	Shown in manual as...	Used to ...
 Exit	[Exit] button	Close the Admin Tool.
 Disconnect	[Disconnect] button	Disconnect the connection to a scanner.
 Scanner Settings	[Scanner Settings] button	Access the scanner settings top menu.
 Job Menu Settings	[Job Menu Settings] button	Access the job menu settings window.
 Download Manual	[Download Manual] button	Download the manual.
 About...	[About] button	Show the version of the Admin Tool installed.
 OK	[OK] button	Accept any changes to the current screen settings.
 Cancel	[Cancel] button	Abandon any input to the current screen, and keep present settings and/or return to the previous screen.

4.2.2 Input Fields and Entering Characters

Only passwords for the following fields are case sensitive.

Screen	Field name	See...
Login	Password	page 37 page 48
Authentication screen for setting a domain	Password	page 54
Login Settings	Password	page 63
Admin Password	Current Password New Password Confirm New Password	page 66
Authentication screen for setting a network printer	Password	page 102
Authentication screen for setting a network folder	Password	page 115
FTP Path for setting a network folder	Password	page 121
Authentication screen for setting a job sequence	Password	page 163
Authentication screen for setting a job group	Password	page 182

4.3 iScanner Administrator Login: via the Touch Panel

Touch
Panel



- If the normal screen display does not appear (for example: an "X" mark appears), wait for a few minutes and try again. If the problem still occurs, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
- If a button is rapidly pressed many times in succession, a "The page cannot be displayed" message may appear. Selecting another tab or reloading the page will refresh the screen.



- The user name and initial password for the administrator are as follows:
User Name: admin
Password: password
- The scanner setup can be configured by one user.
- Session timeout time is 20 minutes (fixed). The session timeout time is extended by a further 20 minutes for the following:
 - when a tab on the top menu or left side menu is pressed
 - when the [OK] button is pressed

1. Enter a "User Name" and "Password".

Enter "admin" for the user name.

Passwords must be between 7 and 127 characters long.

Alphanumeric characters (case sensitive) and symbols may be entered.



- The "Caps Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Caps Lock is set.
- The "Num Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Num Lock is set.
- If "Global Catalog" is selected for the login LDAP server, the "UPN Suffix" input field is displayed.



A UPN suffix is not required when logging in as an administrator. Even if entered, it will be ignored.

2. Press the [Login] button.

⇒ If the user name and password are valid, the "System Settings" screen appears.

4.4 Setting up for Administrator Access via the Admin Tool

This section describes the required settings for logging in via the Admin Tool.



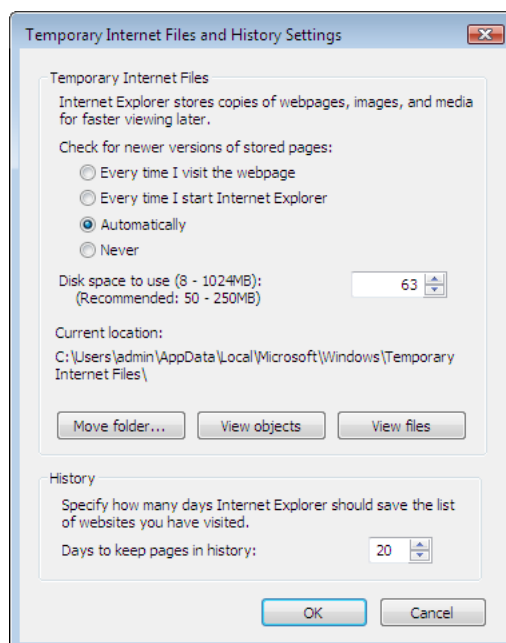
The following are required for administrator login via the Admin Tool:

- ["4.6.2 Setting the Scanner Name" \(page 54\)](#)
- ["4.6.8 Changing the Admin Password" \(page 66\)](#)
- ["4.7.1 Giving the Scanner an IP Address" \(page 76\)](#)
- ["4.7.2 Setting the Admin Network" \(page 78\)](#)
- ["4.7.4 Setting the DNS Server" \(page 82\)](#)
- ["4.7.5 Setting the WINS Server" \(page 84\)](#)

4.4.1 Checking the Internet Explorer cache settings

Check the Internet Explorer cache settings.

1. From the Internet Explorer [Tools] menu, select [Internet Options].
⇒ The "Internet Options" dialog box appears.
2. On the [General] tab, press the [Settings] button on the "Browsing history".
⇒ The "Temporary Internet Files and History Settings" dialog box appears.



3. For "Check for newer versions of stored pages", select "Automatically".
4. For "Disk space to use", specify 63MB or above.

5. Press the [OK] button.



- Different browser versions may require a different set up procedure.
- Do not use a proxy server setting.



If any updates or service packs are available for Internet Explorer, make sure they are applied.



4.4.2 Setting the Internet Explorer trusted sites

Enter the target scanner URL as Internet Explorer trusted sites.

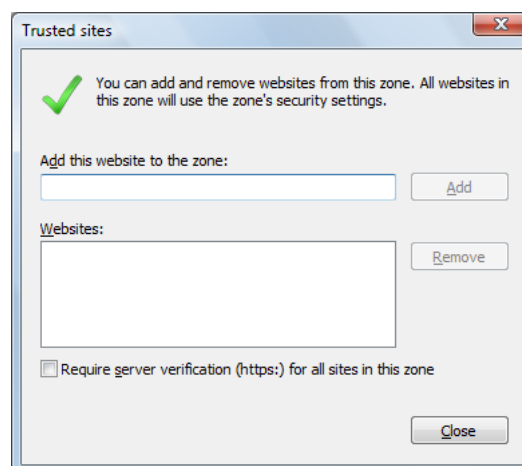
If not set, connection to a scanner is blocked, and certification cannot be installed.

1. From the Internet Explorer [Tools] menu, select [Internet Options].

⇒ The "Internet Options" dialog box appears.

2. On the [Security] tab, select [Trusted sites] and press the [Sites] button.

⇒ The "Trusted sites" dialog box appears.



3. Clear the "Require server verification (https:) for all sites in this zone" checkbox.

4. Enter the URL of the scanner in the "Add this website to the zone" field, and press the [Add] button.

Example: `http://IP_address or scanner_name/`



Different browser versions may require a different set up procedure.



If any updates or service packs are available for Internet Explorer, make sure they are applied.



4.4.3 Installing the Admin Tool

To setup the scanner via the network interface, install the Admin Tool to your personal computer.

1. According to the settings described in ["4.7.2 Setting the Admin Network" \(page 78\)](#), specify the URL in the following way.

- SSL is [Off], no port number change
http://scanner_name or IP_address/
- SSL is [Off], port number change
http://scanner_name or IP_address:port_number/
For port_number, enter the changed port number.
- SSL is [On], no port number change
https:// scanner_name or IP_address/
- SSL is [On], port number change
https://scanner_name or IP_address:port_number/
For port_number, enter the changed port number.

For SSL, the "Security Alert" window is displayed when connecting.

Press the [Yes] button on the "Security Alert" window.

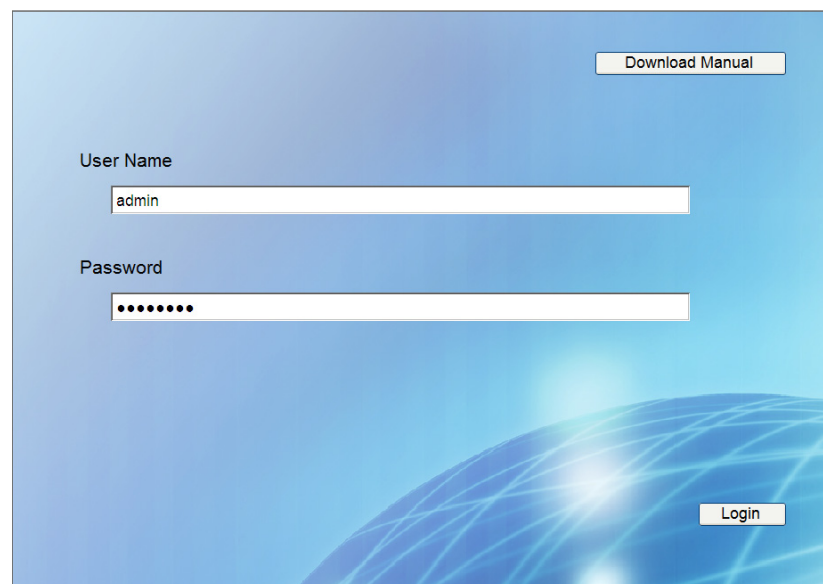
⇒ The login screen appears.

2. Enter a "User Name" and "Password".

Enter "admin" for the user name.

Passwords must be between 7 and 127 characters long.

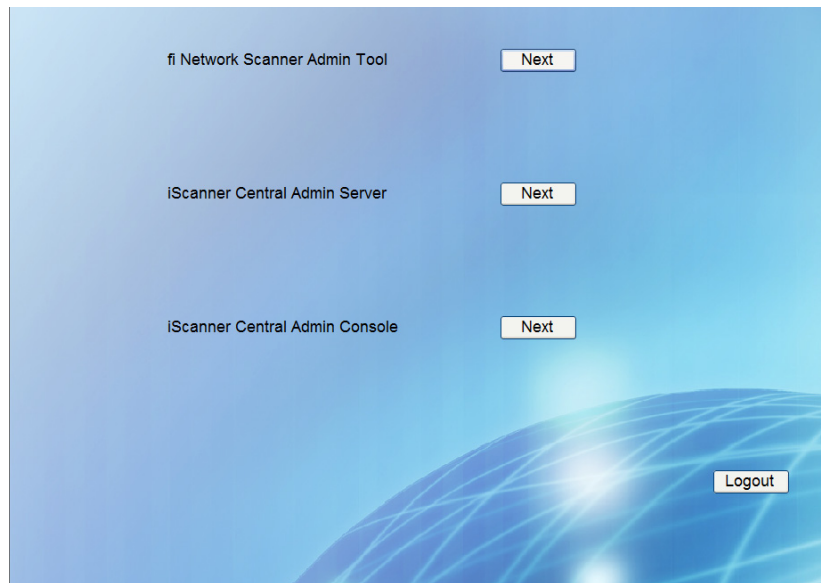
Alphanumeric characters (case sensitive) and symbols may be entered.



3. Press the [Login] button.

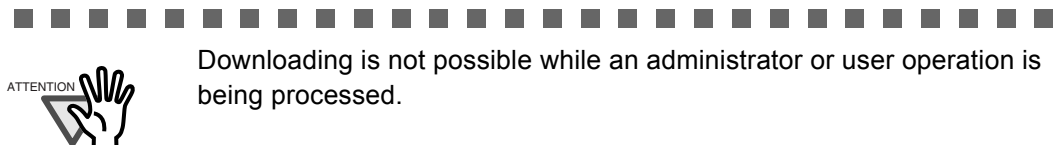
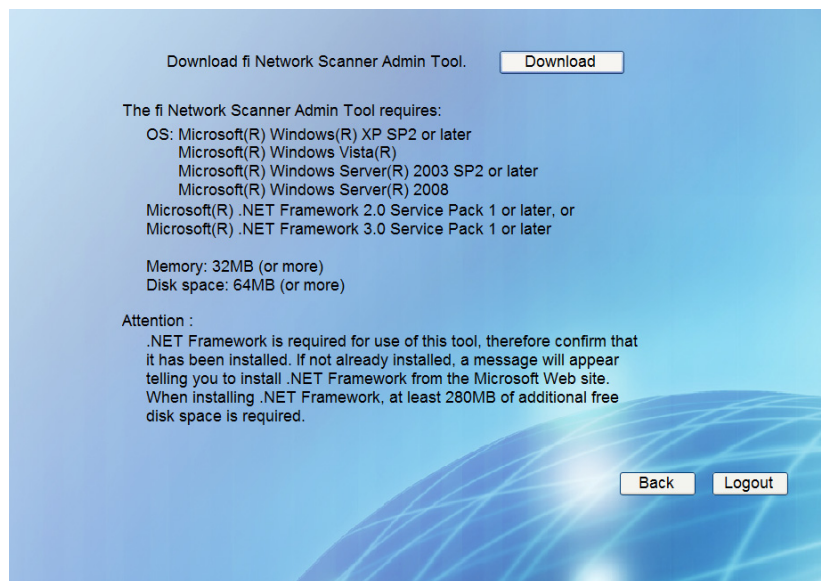
⇒ The download screen appears.

4. Press the [Next] button for the fi Network Scanner Admin Tool download.



⇒ The fi Network Scanner Admin Tool download screen appears.

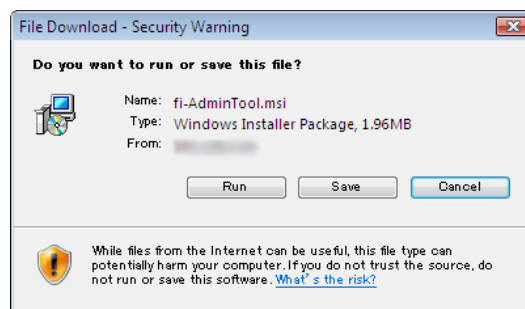
5. Press the [Download] button.



Downloading is not possible while an administrator or user operation is being processed.

⇒ The "File Download - Security Warning" dialog box appears.

6. Press the [Run] button.



⇒ The fi Network Scanner Admin Tool Setup Wizard appears.



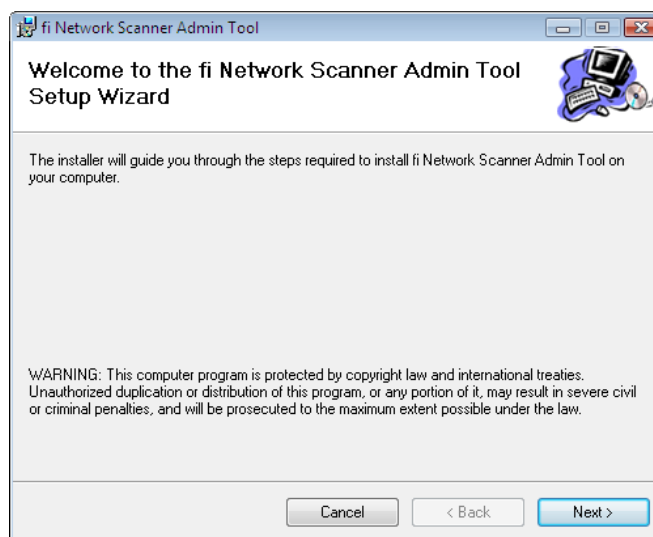
Do not close the Web browser or logout until installation is complete.



If .NET Framework is not installed, the Microsoft Website is accessed when installing the Admin Tool.
After installing .NET Framework, try again from [Step 1](#).



7. Press the [Next] button.

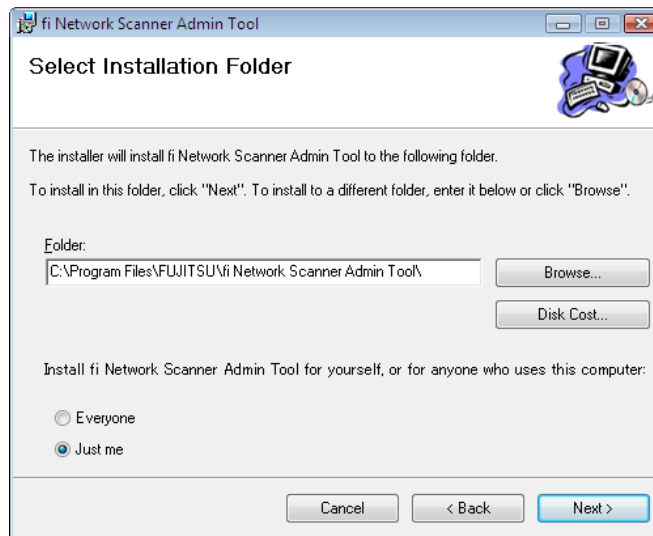
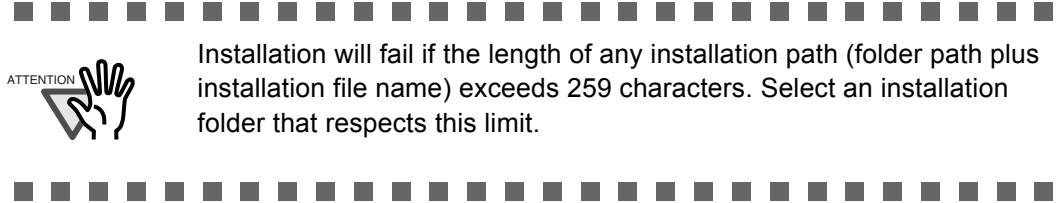


⇒ The "Select Installation Folder" window appears.

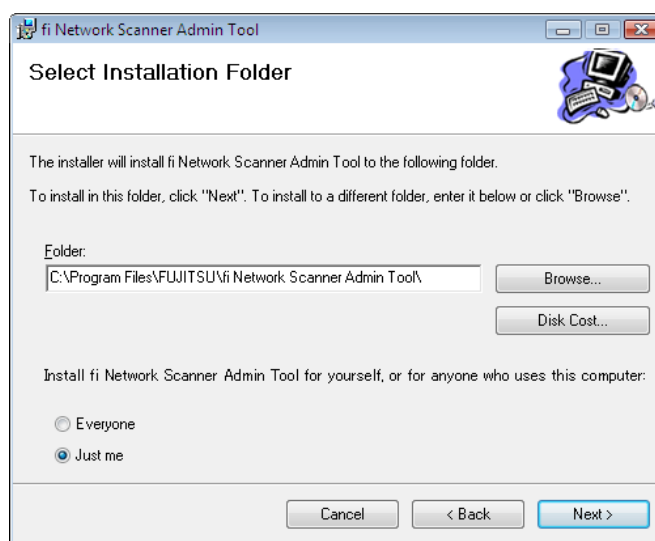
8. Specify an installation folder for the Admin Tool.

To select a different folder, press the [Browse] button.

To check the free space available for the currently selected folder, press the [Disk Cost] button.



9. Select the target user(s), and press the [Next] button.



- ⇒ Follow the prompts of the install wizard windows until a "fi Network Scanner Admin Tool has been successfully installed" message indicates that the installation has completed. Press the [Close] button.
- ⇒ When the installation is completed, logout of the scanner, and close the Web browser.
- ⇒ The Admin Tool should now be usable.
Select the [Start] button, select the [All Programs] - [fi-scanner V2.1] sub-menu, and then select on the [fi Network Scanner Admin Tool].



- If this tool has already been installed, skip to section ["4.5 iScanner Administrator Login: via the Admin Tool" \(page 48\)](#) for details about Admin Tool operations.
- From the Web browser [Tools] menu, select [Internet Options], and note the following points about the settings shown on the "Internet Options" dialog box.
 - In the [Accessibility] dialog box shown when selecting the [Accessibility] button on the [General] tab, do not change the formatting and user style sheet settings. If these settings are changed, the displayed style of the Admin Tool may be corrupted.
 - In the "Language Preference" dialog box shown when selecting the [Languages] button on the [General] tab, move the same language as for the Central Admin Server operation system to the top. If a different language is specified, a problem may occur with the input or displays for the Admin Tool.
 - On the [Security] tab, if "Security level for this zone" is set to "High", part of the Admin Tool screen may not be correctly displayed. In this case, on the [Security] tab, add the scanner or Central Admin Server to the trusted site zone and select the [Default Level] button. Or select the [Custom Level] button and set [Binary and script behaviors] to "Enable".

4.4.4 Uninstalling the Admin Tool

This description uses Windows Vista® as an example.

The Admin Tool can be uninstalled from the personal computer it was installed on, from [Control Panel] - [Programs and Features].



Close the Admin Tool before uninstalling. If the Admin Tool is uninstalled while still open, normal operation of the open Admin Tool is not guaranteed.



4.5 iScanner Administrator Login: via the Admin Tool



The Admin Tool can be set up to manage the scanner via a personal computer. This section explains how to login using the Admin Tool.



- If the normal screen display does not appear (for example: an "X" mark appears), wait for a few minutes and try again. If the problem still occurs, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
- If a button is rapidly pressed many times in succession, a "The page cannot be displayed" message may appear. Selecting another tab or reloading the page will refresh the screen.



- For details about setting up to manage the scanner via a personal computer, refer to ["1.4.1 Requirements for Admin Tool" \(page 11\)](#).
- The user name and initial password for the administrator are as follows:
User Name: admin
Password: password
- The scanner setup can be configured by one user.
- Session timeout time is 20 minutes (fixed). The session timeout time is extended by a further 20 minutes for the following:
 - when a tab on the top menu or left side menu is pressed
 - when the [OK] button is pressed

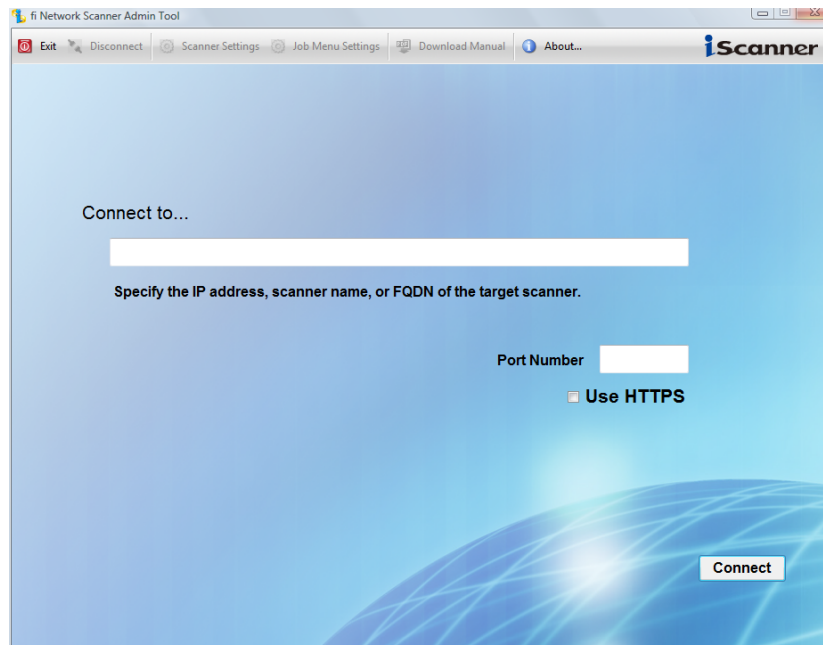


1. From the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs]-[fi-scanner V2.1], and then select [fi Network Scanner Admin Tool].

⇒ The Admin Tool is started.

2. Specify the "Connect to" (of the scanner).

Enter the IP address, scanner name, or FQDN for the scanner to be setup or managed.



- If the port number was changed in "[4.7.2 Setting the Admin Network](#)" ([page 78](#)), enter the port number changed for Port Number.
- When trying to connect with a port number other than the specified number, it will take up to 20 seconds before a connection error occurs.
- To use SSL, select the [Use HTTPS] checkbox.
- If the Admin Tool is started while there is insufficient free memory, a script error may occur. Try again after ensuring that there is enough free memory.



3. Press the [Connect] button.

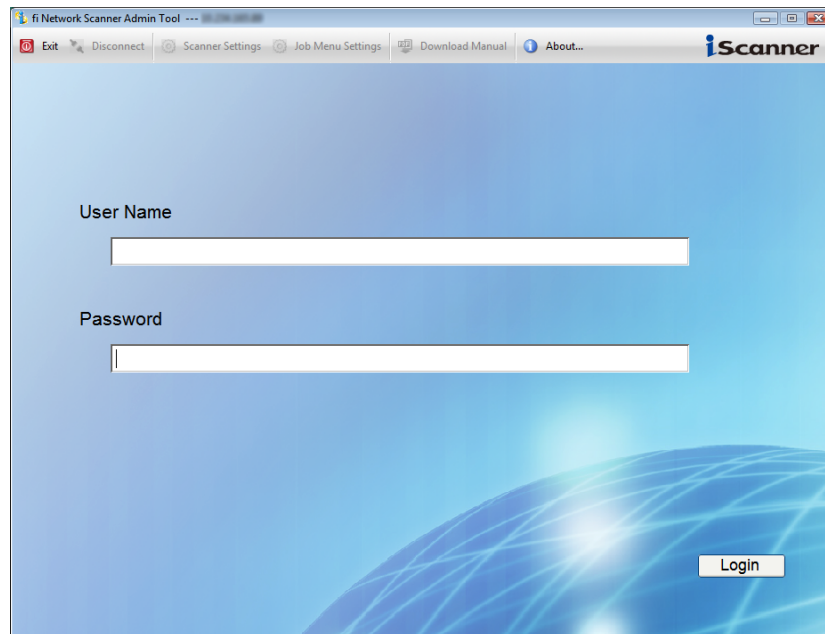
⇒ The login screen appears.

4. Enter a "User Name" and "Password".

Enter "admin" for the user name.

Passwords must be between 7 and 127 characters long.

Alphanumeric characters (case sensitive) and symbols may be entered.



5. Press the [Login] button.

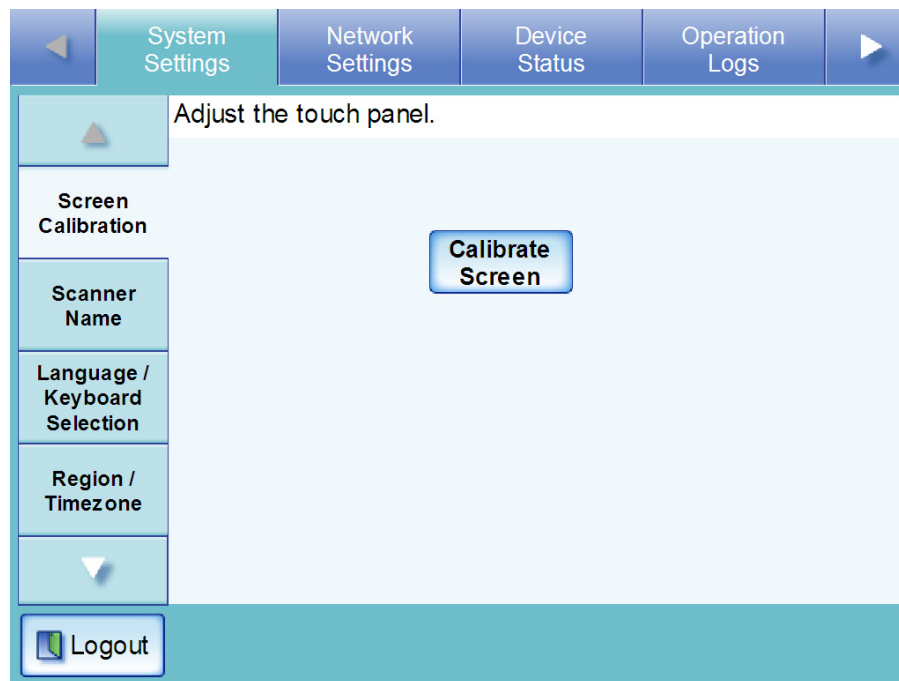
⇒ If the user name and password are valid, the "System Settings" screen appears.

4.6 Using the System Settings Menus

4.6.1 Calibrating the Touch Panel Touch Panel

This should be done when the touch panel responses seem out of alignment with the positions of objects on the LCD screen.

1. Select the [System Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Screen Calibration] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Screen Calibration" screen appears.
3. Press the [Calibrate Screen] button.



⇒ A blank calibration screen appears, with a red "+" (adjustment mark) in the top-left corner.

-
4. Touch the "+" with your fingertip.

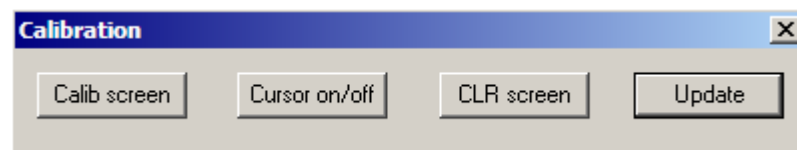
After being touched, the "+" will move to the next calibration position. Each time it stops, touch it again.



The keyboard may also be used on the calibration screen:

- Press the [Home] key to jump straight to the post-calibration test screen.
- Use the [←] [↑][↓][→] to move the "+" to a different calibration point. This allows a bad touch to be redone.
- Press the [Esc] key to stop the calibration process and return to the "Screen Calibration" screen.
- Press the [Enter] key to close the error dialog. (Not normally needed.)

Repeat until the test screen appears, with the following "Calibration" dialog box:



5. Trace a line on the screen with your fingertip.
 - ⇒ A corresponding line will appear on-screen.
 - If the line does not appear correctly, press the [Calib screen] button to return to [Step 4](#).
 - If the screen becomes cluttered, press the [CLR screen] button to remove all the lines.
 - The [Cursor on/off] button cannot be used.
6. When you are satisfied with the touch screen response, press the [Update] button.
 - ⇒ This saves the current calibration data, completing the calibration process, and returns you to the "Screen Calibration" screen.



If the calibration is not performed carefully, or the [Enter] key is pressed before all the calibration points have been touched, the following error message may appear:

Parameter Error. Please input, again

Press the [Enter] key to dismiss the error dialog, and perform the calibration from [Step 4](#) again, being careful to touch each calibration point accurately.



4.6.2 Setting the Scanner Name

Touch
Panel

Admin
Tool

A scanner name may be set to provide a network alias for the device.



Do not use a name already being used in the network.

Name duplication will cause a network connection error. For more details about how to deal with such errors, refer to "[E.1.1 Administrator Screen Messages](#)" (page 435).

1. Select the [System Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Scanner Name] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Scanner Name" screen appears.

3. Enter a Scanner Name.
Scanner names may be up to 15 characters long.
Alphanumeric characters (case sensitive) and hyphens may be entered.
Scanner names cannot consist of numerical characters only.
A hyphen cannot be used as the first character of a scanner name.

- For a workgroup
Press the [Workgroup] button, and enter a workgroup name.
Workgroup names may be up to 15 characters long.
The default name is "WORKGROUP".
- For a domain
Press the [Domain] button and enter a domain name.
Domain names may be up to 155 characters long.

⇒ The restart confirmation screen appears.






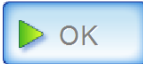
- When specifying the scanner as a domain member
- When changing the name of a scanner that is a member of a domain

Authentication required for access.

User Name

Password

Num Lock Caps Lock

1. Enter a user name.
User names may be up to 256 characters long. Check the required authentication information when adding to a domain, and enter a user name which can be added to the domain.
2. Enter a password.
Passwords may be up to 256 characters long.
3. Press the [OK] button.
If the user name and password are valid, the restart confirmation screen appears.

6. Press the [Now] button.

⇒ The system is restarted.

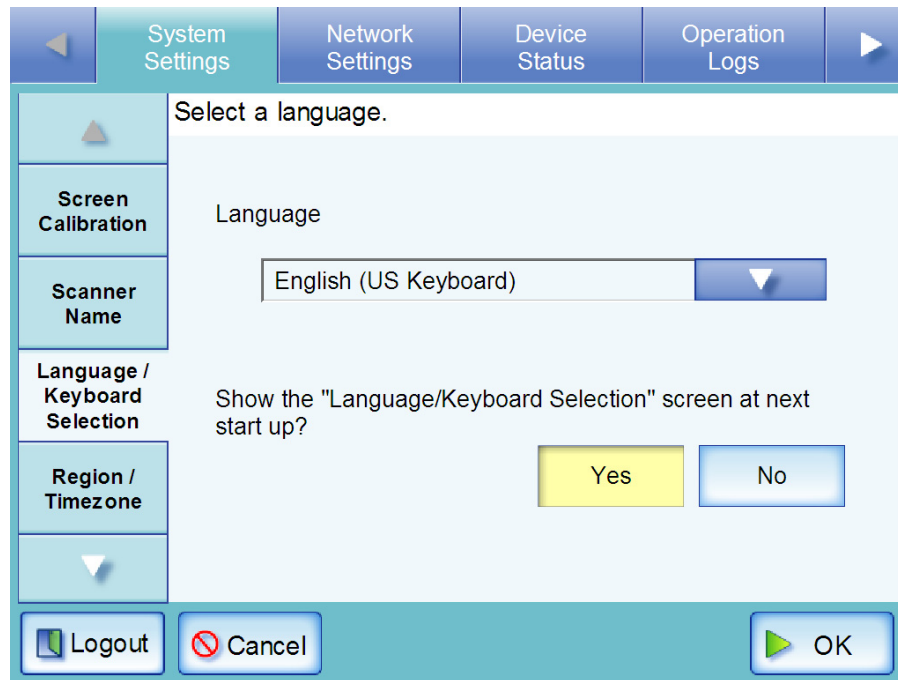


- If the new scanner name is the same as another device name already in use on the network, communication problems will occur. In this case, try the following steps:
 1. Disconnect the LAN cable, and press the [Shutdown] button on the touch panel to turn the scanner off.
 2. Reboot the scanner with the LAN cable disconnected, and enter a non-duplicate scanner name.
 3. Reboot the scanner again.
 4. Re-connect the LAN cable to the scanner.
- The connection will be lost if the scanner name is changed via the network interface. To continue with other settings, wait a short time for the device to restart, then login to the network interface again.

4.6.3 Setting the Language



1. Select the [System Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Language/Keyboard Selection] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Language/Keyboard Selection" screen appears.



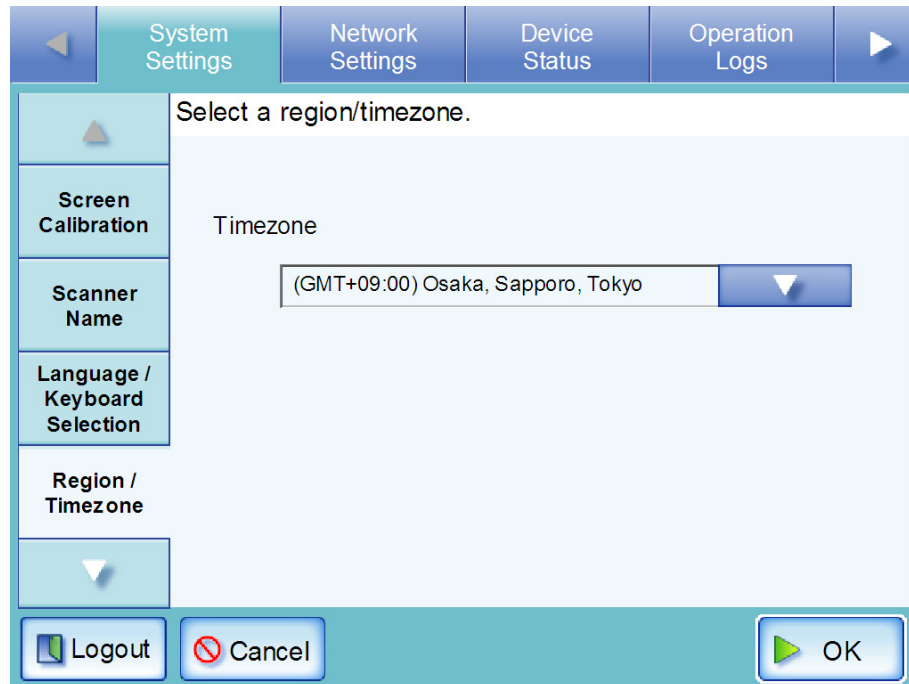
You can select whether or not to display this screen again at the next scanner startup. To display the screen again, for "Show the "Language/Keyboard Selection" screen at next start up?", press the [Yes] button. To not display this screen at next start up, press the [No] button.

3. Press the [List] button for the "Language" input field.
⇒ A list of languages appears.
4. Select a language.
Select the desired language for the operating environment.
⇒ This returns to the "Language/Keyboard Selection" screen.
5. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ A language setting confirmation message appears in the selected language.
6. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The system is restarted.

4.6.4 Setting the Region/Timezone

Touch Panel Admin Tool Central Admin

1. Select the [System Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Region/Timezone] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Region/Timezone" screen appears.



3. Press the [List] button for the "Timezone" input field.
The default timezone is "(GMT+09:00) Osaka, Sapporo, Tokyo".
⇒ A list of timezones appears.
4. Select a timezone.
5. Select whether "Daylight Savings Time" should be on or off.
This option is not shown for timezones where daylight savings time is not used.
6. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The Region/Timezone is set.

4.6.5 Setting the Date/Time

Touch
PanelAdmin
ToolCentral
Admin

1. Select the [System Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Date/Time] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Date/Time" screen appears, with the date/time of the screen display shown in [Date/Time].

Select a date format and set the date/time.

Date / Time

Date Format MMddyyyy

Date/Time 03:30:50

Get Time

Logout Cancel OK

For Central Admin Console, the "Date/Time" input field and [Get Time] button cannot be used.

3. Press the Date Format [List] button.
⇒ A date format drop down list appears.
4. Select a date format.
This date format is applied to the date/time when it is used to name scan data files and the date shown on screens.
5. Enter the current date and time in the "Date/Time" input field.
The date and time shown are those current for when the "Date/Time" tab on the left side menu was selected.
The date/time range that may be entered is from "January 1st 2001, 00:00:00" to "December 31st 2037, 23:59:59".
When entering a one digit number for date and time, such as for January, prepend "0" and enter "01" in the input field.

6. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The date and time are set.



- Pressing the [Get Time] button refreshes the current value of the internal system date/time.
- An adjustment that advances the system time by 20 minutes or more results in a session timeout and causes the scanner to logout. However, the specified time adjustment will be made.

4.6.6 Setting the Time to Standby Mode

Touch
PanelAdmin
ToolCentral
Admin

The scanner can be set to automatically log out and then enter a standby state after specified periods of non-use.

For any screen after regular user login, if no operations have been performed for the specified "Logout after" period of time, the scanner automatically logs the user out.



The scanner will not logout while the following operations are ongoing:

- Scanning documents
- e-Mailing a scan
- Faxing a scan
- Printing a scan
- Saving a scan

When logged in as a regular user, if no operations are performed for the specified "Standby after" period of time, the scanner enters standby mode. The touch panel is switched off when the scanner enters standby mode.

When the startup button is pressed, the scanners will startup from standby mode.

The screen displayed after a re-startup varies according automatic login settings in the following way:

- If automatic login is enabled, the operation screen is displayed.
However, if "Never" is specified for "Standby after", and automatic login is disabled for the currently logged in user, the login screen is displayed.
- If automatic login is disabled, the login screen is displayed.

For screen transmissions, refer to ["2.1.1 Using the Startup Button" \(page 22\)](#).

- ⇒ The "Standby Mode" screen appears.

The screenshot shows a 'System Settings' window with a sidebar on the left containing buttons for 'Date / Time', 'Standby Mode', 'Login Settings', 'Admin Password', and a downward arrow. The main area is titled 'Set the standby and logout wait times.' and contains two settings:

- Logout after:** A text box containing '5 min' and a dropdown arrow.
- Standby after:** A text box containing '15 min' and a dropdown arrow.

At the bottom of the window are three buttons: 'Logout' (with a computer icon), 'Cancel' (with a red prohibition sign), and 'OK' (with a green play button icon).

- ⇒ A list of "Logout after" times appears.



If the [Never] button is selected for "Logout after", the selected time for "Standby after" is used as the wait time before switching to standby mode.

If a button other than [Never] is selected, set a "Standby after" time that is longer than the "Logout after" time.

- ⇒ The scanner is set to first standby and then automatically log out after the specified times.

4.6.7 Setting the Login Method

Touch
PanelAdmin
ToolCentral
Admin

The login settings are as follows.

- Automatic login settings
Set the scanner to automatically login without displaying the "Login" screen, when the scanner power is switched on or restarted.
For automatic login, the user name and password specified in the "Login Settings" screen is used. However, if the scanner automatically logs out, or the [Logout] button is pressed, the "Login" screen is displayed.
- guest account validity
Set whether or not to enable login with the guest account.

1. Select the [System Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Login Settings] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Login Settings" screen appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Login Settings' screen. At the top, there are tabs for 'System Settings', 'Network Settings', 'Device Status', and 'Operation Logs'. The 'System Settings' tab is selected. On the left side, there is a vertical menu with options: 'Date / Time', 'Standby Mode', 'Login Settings' (which is highlighted), 'Admin Password', and a scroll arrow. The main area of the screen is titled 'Enter the user login settings.' and contains the following controls:

- Auto Login:** Two buttons, 'On' (blue) and 'Off' (yellow). The 'Off' button is currently selected.
- User Name:** A text input field.
- Password:** A text input field.
- Num Lock:** A toggle switch, currently turned off.
- Caps Lock:** A toggle switch, currently turned off.
- Guest Account:** Two buttons, 'On' (yellow) and 'Off' (blue). The 'On' button is currently selected.

At the bottom of the screen, there are three buttons: 'Logout' (with a small icon), 'Cancel' (with a red 'X' icon), and 'OK' (with a green play icon).

3. Select whether or not to enable automatic login.
The default setting is [Off].
Select the [On] button to enable automatic login.

Select the [Off] button to disable automatic login.



- The automatic login setting is applied after the scanner is restarted or resumed from standby mode.
- If Central Admin is enabled in a scanner for which automatic login is enabled, when the scanner is started or resumed from standby mode, preference is given to checking for available scanner settings, add-in installs and system settings in the Central Admin Server, over automatic login. If scanner settings, add-in installs or system settings are available, they are applied to the scanner. However, if the number of scanners connecting to the Central Admin Server exceeds the maximum number possible, the processes is skipped, and automatic login is performed. Updates will be applied when a scanner is logged out, or when next started or resumed from standby mode.



4. Enter a user name and password.

User name and password can only be set if the [On] button was selected in [Step 3](#).

Field Name	Description
User Name	User names may be up to 64 characters long. All alphanumerics (case sensitive) and some symbols are allowed. User names may not start with a "@" or ".". The following symbols cannot be used: / \ [] : ; = , + * ? < > "
Password	Passwords may be up to 256 characters long, and all alphanumerics (case sensitive) and symbols are allowed.

The scanner follows the Active Directory user name format when authenticating the user login.

User Name	Authentication Target
SAM Account Name Does not contain a "@"	Active Directory user login name (sAMAccountName). (sAMAccountName authentication process is performed) Example: user
User Principal Name Contains a "@"	Active Directory user login name (userPrincipalName). (userPrincipalName authentication process) Example: user@example.com



- When an administrator is logging in from a scanner, [Caps Lock] or [Num Lock] is displayed.
The "Caps Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Caps Lock is set.
The "Num Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Num Lock is set.
- If a UPN suffix is entered for a user name for automatic login, it is ignored.



5. Select whether or not logging with the guest account is possible.

The default setting is [On].

Select the [On] button to enable login with the guest account.

Select the [Off] button to disable login with the guest account.

6. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The selected contents are set.

4.6.8 Changing the Admin Password

Touch
Panel

Admin
Tool



Login is not possible without a password.

If a password has been lost or forgotten, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider. This may incur a cost to reset the scanner.

1. Select the [System Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Admin Password] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Admin Password" screen appears.

3. Enter the "Current Password", "New Password", and "Confirm New Password".
A password may be between 7 and 127 characters long. Alphanumeric characters (case sensitive) and symbols may be entered.



The "Caps Lock" and "Num Lock" indicators are shown when the administrator logs in via the scanner's touch panel.

The "Caps Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Caps Lock is set.

The "Num Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Num Lock is set.

4. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The new admin password is set.

4.6.9 Setting a File Name Format

Touch
PanelAdmin
ToolCentral
Admin

The "Save as" entered on the "Save" screen is displayed as the default value for this setting.

1. Select the [System Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [File Names] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "File Names" screen appears.

3. Press the Sub-folder [List] button.
⇒ The sub-folder list appears.
4. Select a sub-folder name format.
 - If [No sub-folder] is selected
A new sub-folder is not created when saving scanned data.
 - If ["User Name" sub-folder] is selected
A new sub-folder is created for the currently logged in user name when saving scanned data to a folder.
 - If ["Date" sub-folder] is selected
A new sub-folder is created for the date of the scan when saving scanned data to a folder.
Select the Date Format [List] button to change the date format.
 - If ["User Name+Date" sub-folder] is selected.
A new sub-folder is created with the user name + date when saving scanned data to a folder.
Select the Date Format [List] button to change the date format.
Select the Delimiter [List] button to change the delimiter.

5. Select a name format.

By default, "Scanner Name" + "Date" + "Time" is entered.

- If the [Prefix] button is selected

The character string entered in the input field is used as the file name.

This may be up to 32 characters long, excluding the following symbols.

\ / : * ? " < > |



The following file names cannot be used:

- CON
- PRN
- AUX
- CLOCK\$
- NUL
- COM0 to COM9
- LPT0 to LPT9



- If the [Scanner Name] button is selected
The scanner name is used as the file name.
- If the [User Name] button is selected
The name of the currently logged in user is used as the file name.
- If the [Date] button is selected
The date of the scan is used as the file name. Select the Date Format [List] button to change the date format.
- If the [Time] button is selected
The start time of the scan is used as the file name.



File Names are created according to the following order of preference

- Prefix
- Scanner Name
- User Name
- Date
- Time

Select the Date Format [List] button to change the date format. Select the Delimiter [List] button to change the delimiter.



6. Press the Seq. Number [List] button.

⇒ The sequence number list appears.

7. Select a sequence number.

The sequence number is added to the end of a file name.

The default value is "Min 3 digit Seq. Number".

If "No Sequence Number" is selected, a sequence number is not added.



If the file name which exceeds the maximum sequence number possible already exists in the target network folder for saving, the sequence numbers are not added correctly.



The following explains the way in which sequence numbers are added.

- Sequence numbers start from 1, and file names are assigned using the largest value that exists.
For example, if "A" is entered in the "Prefix" input field, "Min 3 digit Seq. Number" is selected for the Seq. Number [List] button, and "A001.pdf", "A002.pdf", and "A004.pdf" already exist, subsequent file names are assigned in the following order.
"A005.pdf", "A006.pdf", "A007.pdf", "A008.pdf"...
- File name "A003.pdf" is skipped.
- If the selected number of columns for the Seq. Number [List] button is exceeded, subsequent file names are assigned using the next digit.
For example, if "A" is entered in the "Prefix" input field, "Min 3 digit Seq. Number" is selected for the Seq. Number [List] button, and "A001.pdf" to "A998.pdf" already exist, subsequent file names are assigned in the following order.
"A999.pdf", "A1000.pdf", "A1001.pdf", "A1002.pdf"...
- The maximum sequence number is "4294967295". If it is exceeded, the skipped minimum number is used for the file name.
For example, if "A" is entered in the "Prefix" input field, "Min 3 digit Seq. Number" is selected for the Seq. Number [List] button, and if "A001.pdf", "A003.pdf", and "A4294967295.pdf" already exist, subsequent file names are assigned in the following order.
"A002.pdf", "A004.pdf", "A005.pdf", "A006.pdf"...

8. Press the Date Format [List] button.

⇒ The date format list appears.

9. Select a date format.

The date format is used for the file or folder name when saving scanned data.

10. Press the Delimiter [List] button.

⇒ The Delimiter list appears.

11. Select a delimiter.

The delimiter is used for the file or folder name when saving scanned data.

If "None" is selected, a delimiter is not added.

12. Press the [Preview] button.

⇒ The specified file name format is displayed to the right of the [Preview] button.

13. Check the file name format.

14. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The file name format is set.

4.6.10 Setting the Multifeed Detection Method

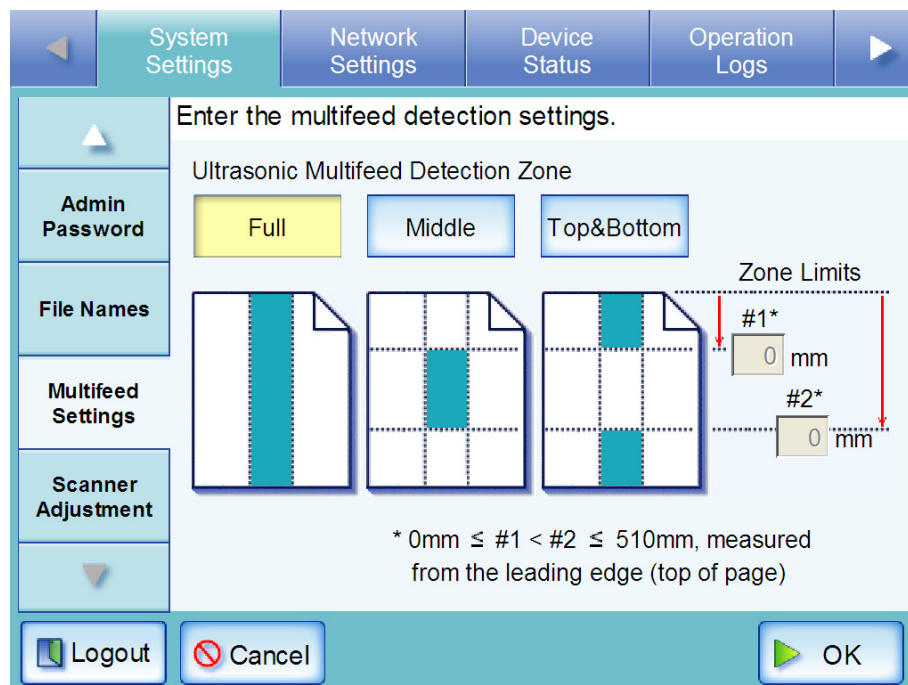
Touch
PanelAdmin
ToolCentral
Admin

By default, multifeed detection will monitor for paper overlaps in the central column (17.5mm either side from the center of the document) of the document being scanned. However, any photos or attachments in this area will also be detected as a multifeed.

When scanning documents, multifeed detection area may be adjusted to ignore the area (excluding the photograph or attachments) and prevent mis-detections.

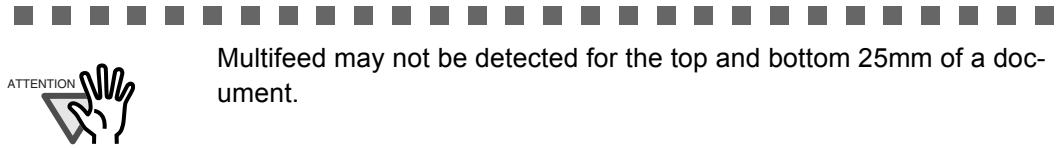
For document requirements for multifeed detection, refer to ["A.5 Multifeed Detection Conditions" \(page 416\)](#).

1. Select the [System Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Multifeed Settings] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Multifeed Settings" screen appears.



3. Set the area for multifeed detection in the "Multifeed Detection" section.
Starting from the top edge of a document sheet, set the area to be checked for multifeeds.

Full	Multifeeds will be detected within 17.5mm from either side of the center of paper.
Middle	<p>Multifeeds will be detected within "#1" (upper limit) and "#2" (lower limit) set. (a)</p>
Top & Bottom	<p>Multifeeds will be detected from the top of the page to "#1" (upper limit), and from #2 (lower limit) to the bottom of the page. (b)</p>



4. In [Step 3](#), if [Middle] or [Top & Bottom] is selected, enter both "#1" (upper limit) and "#2" (lower limit).

#1: Even numbers from 0 to 508mm can be entered. Odd numbers will be made even by adding one.

#2: Even numbers from 0 to 510mm can be entered. Odd numbers will be made even by adding one.

-
- For multifeed detection, a length of at least 5mm is required. Specify a value for #2 that is at least 6mm greater than that for #1.
 - "#2" can have a maximum value of 510mm. If the paper size setting is long page mode but the length of the document is longer than 510mm, multifeed cannot be detected by length.
 - When [Middle] is selected, if the document is shorter than "#1", multifeed will not be detected. When [Top & Bottom] is selected, if the document is shorter than "#2", multifeed will not be detected for the bottom part.
 - If the values specified for "#1" and "#2" exceed the actual paper size, multifeeds will not be detected.

5. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The document area to be monitored for multifeeds is set.

4.6.11 Setting Scanning Performance

Touch
Panel

Admin
Tool

Usually, it is not necessary to make any setting changes.

1. Select the [System Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Scanner Adjustment] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Scanner Adjustment" screen appears.

The image shows the 'Scanner Adjustment' screen within a software interface. At the top, there are five tabs: 'System Settings' (selected), 'Network Settings', 'Device Status', and 'Operation Logs'. On the left side, there is a vertical menu with four items: 'Admin Password', 'File Names', 'Multifeed Settings', and 'Scanner Adjustment' (selected). The main area of the screen is titled 'Enter the scan offset and magnification settings.' and contains two columns of settings. The left column is labeled 'Front Side Offsets' and the right column is labeled 'Reverse Side Offsets'. Each column has a 'Horizontal Offset' section with a 'Vertical Offset' input field (set to 0) and a 'Horizontal Offset' input field (set to 0). Below these are two diagrams showing a document with the text 'ABC' and a red arrow indicating the offset. The 'Length Magnification' section at the bottom has a 'Length Magnification' input field (set to 0.0). At the bottom of the screen, there are three buttons: 'Logout', 'Cancel', and 'OK'.

Front Side Offsets		Reverse Side Offsets	
Vertical Offset	0 x 0.5mm (-4 << +4)	Vertical Offset	0 x 0.5mm (-4 << +4)
Horizontal Offset	0 x 0.5mm (-4 << +4)	Horizontal Offset	0 x 0.5mm (-4 << +4)
Length Magnification		0.0 (-3.1% << +3.1%)	

■ Offset Settings

If the scanned output is found to be displaced relative to the actual documents being scanned, the scan offsets can be adjusted.

1. On the "Scanner Adjustment" screen, under [Front Side Offsets]/[Reverse Side Offsets], enter values for the "Horizontal Offset" and "Vertical Offset" input fields.

Offset lengths are measured in units of 0.5mm and may be set to between -4 (-2mm) and +4 (+2mm).

2. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The offset settings are set.

■ Length Magnification Setting

If the scanned output is found to be vertically distorted (stretched or squashed) relative to the actual documents being scanned, the length magnification can be adjusted.

1. On the "Scanner Adjustment" screen, enter the value for the "Length Magnification" input field.

This changes the length magnification correction value of the vertical scan. Using the factory default setting as a starting point, the length of the scan can be magnified or reduced to between -3.1% and 3.1%.

2. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The length magnification setting is set.

4.7 Using the Network Settings Menus

4.7.1 Giving the Scanner an IP Address

Touch
Panel

Admin
Tool

An IP address must be set in order to connect the scanner to a network.

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [IP Address] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The DHCP or IP address setting screen appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Network Settings' screen. At the top, there are four tabs: 'System Settings', 'Network Settings' (selected), 'Device Status', and 'Operation Logs'. On the left side, there is a vertical menu with four options: 'IP Address' (selected), 'Admin Network', 'Central Admin Server', and 'DNS Server'. The main area is titled 'Enter the network addresses.' and contains a 'DHCP' section with two buttons: 'On' (highlighted in yellow) and 'Off'. Below this, there are three rows of input fields for 'IP Address', 'Subnet Mask', and 'Default Gateway'. Each row has four input boxes, each containing the number '0'. At the bottom of the screen, there are three buttons: 'Logout', 'Cancel', and 'OK'.

3. Select whether or not a DHCP is required.

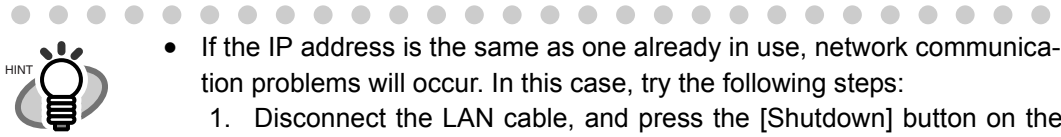
Set the scanner's IP address. This may be done automatically, by pressing the DHCP [On] button. By default, this is set as [On].

The IP address may also be set manually, by pressing the DHCP [Off] button and entering the following numerical addresses:

- IP Address
- Subnet Mask
- Default Gateway

4. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The information entered is set.



- If the IP address is the same as one already in use, network communication problems will occur. In this case, try the following steps:
 1. Disconnect the LAN cable, and press the [Shutdown] button on the touch panel to turn the scanner off.
 2. Reboot the scanner with the LAN cable disconnected, and enter a nonduplicate IP address.
 3. Re-connect the LAN cable to the scanner.
- When DHCP is set to "On", the following scanner settings are assigned by the DHCP server:
 - IP Address
 - Subnet Mask
 - Default Gateway
 - DNS Server
 - WINS Server
 - Domain Suffix

Even if DNS or WINS server is set, priority is given to the scanner settings over the DHCP settings.

- The connection will be lost if the scanner's IP address is changed via the network interface. If connecting via an IP address, to continue with other settings, login to the network interface again using the new IP address.



4.7.2 Setting the Admin Network

Touch
Panel

Admin
Tool

Central
Admin

To use the Admin Tool or Central Admin Server for the scanner, perform the connection settings.

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Admin Network] tab on the left side menu.

⇒ The "Admin Network" screen appears.

Enter the settings for the remote administration connection.

Port Number: 80

SSL: On

SSL Certificate: This certificate has expired or is not yet valid.

Issued by: -----

Valid from: --/--/---- to --/--/----

Regenerate

Logout Cancel OK

For Central Admin Console, contents of the SSL Certificate are not shown.

3. Enter a port number from 1 to 65535, to be used by the scanner to communicate with the Admin Tool or Central Admin Server.

The default setting is 80.



- Port numbers 135, 139, 445, and numbers from 1025 to 1124, cannot be specified as they are already reserved in the scanner.
- If port numbers other than HTTP: 80, HTTPS: 443 are to be specified, it is recommended that numbers over 5000 are used. If a port number lower than 5000 is specified, verify the Admin Tool connectivity with the port number first.



4. Select whether or not to enable SSL (Transport Layer Security).

Select the [On] button enables SSL. If SSL is enabled, press the [Regenerate] button to create another SSL Certificate. When a new SSL Certificate is created, the contents of the certificate are changed. The contents of the SSL Certificate are as follows.

- Issued by
Shows the SSL Certificate issuer.
- Valid from
Shows the SSL Certificate expiration date. The expiration date is five years from the date on which the certificate was created. This is shown in date form.

Selecting the [Off] button disables SSL.

5. Press the [OK] button.

⇒The communication settings are set.



- If the Admin Network settings are changed using the Admin Tool, the Admin Tool is disconnected from the scanner.
If any further actions are required, the Admin Tool will need to be reconnected to the scanner.
- If SSL is enabled, SSL is also used for communication between the Central Admin Server and the scanner. When Central Admin is enabled, change the settings on the Central Admin Console "Central Admin Server Settings" screen.
- The following settings combinations are not possible.
 - Port Number "80" and SSL "On"
 - Port Number "443" and SSL "Off"



4.7.3 Setting a Central Admin Server

Touch
Panel

Admin
Tool

Central
Admin

If "On" is selected for "Central Admin", scanners can be targeted for Central Admin.

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Central Admin Server] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Central Admin Server" screen appears.

Enter the Central Admin Server settings.

Central Admin

Address

Port Number

Roaming Mode

Job Mode

This scanner's server-side status is: Unregistered

For Central Admin Console, Address and Port Number cannot be set.

3. Select whether or not to enable Central Admin Server.
The default setting is [Off].
For the Central Admin Console, the default value is [On] so that scanners for which Central Admin is enabled will become targets.
Select the [On] button to enable Central Admin Server.
Select the [Off] button to disable Central Admin Server. If "Off" is selected, no other settings can be entered. Press the [OK] button to set the selected contents.
4. Enter the Central Admin Server IP address, host name, or FQDN in the "Address" input field.
 - For an IP address
The following format should be used xxx . xxx . xxx . xxx (xxx is a value from 0 to 255).
 - For a host name or FQDN
Up to 255 characters may be entered.
5. Enter a port number from 1 to 65535, to be used by the scanner to communicate with the Central Admin Server.
The default setting is 20444.

6. Select whether or not to enable roaming mode.

The default setting is [Off].

Select the [On] button to enable roaming mode. If roaming mode is enabled, a regular user can login on different scanners while retaining their user data.

The following user data can be used in roaming mode.

- "My List" e-Mail Address Books
- Scan Settings
- Name of the last network printer used
- Name of the last network folder used

If the same network printer/folder is not set for each scanner, the name of the latest one used is not shown.

Select the [Off] button to disable roaming mode.

7. Select whether or not to enable job mode.

The default setting is [Off].

Select the [On] button to enable job mode. If job mode is enabled, even if logging on via a different scanner, the job buttons of regular users can be used. However, if the job modes on the Central Admin Server have not been released, the job modes set with the Admin Tool are used.

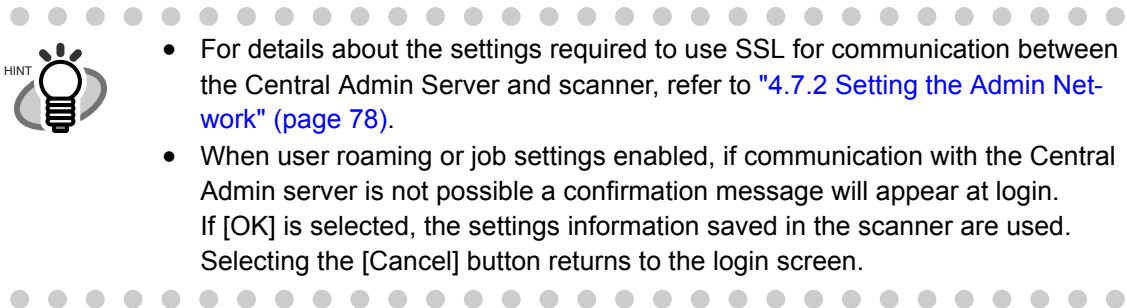
Select the [Off] button to disable job mode.

8. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The Central Admin Server settings are set.

⇒ The scanner information is transmitted to the Central Admin Server.

If the process is successful, the text will change to "This scanner's server-side status is: Registered".



4.7.4 Setting the DNS Server

Touch
Panel

Admin
Tool

Central
Admin

A primary DNS and secondary DNS can be set.

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [DNS Server] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "DNS Server" screen appears.

Enter the DNS server settings.

Primary DNS 0 . 0 . 0 . 0

Secondary DNS 0 . 0 . 0 . 0

DNS Dynamic Update On Off

DNS Suffix

FQDN fi-XXXXXXXX

Logout Cancel OK

3. Enter the following numerical addresses:
 - Primary DNS
 - Secondary DNSIf a DNS server setting is not required, enter "0.0.0.0".
4. Select whether or not to dynamically update the DNS.
The default setting is [Off].
Select the [On] button to enable DNS dynamic update.
Select the [Off] button to disable DNS dynamic update.

5. Enter a "DNS Suffix".

This can only be set if the [On] button was pressed in [Step 4](#).

The *scanner_name* + *DNS_suffix*, may be up to 255 characters long. Alphanumeric characters and the following symbols may be used.

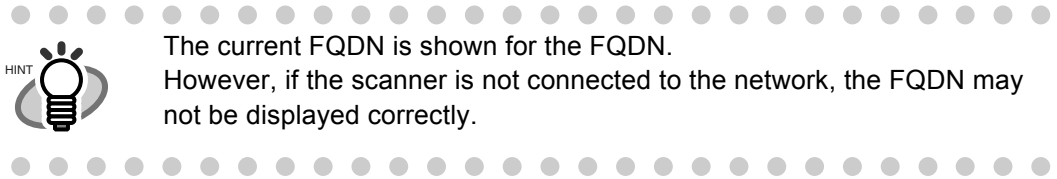
—

A "." (dot) is added in between the *scanner_name* and *DNS_suffix*.

For example, if a scanner name is 9 characters long, because a "." dot will be added to the *scanner_name*, the DNS suffix may be up to 245 long.

According to the settings, a FQDN is named in the following order.

1. *Scanner_name* + *DNS_suffix* entered here.
2. *Scanner_name* + *domain_suffix* acquired from DHCP server.
3. *Scanner_name* + domain input on the "Scanner Name" screen.



6. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The information entered is set.

4.7.5 Setting the WINS Server

Touch
Panel

Admin
Tool

Central
Admin

A primary WINS and secondary WINS can be set.

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [WINS Server] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "WINS Server" screen appears.

System Settings Network Settings Device Status Operation Logs

WINS Server NTP Server Proxy Server Login LDAP Server

Enter the WINS server settings.

Primary WINS 0 . 0 . 0 . 0

Secondary WINS 0 . 0 . 0 . 0

Logout Cancel OK

3. Enter the following numerical addresses:
 - Primary WINS
 - Secondary WINSIf a WINS server setting is not required, enter "0.0.0.0".
4. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The information entered is set.

4.7.6 Setting the NTP Server

Touch
PanelAdmin
ToolCentral
Admin

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [NTP Server] tab on the left side menu.

⇒ The "NTP Server" screen appears.

For Central Admin Console, can only set the NTP server address.

3. Enter the NTP server IP address, host name, or FQDN in the "Address" input field.
 - For an IP address
The following format should be used xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (xxx is a value from 0 to 255).
 - For a host name or FQDN
Up to 255 characters may be entered.
If an NTP server is not required, leave this field blank.
4. Press the [Sync Time] button.

⇒ The result of the time synchronization for the specified NTP server is shown.

If no error message appears, the NTP server setting is valid.

If an error message appears, refer to ["E.1.1 Administrator Screen Messages" \(page 435\)](#).
5. Press the [OK] button on the confirmation message screen.

6. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The NTP server is set.



- The system time is automatically synchronized every six hours to that supplied by the NTP server.
- When the NTP server settings are changed, the system time is synchronized immediately.
- An adjustment that advances the system time by 20 minutes or more results in a session timeout and causes the scanner to logout.

4.7.7 Setting the Proxy Server

Touch
PanelAdmin
ToolCentral
Admin

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Proxy Server] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Proxy Server" screen appears.

3. Enter the proxy server IP address, host name, or FQDN in the "Address" input field.
 - For an IP address
The following format should be used xxx . xxx . xxx . xxx (xxx is a value from 0 to 255).
 - For a host name or FQDN
Up to 255 characters may be entered.
4. Enter a port number for the proxy server, from 1 to 65535, in the "Port Number" field.
5. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The proxy server is set.



ATTENTION

If this setting is not entered, the proxy setting on the "Network Folder", FTP server settings screen, cannot be used. For more details about specifying an FTP server folder as a network folder, refer to ["4.7.14 Setting the Network Folders" \(page 115\)](#).

4.7.8 Setting the Login LDAP Server

Touch
Panel

Admin
Tool

Central
Admin

If a login LDAP server is set, user authentication will be checked.

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Login LDAP Server] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Login LDAP Server" screen appears.

This server is used to authenticate user logins.

Method:

SSL:

Address:

Search Base (DN):
(eg: CN=Users, DC=example, DC=com)

Search Timeout:

3. Set the connection settings for the login LDAP server.
Select the [LDAP] button if a plain LDAP server is to be used for user logins.
Select the [Global Catalog] button if a global catalog LDAP server is to be used for user logins.
Select the [Off] button if an LDAP server is not required for user logins. If [Off] is selected, no other settings can be entered.
Select the [OK] button to confirm the setting contents.
From this point on, as an example it is assumed that the [LDAP] button has been pressed.
4. Select whether or not to enable SSL.
Pressing the [On] button enables SSL.
Pressing the [Off] button disables SSL.
For more details about the root certification authorities registered in the scanner, refer to ["C.1 Root Certification Authority List" \(page 426\)](#).

5. Enter the LDAP server IP address, host name, or FQDN in the "Address" input field.
 - For an IP address
The following format should be used xxx . xxx . xxx . xxx (xxx is a value from 0 to 255).
 - For a host name or FQDN
Up to 255 characters may be used.
6. In the "Search Base (DN)" input field, enter the distinguished name of the LDAP search base.

The character string entered here will be the root under which LDAP entries will be searched for.

This may be up to 255 characters long.

If a "Search Base (DN)" is not entered, the entire contents of the LDAP server are searched. If the [Global Catalog] button is pressed, the entire global catalog becomes the search target if a "Search Base (DN)" is not specified.

For more details about the character string to be entered, and connection to the LDAP search target, refer to ["LDAP Search Target" \(page 89\)](#).
7. Press the [List] button for the "Search Timeout" input field.

⇒ A list of "search timeout" times appears.
8. Select the LDAP List search timeout delay.

The default time is "60sec".

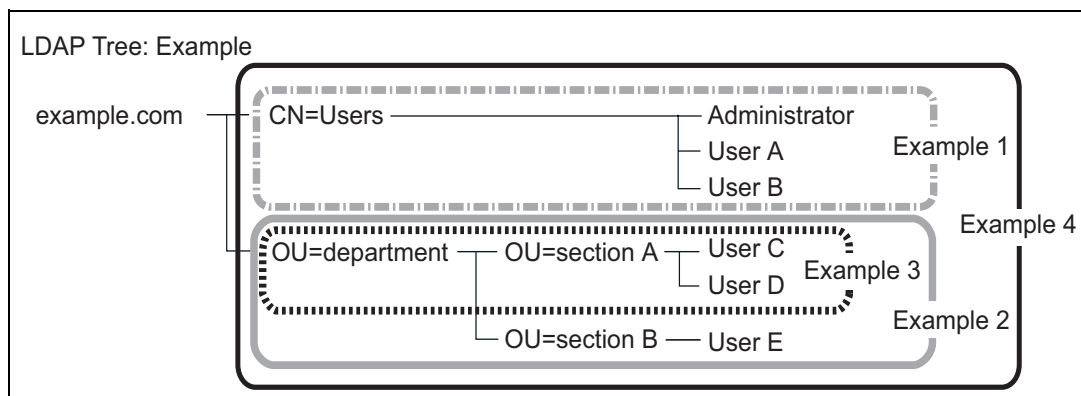
⇒ The selected "Search Timeout" value is displayed.
9. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The login LDAP server is set.

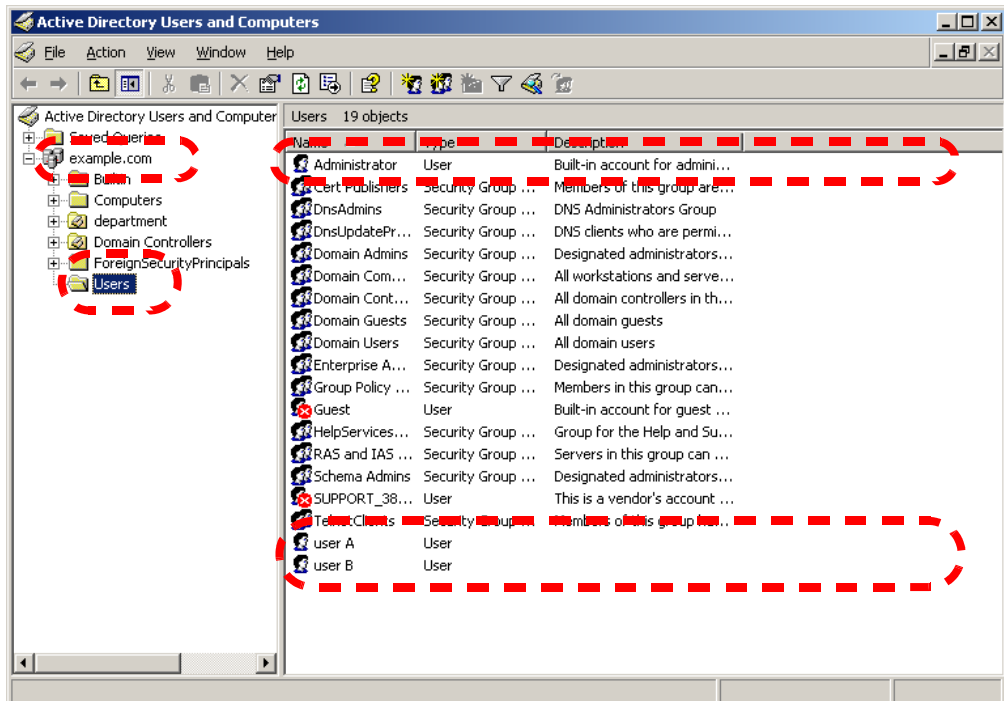
■ LDAP Search Target

The search range and method for LDAP server searches differs according to the LDAP server connection, or search base (DN) settings ([Step 3](#) or [Step 6](#) of ["4.7.8 Setting the Login LDAP Server" \(page 88\)](#)).

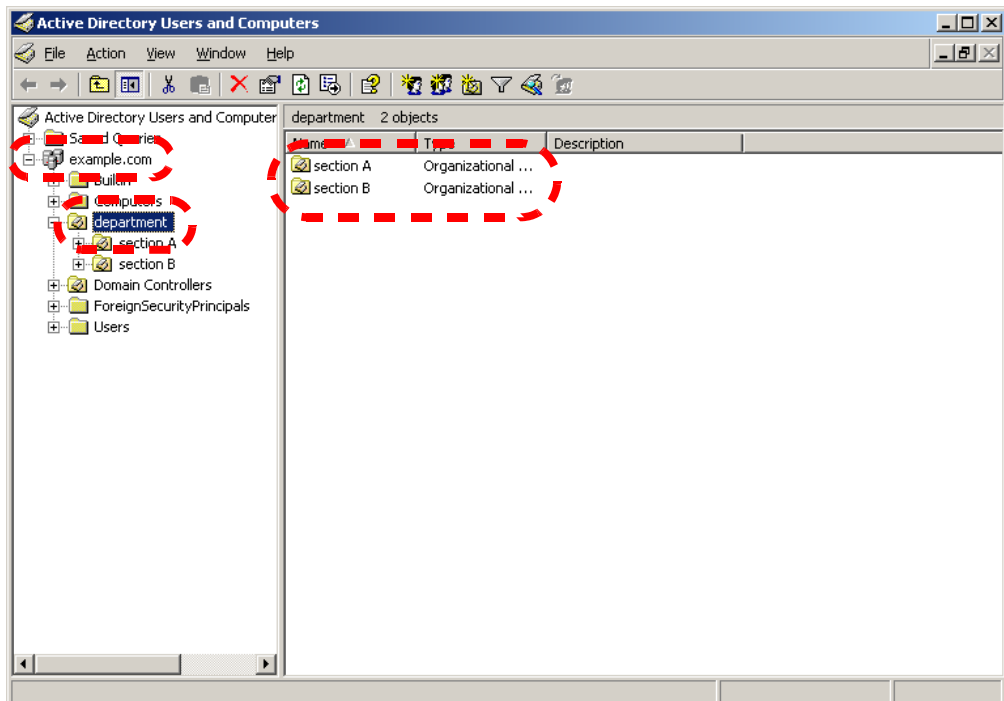
- For connecting with LDAP server when the [LDAP] button is selected in [Step 3](#)
The following shows an example (where the domain name is *example.com*) for the "Search Base (DN)" to be entered in [Step 6](#). The italic text represents variable character strings.



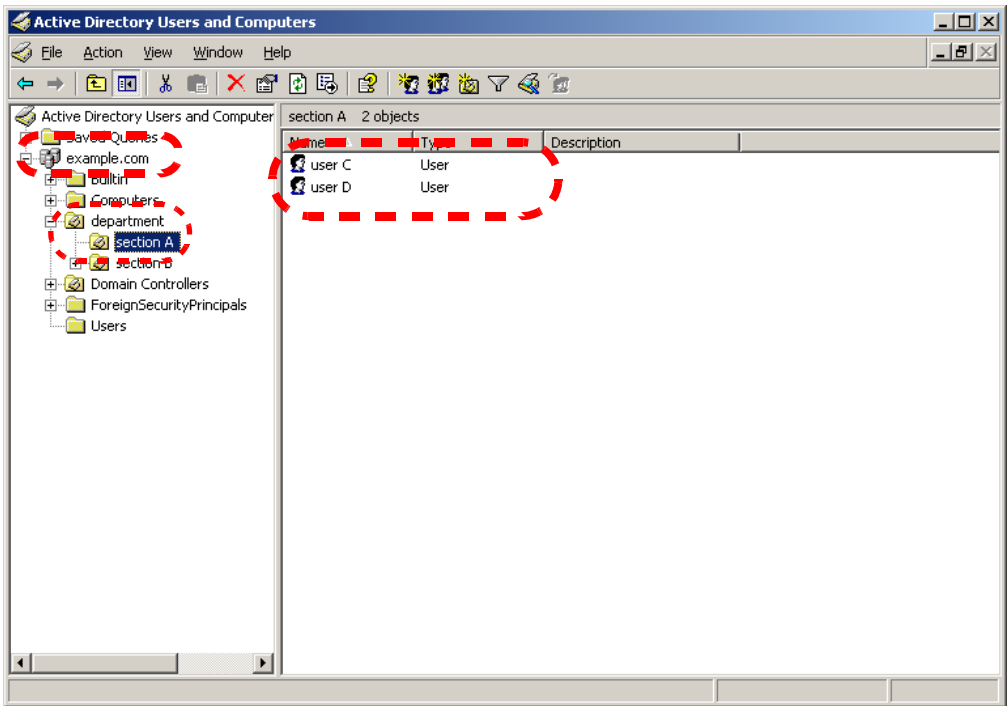
Example 1: When searching for (administrator, user A, user B)
 CN=Users, DC=example, DC=com
 For LDAP server, Active Directory configuration is as follows.



Example 2: When searching for (user C, user D, user E)
 OU=department, DC=example, DC=com
 For LDAP server, Active Directory configuration is as follows.

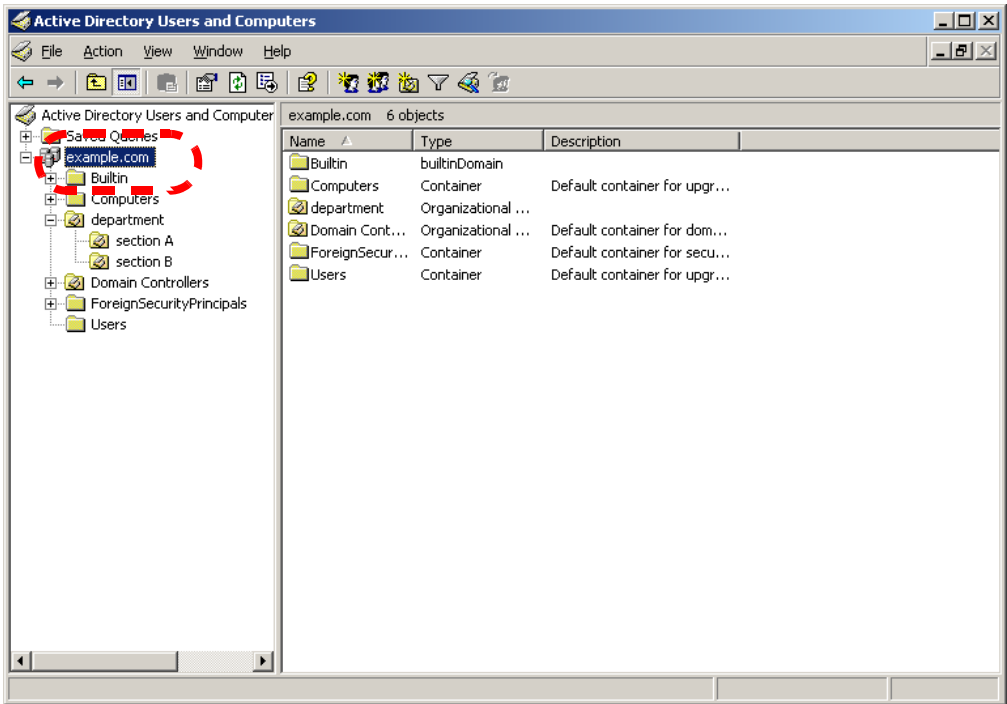


Example 3: When searching for (user C, user D),
OU=section A, OU=department, DC=example, DC=com
For LDAP server, Active Directory configuration is as follows.

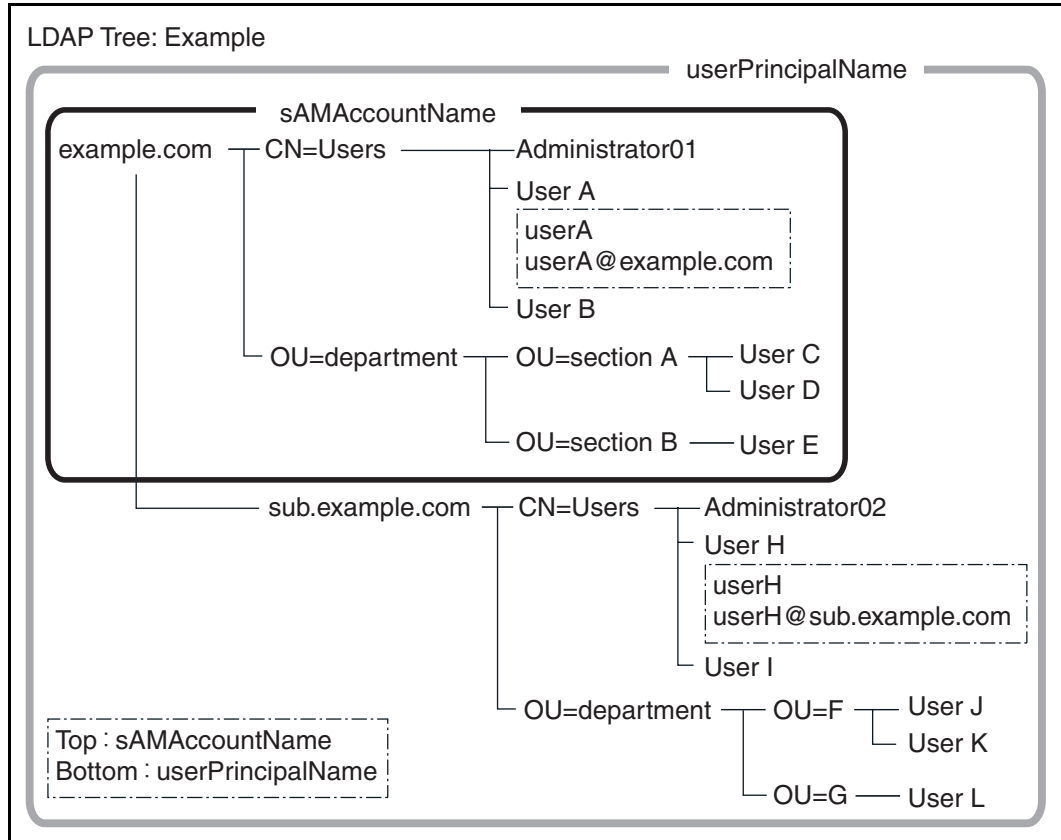


4

Example 4: When searching for all users
DC=example, DC=com



- For connecting with Global Catalog (when the [Global Catalog] button is selected in [Step 3](#))
The following shows an example (where the parent domain name is *example.com*, and sub-domain name is *sub.example.com*) for the "Search Base (DN)" to be entered in [Step 6](#). The italic text represents variable character strings.



Example: When searching in whole domain

no "Search Base (DN)" setting, or *DC=example, DC=com*

The LDAP search target differs as follows, according to whether a user logs in with a sAMAccountName or userPrincipalName.

Regular User	Login Name	Login Possible
	Top: sAMAccountName Bottom: userPrincipalName	
User A	userA	OK
	userA@example.com	OK
User H	userH	NG
	userH@sub.example.com	OK

The SAM Account Name is the Active Directory user login name (sAMAccount-Name).

The User Principal Name is the Active Directory user login name (userPrincipal-Name).

4.7.9 Setting the e-Mail LDAP Server

Touch
PanelAdmin
ToolCentral
Admin

If an e-mail LDAP server is set, the searches within the LDAP List on the "e-Mail Address Book" screen can be performed.

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [e-Mail LDAP Server] tab.
⇒ The "e-Mail LDAP Server" screen appears.

3. Set the e-mail LDAP server connection settings.
Select the [Use Login LDAP] button to reuse the user login LDAP server settings for e-mail address searches or lookup. If [Use Login LDAP] is selected, no other settings can be entered. Press the [OK] button to set the e-Mail LDAP server settings.
Select the [LDAP] button if a plain LDAP server is to be used for e-mail address searches.
Select the [Global Catalog] button if a global catalog LDAP server is to be used for e-mail address searches.
4. Perform [Step 4 to Step 8](#) of "[4.7.8 Setting the Login LDAP Server](#)" (page 88).
5. Press the [List] button for the "Maximum Results" input field.
⇒ A list of "number of maximum results" appears.
6. Select the maximum number of results for e-mail address LDAP List searches.
The default maximum is "1000".
⇒ The selected "Maximum Results" value is displayed.
7. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The e-mail address LDAP server is set.



To use the e-mail LDAP server, use a login user account. If the login LDAP server and e-mail LDAP server are different, according to the domain configuration or login name format, it may not be possible to use the e-mail LDAP server. For more details, refer to "[LDAP Search Target](#)" (page 89).

4.7.10 Setting the LDAP Search Parameters

Touch
PanelAdmin
ToolCentral
Admin

The search conditions ([First Name] and [Last Name] buttons on the following screen) on the "e-Mail Address Book" - [LDAP List] tab can be customized.

e-Mail Address Book

My List LDAP List

First Name Last Name e-Mail Address

Search Target :
.

Find

For details about the "e-Mail Address Book" - [LDAP List] tab, refer to ["6.4.1 Selecting an e-Mail Address from the e-Mail Address Book"](#) (page 269).

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Customize LDAP Search] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Customize LDAP Search" screen appears.

System Settings Network Settings Device Status Operation Logs

Customize the [LDAP List] tab.

Left Button

Item(s) to be searched
First Name Last Name Common Name Display Name

Result Format
FirstName LastName

Button Name
First Name

Middle Button

Item(s) to be searched
First Name Last Name Common Name Display Name

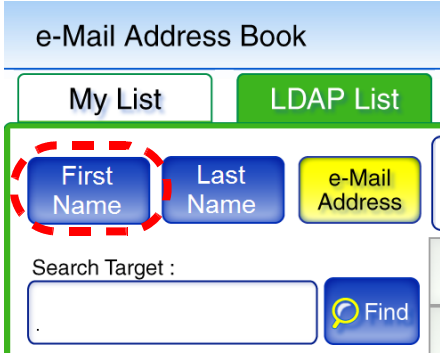
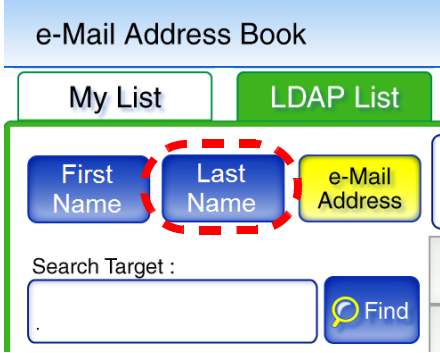
Result Format
LastName FirstName

Button Name
Last Name

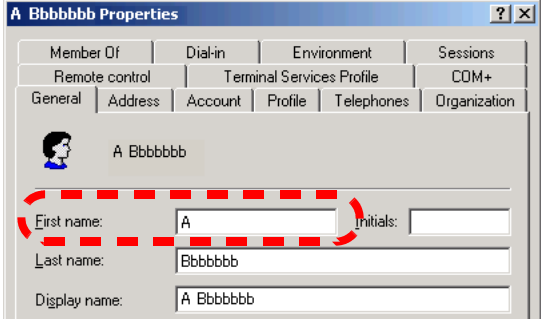
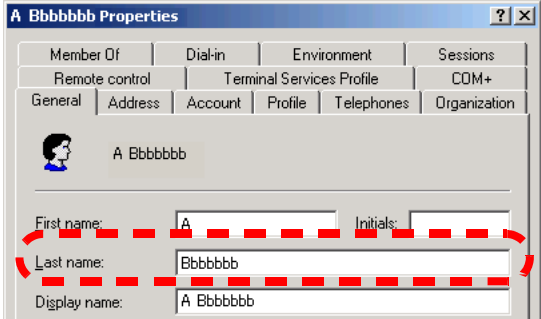
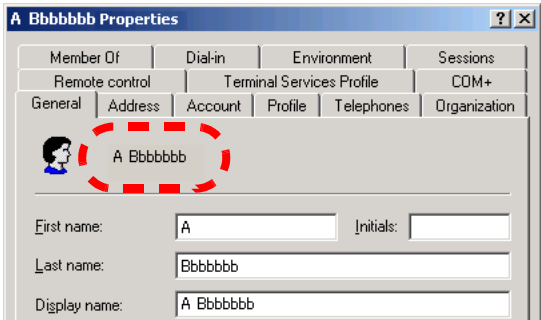
Logout Cancel OK

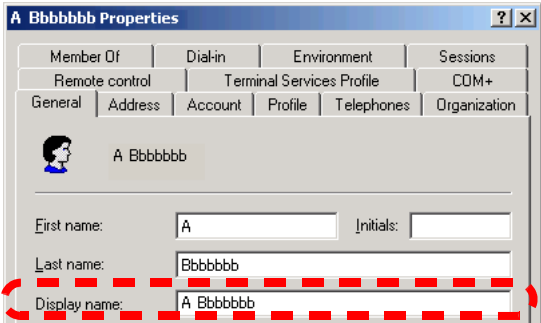


The following table shows the correspondence between the administrator "Customize LDAP Search" screen settings, and the regular user search condition buttons on the "e-Mail Address Book" - [LDAP List] tab.

Conditions	Descriptions
Left Button	Corresponds to the left button on the [LDAP List] tab. 
Middle Button	Corresponds to the middle button on the [LDAP List] tab. 

3. Specify the item(s) to be searched.
- Searches the specified item(s) by the LDAP search.
- Multiple search items can be selected. If multiple items are selected, data containing any of the search words are searched as "OR Search".

Buttons	The items to be searched in the Active Directory
First Name	<p>Searches the first names of users registered in the LDAP server.</p> 
Last Name	<p>Searches the last names of users registered in the LDAP server.</p> 
Common Name	<p>Searches the common names of users registered in the LDAP server.</p>  <p>This item can be set in the "Active Directory Users and Computers". If searching for a group, press the [Common Name] button.</p>

Buttons	The items to be searched in the Active Directory
Display Name	Searches the display names of users registered in the LDAP server. 



- If none of the [First Name], [Last Name], [Common Name], or [Display Name] buttons are selected, the corresponding search parameter button on the "e-Mail Address Book" - [LDAP List] tab cannot be selected.
- If the [Display Name] button is selected, and the display format for LDAP search results is "First Name" - "Last Name" or "Last Name" - "First Name", search results are shown as a "-" if a first name or last name has not been registered.
Example: For LDAP search results format "First Name" - "Last Name",
with a first name not registered
Search result display format: Last Name ----



- Press the [List] button for the "Result Format" input field.
⇒ The result format screen appears.
- Specify the format of the LDAP search result.
Displays the LDAP search result according to the specified format.

Result Format	Descriptions
FirstName LastName	Shows "First Name" - "Last Name" of the users registered in the LDAP server.
LastName FirstName	Shows "Last Name" - "First Name" of the users registered in the LDAP server.
CommonName	Shows "Common Name" of the users registered in the LDAP server. If searching and displaying groups, select "CommonName".
DisplayName	Shows "Display Name" of the users registered in the LDAP server.

6. Enter the button name.

The characters input here are displayed on the button name on the [LDAP List] tab.

This may be up to 18 characters long. Only alphanumeric characters may be entered.

A space (only one) also can be used, but the space will be displayed as a line break on the button. Please note that a space between words cannot be made within a line. Only one blank space can be entered.



If the button names are changed, check the actual button image shown on the LDAP "e-Mail Address Book" screen.

The button image may not show all characters entered.



7. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The LDAP search parameters are set.

4.7.11 Setting the e-Mail Server (SMTP Server)

Touch
Panel

Admin
Tool

Central
Admin

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [SMTP Server] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "SMTP Server" screen appears.

System Settings Network Settings Device Status Operation Logs

Enter the SMTP server settings.

SMTP Server

Address

Maximum Attachment Size MB (1 << 20)

Logout Cancel OK

3. Enter the SMTP server IP address, host name, or FQDN in the "Address" input field.
 - For an IP address
The following format should be used xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (xxx is a value from 0 to 255).
 - For a host name or FQDN
This may be up to 255 characters long.
If an SMTP server is not required, leave this field blank.
4. Set the "Maximum Attachment Size" for e-mails (total data size when sending an e-mail). This may be between 1 and 20 MB.
The default size is "10MB".



Set this value so as not to exceed the value of the message size restriction set in the SMTP server.



5. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The SMTP server is set.

4.7.12 Setting the Fax Server

Touch
PanelAdmin
ToolCentral
Admin

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Fax Server] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Fax Server" screen appears.

Enter the e-mail address for the fax server.

Fax Server e-Mail Address

Logout Cancel OK

3. Enter a monitored fax server (RightFax) e-mail address in the "Fax Server e-Mail Address" field.
If the fax server setting is not required, leave the field blank.
For more details about e-mail Address setting values, refer to "[B.1 e-Mail Address Setting Values](#)" (page 420).
4. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The fax server is set.

4.7.13 Setting the Network Printers

Touch
Panel

Admin
Tool

Central
Admin

Set a printer connected to the network.

The procedure for setting a network printer is as follows.

1. Check the printer driver.

For more details, refer to ["Checking the Printer Drivers" \(page 103\)](#).

2. Set the printer properties.

For more details, refer to ["Setting the Printer Properties" \(page 104\)](#).

3. Register the network printer.

Up to 100 network printers can be registered.

A network printer can be registered in one of the following ways.

- Network Tree

Select a network printer from the network tree.

For more details, refer to ["Registering a Network Printer \(Network Tree\)" \(page 107\)](#).

- Network Path

Directly enter the network printer path name.

For more details, refer to ["Registering a Network Printer \(Network Path\)" \(page 110\)](#).



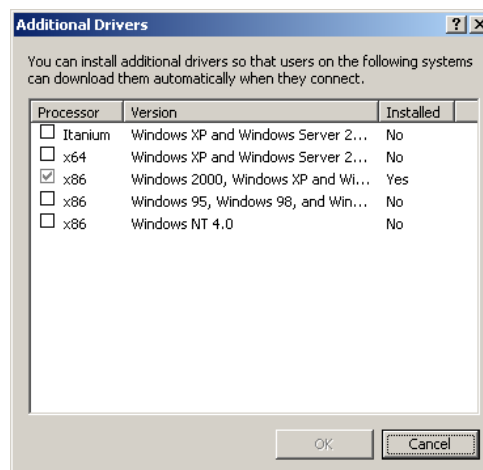
- Be sure to read the printer manual beforehand for information about setting a printer, adding a network printer, and other cautions.
- If the drive on which the spool folder for the print server exists does not have enough free space, printing will stop. Make sure that there is enough space in the drive before printing.
- Do not set a virtual printer.
- If a printer connected to different print servers is to be registered as a network printer multiple times, the software version of the driver should be the same on each print server. If the software version of the printer driver differs, printing errors may occur.

■ Checking the Printer Drivers

The driver installed on the print server must be compatible with Windows® XP.

Use the following procedure to check whether the drivers installed on the print server are Windows® XP compatible drivers.

1. From the [Start] menu on the print server, select [Control Panel] - [Printers and Faxes].
⇒ The "Printers and Faxes" window appears.
2. Right-click on a printer, and select [Properties].
⇒ Printer properties appear.
3. Press the [Additional Drivers] button in the [Sharing] tab.
⇒ The "Additional Drivers" window appears.
4. Check that the "Processor" is "x86" (or intel), and that "Installed" is "Yes" for version Windows XP.



When the "Installed" status is "Yes", the driver has been installed and the printer can be used as a network printer. Press the [Cancel] button.

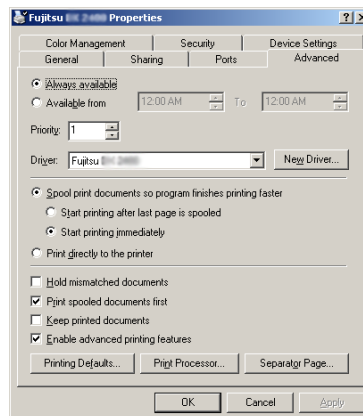
When the "Installed" status is "No", select version "Windows XP", and press the [OK] button.

⇒ The Windows® XP compatible driver is installed.

■ Setting the Printer Properties

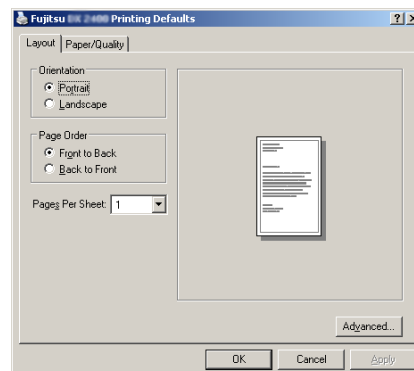
Use the following procedures to set a printer.

1. From the [Start] menu on the print server, select [Control Panel] - [Printers and Faxes].
⇒ The "Printers and Faxes" window appears.
2. Right-click on a printer, and select [Properties].
⇒ The "printer properties" window appears.
3. Press the [Printing Defaults] button in the [Advanced] tab.



⇒ The "printing defaults" window is displayed.

4. Change the settings and press the [OK] button.



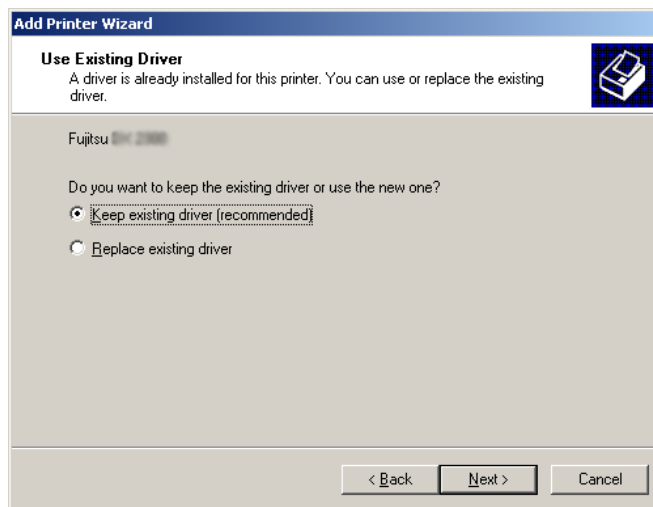
⇒ The printer properties are set.



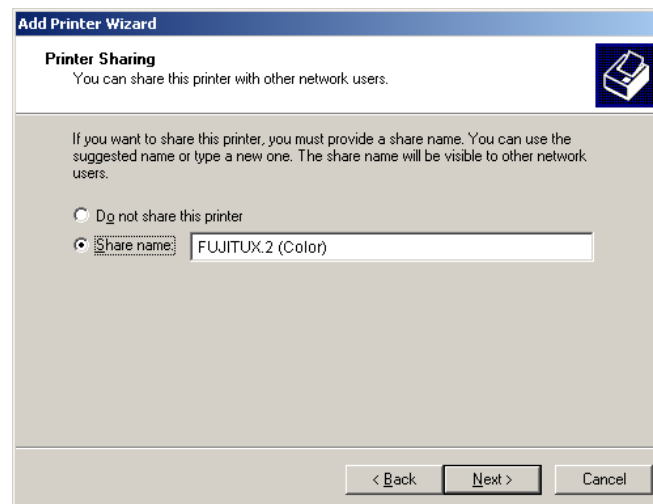
It is recommended that the same one printer is added to the print server multiple times for each set of properties settings, according to usage. For example, "for color printing" and "for black & white printing".

For a color printing example, the procedure for adding a printer is as follows.

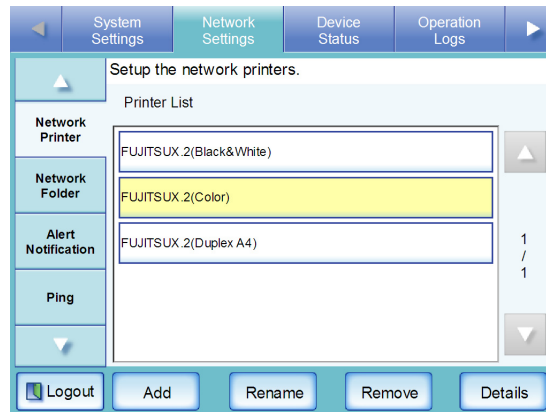
1. From the [Start] menu on the print server, select [Control Panel] - [Printers and Faxes].
⇒The "Printers and Faxes" window appears.
2. Double-click the [Add Printer].
⇒The "Add Printer Wizard" window appears.
3. Follow prompts on the wizard window until the "Use Existing Driver" window appears.
4. Select "Keep existing driver [recommended]" and press the [Next] button.



5. Follow the prompts on the wizard window until the "Printer Sharing" window appears.
6. Specify the shared name.
Enter "FUJITSUX.2 (Color)" for color printing.



It is recommended to name the printer with an alias that indicates the contents of the properties settings as follows.



⇒ Follow the prompts on the wizard window. The "Completing the Add Printer Wizard" message indicates that the printer addition has completed. Press the [Finish] button.

⇒ The printer is added on the "Printers and Faxes" window.

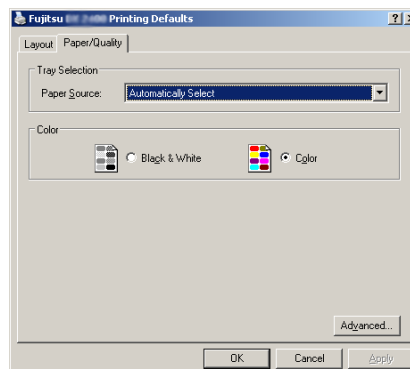
7. Right-click the added printer and select [Properties].

⇒ The "printer properties" window appears.

8. Press the [Printing Defaults] button on the [Advanced] tab.

⇒ The printing defaults window appears.

9. Select "Color" on the [Paper/Quality] tab, and press the [OK] button.



⇒ Printing is set to "Color".

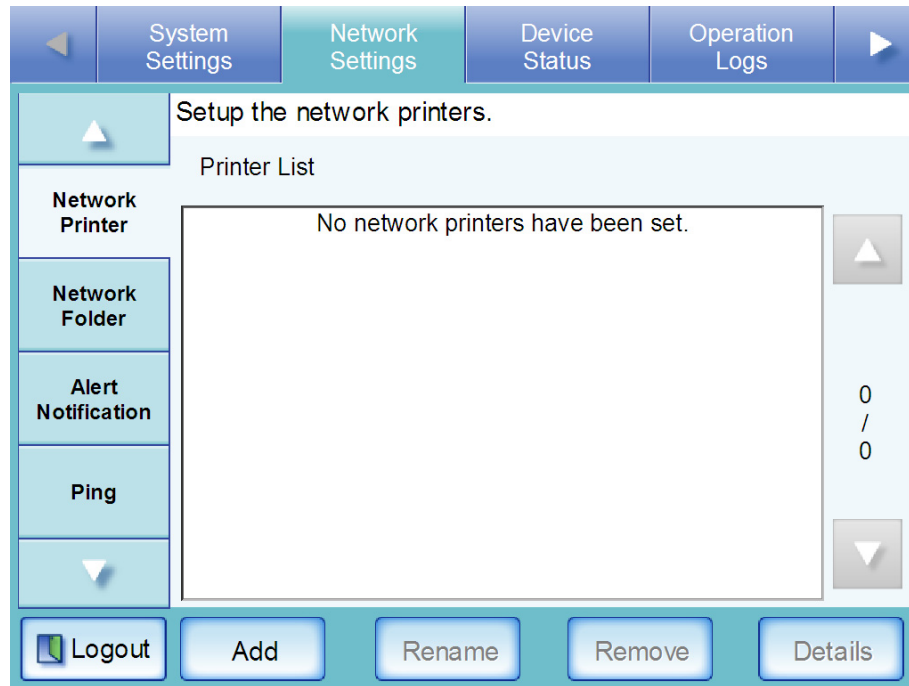
After this, if the printer set for color printing on the print server is added to the scanner printer list, the user can specify to use this printer already set for color printing.

For details about adding the printer to the scanner printer list, refer to ["Registering a Network Printer \(Network Tree\)"](#) (page 107) or ["Registering a Network Printer \(Network Path\)"](#) (page 110).



■ Registering a Network Printer (Network Tree)

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Network Printer] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Network Printer" screen appears.

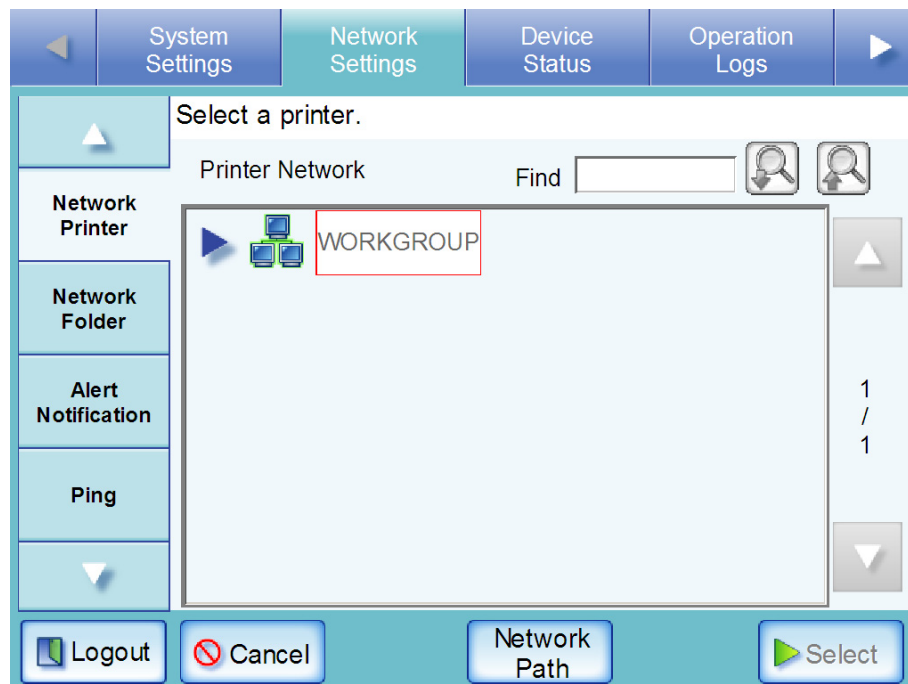


3. Press the [Add] button.
⇒ The screen for selecting a network printer is displayed.



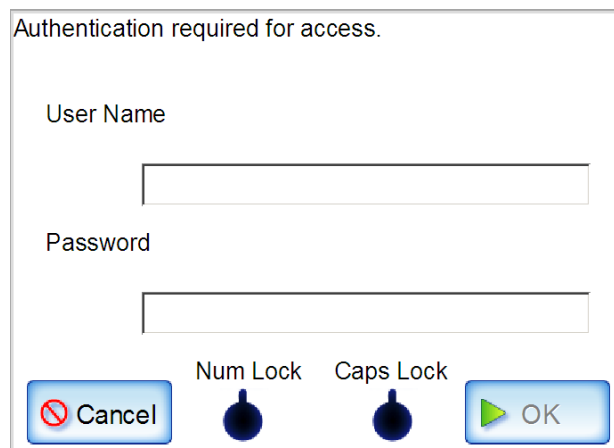
Desired domains may not be shown in the Printer Network. In this case, directly enter the network printer path name, or wait for a few minutes and re-open the screen for selecting a network printer.

4. Select a domain



⇒ If login is required, an "Authentication" screen appears.

If login is not required, the network tree expands and computer names are displayed under the selected domain.



The "Caps Lock" and "Num Lock" indicators are shown on the authentication screen, when the administrator logs in via the scanner's touch panel. The "Caps Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Caps Lock is set. The "Num Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Num Lock is set.

1. Enter a User Name.
This may be up to 256 characters long.
2. Enter a Password.
This may be up to 256 characters long.

3. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ When the user name and password are valid, or if login is not required, the network tree expands and computer names are displayed under the selected domain.



5. Select a computer .

⇒ If login is required, a login authentication screen appears.

If login is not required, the network tree expands and computer names are displayed under the selected domain.

1. Enter a User Name.

This may be up to 256 characters long.

2. Enter a Password.

This may be up to 256 characters long.

3. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ When the user name and password is valid, or if login is not required, the network tree expands and network printers are displayed under the selected computer name.



6. Select a network printer .



A network printer that has already registered cannot be added.



7. Press the [Select] button.

⇒ The screen returns to the "Network Printer" screen, and the registered network printer is added to the network printer list.



- Once the network printer is registered, do not change the shared name or printer alias on the print server.
- To change the shared name or printer alias, remove the registered network printer first, and then change the share name/printer alias, and register it again.



- The default network printer alias will be the same as the alias selected from the network tree. For details on changing the printer alias, refer to ["Renaming a Network Printer" \(page 112\)](#).
- While the network tree is displayed, enter characters to be searched for in the "Find" field, and press the [Back] or [Next] button to focus the network tree on the specified characters.



■ Registering a Network Printer (Network Path)

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Network Printer] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Network Printer" screen appears.
3. Press the [Add] button.
⇒ The screen for selecting a network printer is displayed.
4. Press the [Network Path] button.
⇒ The screen for adding a network printer is displayed.

System Settings Network Settings Device Status Operation Logs

▲ Add a network printer.

Network Printer

Printer Alias
* If left blank, the shared printer name will be used.

Network Folder

Alert Notification

Network Path
(eg: \\Domain\Computer\Printer)

Ping ▼

Logout Cancel Network Tree Add



Pressing the [Network Tree] button returns to the screen for selecting a network printer from the network tree.

5. Enter a "Printer Alias".
"Printer Alias" may be up to 80 characters long. "/" and "\" cannot be used for a printer alias.
If the [Add] button is pressed without entering a "Printer Alias", the shared name is set as the printer alias.

6. Enter a "Network Path".

"Network Path" may be up to 255 characters long.

Set the network path in the following format:

\\Domain_name\Computer_name\Printer_alias

For the "Domain_name", specify the NetBIOS domain name or the workgroup name that the network printer belongs to.

For the "Computer_name", specify the IP address, host name, or FQDN.

When specifying the IP address or FQDN for "Computer_name", a primary DNS suffix setting for the print server is required.

When a primary DNS suffix for the print server is already set, the following settings are not required.

The procedure for setting a primary DNS suffix is as follows.

1. From the [Start] menu on the print server, select [Control Panel]-[System].
⇒The "System Properties" window appears.
2. Select the [Change] button in the [Computer Name] tab.
For the Windows® 2000 Server, select the [Properties] button in the [Network Identification] tab.
⇒The "Computer Name Changes" window appears.
3. Select the [More] button.
⇒The "DNS Suffix and NetBIOS Computer Name" window appears.
4. For "Primary DNS suffix of this computer", specify the DNS suffix to be appended to the name of this computer when completing its FQDN.
Example: example.com
5. After these changes are applied, restart the computer.

7. Press the [Add] button.

⇒ The screen returns to the "Network Printers" screen, and the registered network printer is added to the network printer list.



- The already registered network printer cannot be added.
- Once the network printer is registered, do not change the shared name or printer alias on the print server.
- To change the shared name or printer alias, remove the registered network printer first, and then change the share name/printer alias, and register it again.

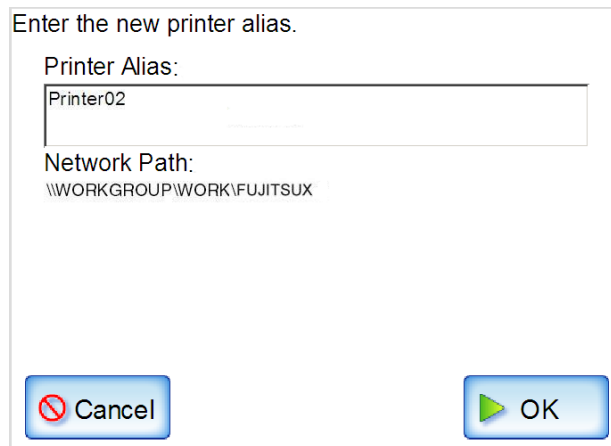


- The default network printer alias will be the same as the alias selected from the network tree. For details on changing the printer alias, refer to ["Renaming a Network Printer" \(page 112\)](#).
- The authentication screen may appear.



■ Renaming a Network Printer

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Network Printer] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Network Printer" screen appears.
3. Select the network printer that is to be renamed.
4. Press the [Rename] button.
⇒ The screen for renaming a network printer is displayed.
5. Enter a new printer alias.
This may be up to 80 characters long. The folder alias may not contain backslashes (\).
Trailing spaces are truncated, so a spaces-only alias is not allowed.



Enter the new printer alias.

Printer Alias:
Printer02

Network Path:
\\WORKGROUP\WORK\FUJITSUX

Cancel OK

6. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The network printer is renamed.

■ Removing a Network Printer

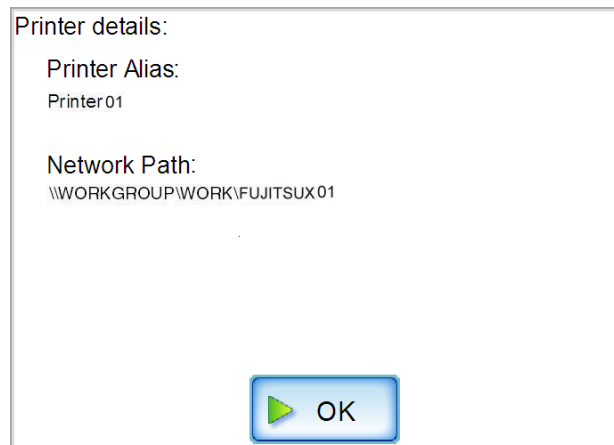
1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Network Printer] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Network Printer" screen appears.
3. Select the network printer that is to be removed from the printer list.
4. Press the [Remove] button.
⇒ The screen for removing a network printer is displayed.
5. Confirm the details of the network printer that is to be removed are correct, and press the [Yes] button.
⇒ The selected network printer is removed from the network printers list.



If removing a network printer is attempted while the network is not connected, the "Deleting" status on the screen be stopped. Before removing a network printer, check that the network is functioning normally.

■ Viewing the Printer Details

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Network Printer] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Network Printer" screen appears.
3. Select the desired network printer from the printer list.
4. Press the [Details] button.
⇒ The information for the selected network printer is displayed.



4.7.14 Setting the Network Folders

Touch
PanelAdmin
ToolCentral
Admin

Set a folder of the file server, or the FTP server, as a network folder.

Up to 100 network folders and FTP server folders can be added.

A network folder can be added in either of the following ways.

- **Network Tree**
Select a network folder from the network tree.
For details, refer to "[Registering a Network Folder \(Network Tree\)](#)" (page 116).
- **Network Path**
Set a network folder by directly entering the path alias for the file server folder.
For details, refer to "[Registering a Network Folder \(Network Path\)](#)" (page 119).
- **FTP Path**
Set a network folder by directly entering the path alias for the FTP server folder.
For details, refer to "[Registering a Network Folder \(FTP Path\)](#)" (page 121).

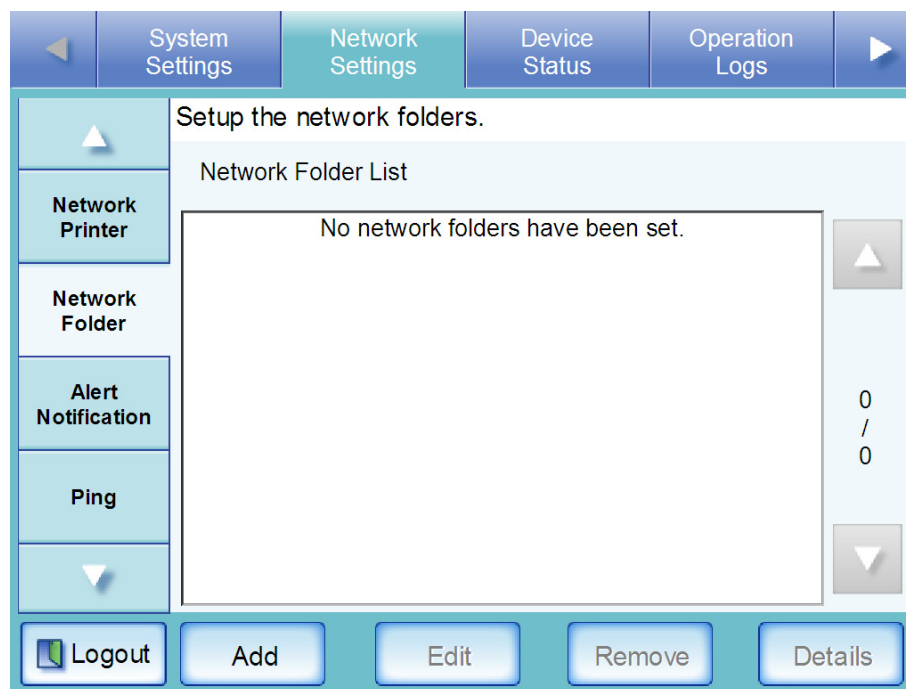


Note the following when registering a network folder.

- The network folder is registered as a network path. If the network folder is on a Windows file server and the length of the full Windows path including the file name exceeds 259 characters, the scan data will not be saved. Before registering a (Windows) network folder, check that the length of the full file path+name is not likely to exceed 259 characters.
- If the selected folder was created using a language foreign to that of the browsing operating system, the network folder may not register correctly. If the name of the network folder contains unrecognizable characters, check the codeset used.
- If the number folders to be displayed is large, they may take a long time to appear.

■ Registering a Network Folder (Network Tree)

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Network Folder] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Network Folder" screen appears.

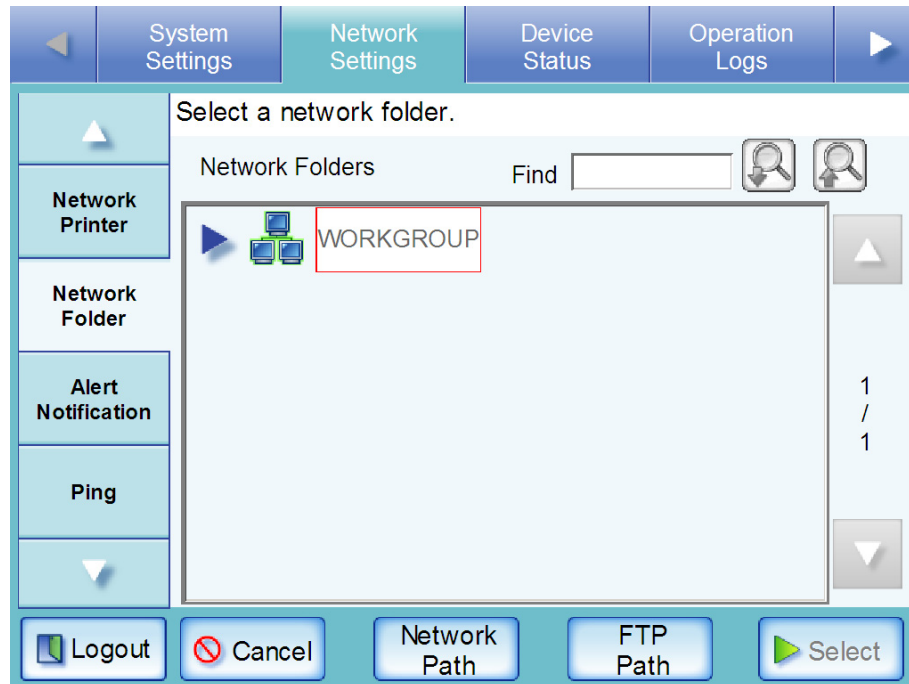


3. Press the [Add] button.
⇒ The screen for adding a network folder is displayed.



Desired domains may not be shown in the Network Folders. In this case, directly enter the path alias for the file server, or wait for a few minutes and re-open the screen for adding a network folder.

4. Select a domain



⇒ If login is required, an "Authentication" screen appears.

If login is not required, the network tree expands and computer names are displayed under the selected domain.

Authentication required for access.

User Name

Password

Num Lock Caps Lock



The "Caps Lock" and "Num Lock" indicators are shown on the authentication screen, when the administrator logs in via the scanner's touch panel. The "Caps Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Caps Lock is set. The "Num Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Num Lock is set.

1. Enter a User Name.
This may be up to 256 characters long.
2. Enter a Password.
This may be up to 256 characters long.
3. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ When the user name and password are valid, or if login is not required, the network tree expands and computer names are displayed under the selected domain.



5. Select a computer .

⇒ If login is required, an "Authentication" screen appears.

If login is not required, the network tree expands and computer names are displayed under the selected domain.

1. Enter a User Name.
This may be up to 256 characters long.
2. Enter a Password.
This may be up to 256 characters long.
3. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ When the user name and password is valid, or if login is not required, the network tree expands and network folders are displayed under the selected computer name.



6. Select a network folder .

The selected folder will be opened to show any sub-folders, which themselves may be selected in turn (up to seven levels deep, including the parent domain).

7. Press the [Select] button.

⇒ The selected network folder is added to the network folder list.



- The default network folder alias will be the same as the alias selected from the network tree. For details on changing the folder alias, refer to ["Renaming a Network Folder" \(page 124\)](#).
- Select a readable and writable network folder.
- The "Network" tree can show up to 400 domain, computer, and network folder items on the touch panel screen, and up to 10,000 items on the Admin Tool screen.
- While the network tree is displayed, enter characters to be searched for in the "Find" field, and press the [Back] or [Next] button to focus the network tree on the specified characters.

■ Registering a Network Folder (Network Path)

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Network Folder] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Network Folder" screen appears.
3. Press the [Add] button.
⇒ The screen for selecting a network folder is displayed.
4. Press the [Network Path] button.
⇒ The screen for adding a network folder (Network Path) is displayed.



Pressing the [Network Tree] button returns to the screen for selecting a folder from the network tree.

5. Enter a "Folder Alias".
This may be up to 80 characters long. "/" and "\" cannot be used in a folder alias.
If the [Add] button is pressed without entering a "Folder Alias", the shared name is set as the folder alias.

6. Enter a "Network Path".

Set the network path in the following format:

`\\Domain_name\Computer_name\Folder_name[\Folder_name]`

The minimum requirement for a network path is:

`\\Domain_name\Computer_name\Folder_name`

This may be up to 255 characters long.

Sub folders (`[\Folder_name]` is the example above) are optional.

"/" and "\" can be used as a delimiter for the folder alias.

If "/" is used, the network folder name is registered as "folder_name/folder_name".

For the "Domain_name", specify the NetBIOS domain name or the workgroup name that the network folder belongs to.

For the "Computer_name", specify the IP address, host name, or FQDN.

7. Press the [Add] button.

⇒ The network folder is added to the network folder list.



- The default network folder alias will be the same as the alias selected from the network tree. For details on changing the folder alias, refer to ["Renaming a Network Folder" \(page 124\)](#).
- Select a readable and writable network folder.
- The authentication screen may be displayed.

■ Registering a Network Folder (FTP Path)

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Network Folder] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Network Folder" screen appears.
3. Press the [Add] button.
⇒ The screen for selecting a network folder is displayed.
4. Press the [FTP Path] button.
⇒ The screen for entering a network folder (FTP Path) is displayed.

5. Enter a "Folder Alias".
This may be up to 80 characters long.
6. Enter a "FTP Path".
This may be up to 255 characters long.
Set the FTP path in the following format:
`Computer_name\Folder_alias`
For the "Computer_name", specify the IP address, host name, or FQDN.
7. Enter a user name and password for login to the FTP sever.
"User Name" or "Password" may be up to 256 characters long.

-
8. For "Authentication", specify whether or not to save the entered "User Name" and "Password".

When the [Remember] button is selected, the "User Name" and "Password" are saved. The "User Name" and "Password" saved for authentication are used on the regular user screen.

When the [Each Time] button is selected, the "User Name" and "Password" are not saved. When selecting a network folder initially, authentication is required on the regular user screen. However, if the user is registered in the LDAP server, and the LDAP user name and password can be used for authentication, the authentication screen will not appear even if the [Each Time] button is selected.
 9. For "Protocol", specify how to access the FTP server.

The default value is "FTP".

When the [FTP] button is selected, the FTP server will be connected without SSL encryption.

When the [FTPS] button is selected, the FTP server will be connected through SSL encryption.
 10. Set a "Port Number" for the FTP server.

The default number is 21. Numbers from 1 to 65535 can be set.
 11. For "Passive Mode", specify whether or not to access in passive mode.

The default value is "On".

"Passive Mode" can be selected only when the [FTP] button is selected in [Step 9](#).

When the [On] button is selected, the FTP server is connected in passive mode.

When the [Off] button is selected, the FTP server is connected in active mode.

When the [FTPS] button is selected in [Step 9](#), the FTP server is connected in passive mode.
 12. For "Encryption", specify the type of encryption.

"Encryption" can be selected when the [FTPS] button is selected in [Step 9](#).

When the [Explicit] button is selected, the FTP server will be connected without SSL encryption, and encryption will start before user name and password are authenticated.

When the [Implicit] button is selected, SSL encryption will work when the FTP server connection is started.
 13. For "Proxy", specify whether or not a proxy is to be used.

The "Proxy" setting is only available when a proxy server has been set on the "Proxy Server" screen.

When the [ON] button is selected, the FTP connection is via the proxy server specified on the "Proxy Server" screen.

When the [OFF] button is selected, the FTP server is connected to directly, without using the proxy server.

14. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ User authentication may be required to access the FTP server. Then, the network folder is added to the network folder list.



For the Central Admin Console, to use a Central Admin Sever with an enabled firewall, set the "Passive Mode" to "On".



- The default network folder alias will be the same as the alias selected from the network tree. For details on changing the folder alias, refer to ["Renaming a Network Folder" \(page 124\)](#).
- Select a readable and writable network folder.
- The authentication screen may appear.



■ Renaming a Network Folder

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Network Folder] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Network Folder" screen appears.
3. Select the network folder that is to be renamed.
4. Press the [Edit] button.
⇒ The screen for renaming a network folder is displayed.
5. Enter a folder alias.
This may be up to 80 characters long. The folder alias may not contain backslashes (\).
Trailing spaces are truncated, so a spaces-only alias is not allowed.

The screenshot shows a software interface for managing network settings. At the top, there are five tabs: 'System Settings', 'Network Settings' (which is highlighted in green), 'Device Status', 'Operation Logs', and a right-pointing arrow. On the left side, there is a vertical menu with five items: 'Network Printer', 'Network Folder' (highlighted in blue), 'Alert Notification', 'Ping', and a down-pointing arrow. The main area of the screen is titled 'Enter the new folder alias.' and contains two input fields. The first field is labeled 'Folder Alias' and contains the text 'Folder02'. The second field is labeled 'Network Path' and contains the text '\\WORKGROUP\WORK\Folder'. At the bottom of the screen, there are three buttons: 'Logout' (with a small icon), 'Cancel' (with a red circle and slash icon), and 'OK' (with a green play button icon).



If the network folder is an FTP server folder, the following screen is displayed. In this case, the "FTP Path" cannot be changed.

Enter the FTP server settings.

Folder Alias	Folder02FTP		
FTP Path	[Disabled]		
User Name	abc	Password	...
Authentication	Remember	Each Time	Port Number
Protocol	FTP	FTPS	21
Passive Mode	On	Off	(1 - 65535)
Encryption	Explicit	Implicit	
Proxy *	On	Off	*See the Proxy Server Menu

Logout Cancel OK

6. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The network folder is renamed.

■ Removing a Network Folder

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Network Folder] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Network Folder" screen appears.
3. Select the network folder that is to be removed from the folder list.
4. Press the [Remove] button.
⇒ The screen for removing a network folder is displayed.
5. Confirm the details of the network folder that is to be removed are correct, and press the [Yes] button.
⇒ The selected network folder is removed from the network folders list.

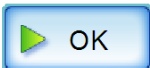
■ Viewing the Network Folder Details

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Network Folder] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Network Folder" screen appears.
3. Select the desired network folder from the folder list.
4. Press the [Details] button.
⇒ The information for the selected network folder is displayed.

Network folder details :

Folder Alias:
Folder01

Network Path:
\\WORKGROUP\WORK\Folder01

 OK



If the network folder is an FTP server folder, the following screen is displayed.

Network folder details:

Folder Alias:
Folder02FTP

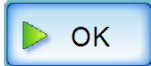
Network Path:
192.168.1.100

User Name: aries Password: *

Authentication: Remember

Protocol: FTP Port Number: 21

Passive Mode: On Proxy: Off

 OK

4.7.15 Setting the Destination for Alert Notifications



An e-mail address can be specified to which an alert notification will be sent whenever a scanner alert situation occurs.

If an SMTP server has not been setup, alert notifications cannot be sent. For more details about how to set an SMTP server, refer to ["4.7.11 Setting the e-Mail Server \(SMTP Server\)" \(page 100\)](#). When the destination for alert notification is set, alert notification messages will be sent to the registered e-mail address in the following title.

Network Scanner (XXXX) Error

For more details, refer to ["E.1.3 Alert Monitor System Log Messages" \(page 453\)](#).

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Alert Notification] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Alert Notification" screen appears.

The screenshot shows a software interface with a top navigation bar containing 'System Settings', 'Network Settings' (highlighted), 'Device Status', and 'Operation Logs'. On the left, a vertical menu has 'Network Printer', 'Network Folder', 'Alert Notification' (highlighted), and 'Ping'. The main area is titled 'Specify where alerts are to be sent.' and contains a label 'Notification e-Mail Address' above a text input field. A 'Test' button is located to the right of the input field. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'Logout', 'Cancel', and 'OK'.

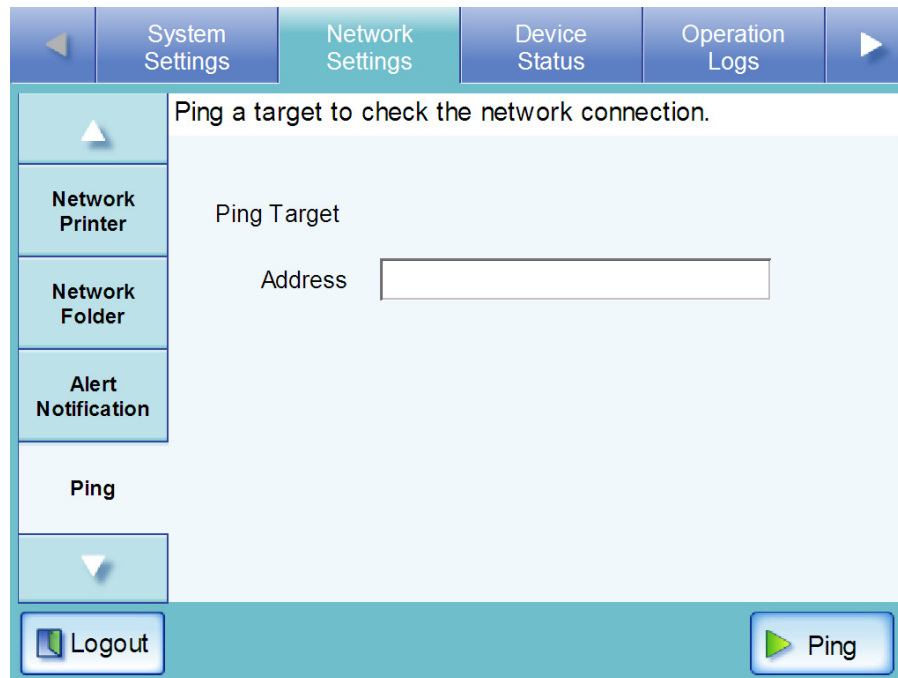
3. Enter an e-mail address to which the alert notification will be sent.
For details about e-mail address settings values, refer to ["B.1 e-Mail Address Setting Values" \(page 420\)](#).
4. To confirm that the entered e-mail address is valid, press the [Test] button.
Check that the test mail successfully arrives at the expected e-mail address.
5. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The destination for alert notifications is set.

4.7.16 Checking the Network Connection with a Ping Test



The network connection can be checked using a ping test.

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Ping] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Ping" screen appears.

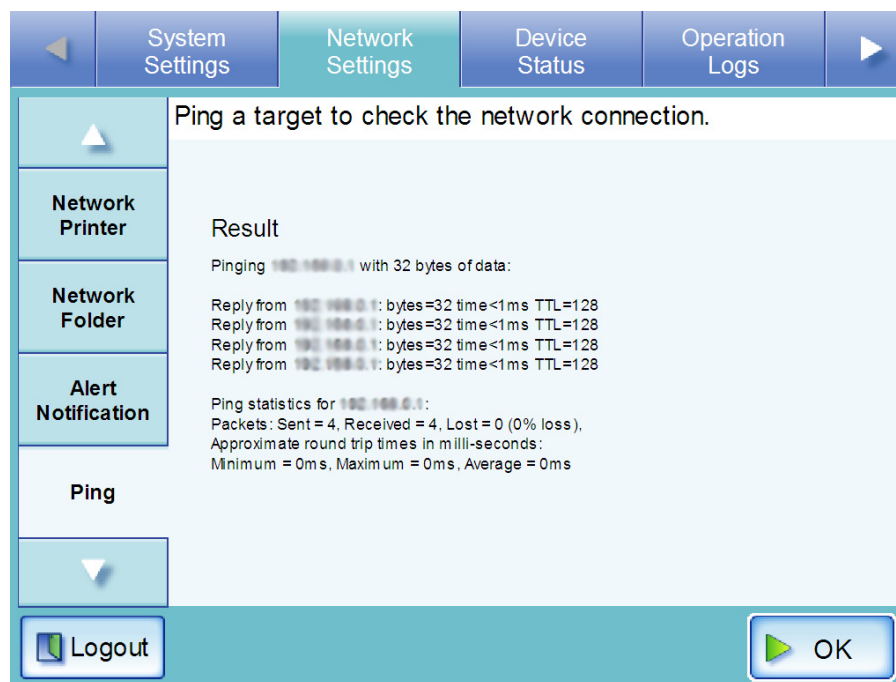


3. Enter the IP address, host name, or FQDN for the server to be used to check the network connection.
 - For an IP address
The following format should be used xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (xxx is a value from 0 to 255).
 - For a host name or FQDN
Up to 255 characters may be used.

4. Press the [Ping] button.

⇒ A ping test is performed and the results are displayed.

For more details about the result, refer to "[Checking basic network operation with a Ping test](#)" (page 388).



4.7.17 Checking the Network Operating Status

Touch
PanelAdmin
Tool

■ Checking the Network Status

The operating status of the network can be checked.

The following information is shown. If the information is not shown, refer to ["8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting"](#) (page 388) and check the settings.

The following information is shown.

- MAC Address
- IP Address
- Subnet Mask
- Default Gateway
- DNS Server IP Address
- WINS Server IP Address

1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.

2. Select the [Network Status] tab on the left side menu.

⇒ The "Network Status" screen shows the status of the currently operating network connection.

Check the network information.

Network Settings

Item	Value
MAC Address	00:01:20:00:00:00
IP Address	192.168.0.10
Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0
Default Gateway	192.168.0.1
DNS Server	192.168.0.1
WINS Server	192.168.0.1

Link Speed/Duplex Mode: Auto-Negotiation

Logout Cancel OK



- If connection to LDAP server is not possible, try the following steps:
 1. Disconnect the LAN cable, and press the [Shutdown] button on the touch panel to turn the scanner off.
 2. Reboot the scanner with the LAN cable disconnected, and enter a nonduplicate IP address.
 3. Re-connect the LAN cable to the scanner.
- If the DHCP server cannot be reached when DHCP is set to [On], the IP Address is set to "169.254.XXX.YYY" (where XXX and YYY are arbitrary values between 0 and 255).

■ Setting the Link Speed/Duplex Mode

If the network is not communicating properly, even though the network operating status is correct, change the Link Speed/Duplex Mode settings.

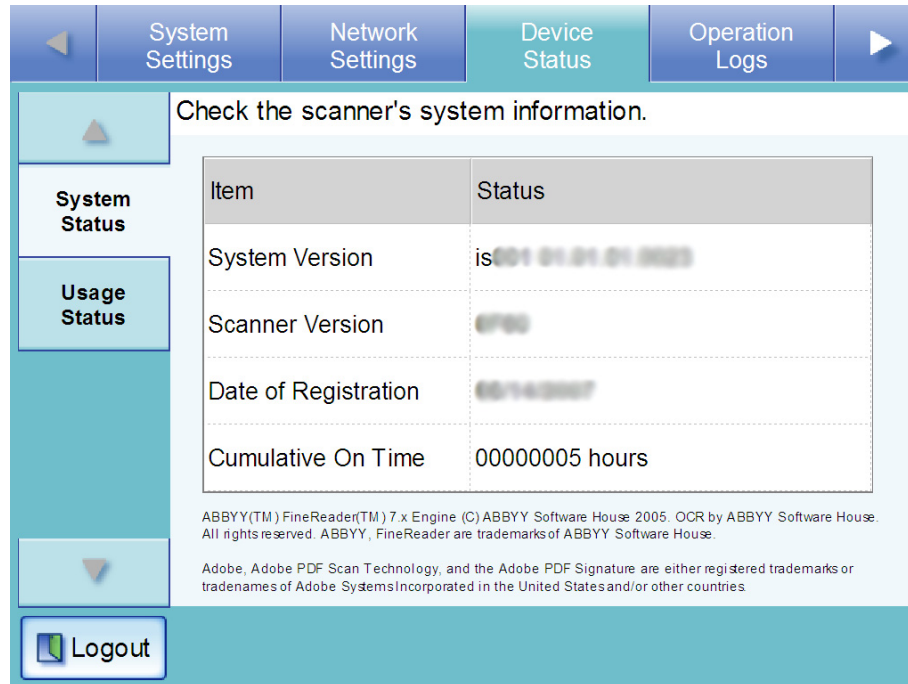
1. Select the [Network Settings] tab on the top menu.
2. Press the [Network Status] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Network Status" screen shows the status of the currently operating network connection.
3. Press the Link Speed/Duplex Mode [List] button.
⇒ The Link Speed/Duplex Mode list appears.
4. Change the setting from "Auto-Negotiation" to a fixed Link Speed/Duplex Mode.
5. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The Link Speed/Duplex Mode setting is changed.

4.8 Using the Device Status Menus

4.8.1 Viewing the System Status

Touch
PanelAdmin
Tool

1. Select the [Device Status] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [System Status] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The system status information is displayed.



The following system status information is available.

Info	Details
System Version	Shows the current scanner system version number.
Scanner Version	Shows the current scanner firmware version number.
Date of Registration	Shows the date on which the scanner was first used.
Cumulative On Time	Shows the total elapsed usage time of the scanner.

4.8.2 Viewing the Usage Status Touch Panel Admin Tool

Information about the number of documents that have been scanned and the status of the scanner's consumable parts (pad assembly or pick roller) can be viewed.

For details on consumable replacement, refer to ["7.6 Replacing Parts" \(page 367\)](#).

■ Viewing the Status of Consumable Parts

1. Select the [Device Status] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Usage Status] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Usage Status" screen appears.

System Settings	Network Settings	Device Status	Operation Logs
Check the consumables usage status.			
Total Throughput 50,440 Sheets			
Pad Assembly 50,000 / (50,000) Sheets			
Status Replace pad assembly now			
Clear			
Pick Roller 50,000 / (100,000) Sheets			
Status			
Clear			
Logout			

The "Status" fields show the total number of pages scanned and the current conditions of the pad assembly or pick roller.

"Total Throughput" is shown in units of 10 sheets scanned.

"Pad Assembly" and "Pick Roller" are shown in units of 500 sheets scanned.

Consumables	Color	Status	Action
Pad Assembly	Green	Total throughput: 0 to 44,999 sheets	No action required.
	Orange	Total throughput: 45,000 to 49,999 sheets	Pad assembly needs to be replaced soon. Obtain a replacement part.
	Red	Total throughput: Over 50,000 sheets	Pad assembly has passed its rated lifetime and needs to be replaced.
Pick Roller	Green	Total throughput: 0 to 94,999 sheets	No action required.
	Orange	Total throughput: 95,000 to 99,999 sheets	Pick roller needs to be replaced soon. Obtain a replacement part.
	Red	Total throughput: Over 100,000 sheets	Pick roller has passed its rated lifetime and needs to be replaced.

■ Resetting the Usage Counter

After part replacement, the usage counter can be reset to return the part status to normal. For more details about replacing consumable parts, refer to ["7.6 Replacing Parts" \(page 367\)](#).

1. Select the [Device Status] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Usage Status] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Usage Status" screen appears.
3. Press the [Clear] button for the part replaced.
⇒ The counter reset confirmation screen appears.
4. Press the [Yes] button.
⇒ The counter value is reset to "0", and the "Status" field turns green again.

4.8.3 Viewing the Add-in Status

Touch
Panel

Admin
Tool

If an add-in module is installed, the following steps can be performed.

An Add-in is an application created by using the fi-6010N SDK (development kit).

1. Select the [Device Status] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Add-in Status] tab on the left side menu.

⇒ The "Add-in Status" screen appears.

Check add-in status.

Add-in: Twd00000213

Version: 01.01.01.0000

Logout

The following information is shown.

Info	Details
Add-in	Shows the name of the add-in module.
Version	Shows the current add-in module version number.

4.9 Using the Operation Logs Menus

4.9.1 Managing User Logs

The most recent 1,000 user log entries are saved by the scanner.



- User logs may contain private information such as e-mail addresses or fax numbers, so care should be taken when managing such data.
- If a log file error is detected during system operation, the log file will be cleared and the following log entry recorded:
Error 81001004 Corrupted user log file was deleted.



■ Viewing the User Log Details Touch Panel Admin Tool

The user log summary is shown in date/time order.

Even if the [Region/Timezone] or [Date/Time] settings are changed, the order of the log entries will not be changed.

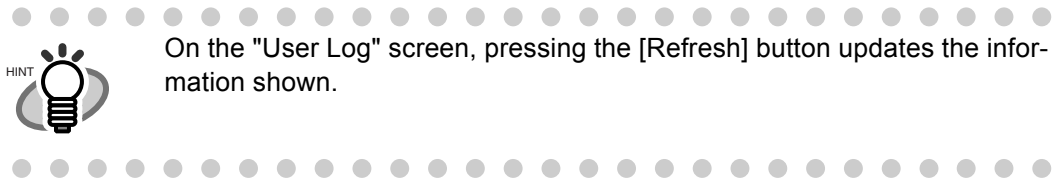
1. Select the [Operation Logs] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [User Log] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "User Log" screen appears.

Date	Time	User	Result	Code	Operation
09/10/2008	09:30:08	guest	OK	00000000	Print
09/10/2008	09:29:02	guest	OK	00000000	Print
09/10/2008	09:28:15	guest	OK	00000000	Save
09/10/2008	09:28:14	guest	Error	12010002	e-Mail
09/10/2008	09:26:39	guest	OK	00000000	Print
09/10/2008	09:25:50	guest	OK	00000000	Save
09/10/2008	09:22:16	guest	OK	00000000	Print
09/10/2008	09:22:01	guest	OK	00000000	Print

3. Select the log you wish to view.

⇒ The details of the selected log are displayed.

Pressing the [OK] button returns to the "User Log" screen.



The following information is shown.

Info	Info options	Description
Date	MM/dd/yyyy dd/MM/yyyy yyyy/MM/dd	Shows the date of each operation (format specified on the Date/Time screen is used). For more details, refer to "4.6.5 Setting the Date/Time" (page 59) .
Time	hh:mm:ss	Shows the time of each operation.
User	xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx	Operating user names are displayed in the following format. SAM_account_name@domain_name
Result	In Progress	Currently processing a scan operation.
	OK	Operation completed successfully.
	Error	Operation failed to complete successfully.
Code	xxxxxxx	Shows a code for each operation. If a response is required, refer to "Appendix E Operation Messages" (page 433) .
Operation	e-Mail	The scanned data is sent as an e-mail attachment.
	Fax	The scanned data is sent as a fax.
	Print	The scanned data is sent to the print server, and the sending status is shown in the "Result" column until the scanned data is completely sent to the print server.
	Save	Scanned data is saved in a network folder.
Pages	xxx	Shows the number of pages scanned.
Description	xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx	Shows detailed information for each message.

■ Downloading the User Logs in CSV Format Admin Tool

Operation logs for regular users are stored in the scanner with the default file name "OperationLog.csv".

When downloaded to a computer, the file will contain CSV format data. The file is saved in the following form:

```
"Date","Time","User","Result","Code","Operation","Pages","Description"
```

1. Select the [Operation Logs] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [User Log] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "User Log" screen appears.
3. Press the [Download] button.
⇒ The "File Download" dialog box appears.
4. Press the [Save] button.



The size of the user log file is displayed in the "File Download" dialog box. Make sure there is enough free space on the disk where it is to be saved and press the [Save] button. If there is not enough free disk space, an incomplete file may be saved.

⇒ The "Save As" dialog box appears.

5. Enter a file name.
The file will contain CSV format data.
6. Press the [Save] button.
⇒ A file containing CSV format data is saved.

■ Clearing the User Logs Touch Panel Admin Tool

1. Select the [Operation Logs] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [User Log] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "User Log" screen appears.
3. Press the [Clear All] button.
⇒ The "clear all" confirmation screen appears.
4. Press the [Yes] button.
⇒ All the user operation logs are cleared.

4.9.2 Managing the System Log

Up to 1,000 system information logs (such as for startup, shutdown, and system errors) are saved in the scanner.



- System log may contain private information such as e-mail addresses or fax numbers, so care should be taken when managing such data.
- If a log file error is detected during system operation, the log file will be cleared and the following log entry recorded:
Error 81001003 Corrupted system log file was deleted.

■ Viewing the System Log Details

Touch Panel

Admin Tool

The system log summary is shown in date/time order.

Even if the [Region/Timezone] or [Date/Time] settings are changed, the order of the log entries will not be changed.

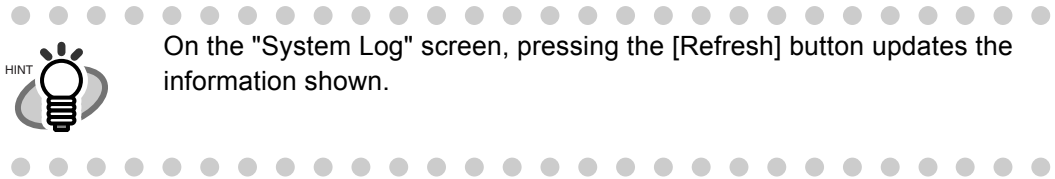
1. Select the [Operation Logs] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [System Log] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "System Log" screen appears.

Date	Time	Type	Message
4/3/2008	03:24:48	Information	010D0002 User name @ logged out.
4/3/2008	03:23:52	Information	010D0001 User name @ logged in.
4/3/2008	03:23:45	Error	110D0001 Login failed. Check the user name and p...
4/3/2008	03:23:17	Information	010D0002 User name @ logged out.
4/3/2008	03:22:57	Information	010D0001 User name @ logged in.
4/3/2008	03:18:28	Information	010D0002 User name @ logged out.
4/3/2008	03:18:01	Information	010D0001 User name @ logged in.
4/3/2008	03:05:53	Information	01000001 (IP Address) Settings were changed. Info : DHCP = Off.

3. Select the log you wish to view.

⇒ The details of the selected log are displayed.

⇒ Pressing the [OK] button returns to the "System Log" screen.



The following information is shown.

Info	Info options	Details
Date	MM/dd/yyyy dd/MM/yyyy yyyy/MM/dd	Shows the date of each operation (format specified on the Date/Time screen is used). For more details, refer to "4.6.5 Setting the Date/Time" (page 59) .
Time	hh:mm:ss	Shows the system log time record.
Type	Information	Shows information about the system. No action required.
	Error	Shows the system error. The same information will be sent to the e-mail address set in "4.7.15 Setting the Destination for Alert Notifications" (page 128) . To deal with errors, refer to "E.1.3 Alert Monitor System Log Messages" (page 453) .
	Warning	Shows the system warning. The same information will be sent to the e-mail address set in "4.7.15 Setting the Destination for Alert Notifications" (page 128) . To deal with errors, refer to "E.1.3 Alert Monitor System Log Messages" (page 453) .
Message	Message Code Message Body	For information about messages, refer to "E.1.2 System Log Messages" (page 449) .

■ Downloading the System Log in CSV Format Admin Tool

The default file name is "SystemLog.csv".

When downloaded to a computer, the file will contain CSV format data. The file is saved in the following form:

"Date","Time","Type","Message"

1. Select the [Operation Logs] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [System Log] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "System Log" screen appears.
3. Press the [Download] button.
⇒ The "File Download" dialog box appears.
4. Press the [Save] button.



The size of the user log file is displayed in the "File Download" dialog box. Make sure there is enough free space on the disk where it is to be saved and press the [Save] button. If there is not enough free disk space, an incomplete file may be saved.

⇒ The "Save As" dialog box appears.

5. Enter a file name.
The file will contain CSV format data.
6. Press the [Save] button.
⇒ A file containing CSV format data is saved.

■ Clearing the System Log Touch Panel Admin Tool

1. Select the [Operation Logs] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [System Log] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "System Log" screen appears.
3. Press the [Clear All] button.
⇒ The "clear all" confirmation screen appears.
4. Press the [Yes] button.
⇒ The system log is cleared.

4.10 Using the Maintenance Menus

4.10.1 Maintaining the User Data Store

Admin Tool

The scanner's user data store can be backed-up, restored, and deleted.

The user data store contains the following information:

- Fax Number List
- "My List" e-Mail Address Books
- Scan Settings
- User Logs
- Name of the last network printer used
- Name of the last network folder used

Scanner login user names are authenticated with the LDAP server, and when a new name is encountered, the scanner automatically adds an entry for that user to the user data store. The user data store may contain up to 1,000 users.



- Once 1,000 user names have been used to login, new user logins are no longer possible until the entire user data store is cleared. Refer to ["Backing up the User Data Store" \(page 145\)](#) and ["Clearing the User Data Store" \(page 148\)](#) for details.

It is recommended that the user data store be backed up before it is cleared.

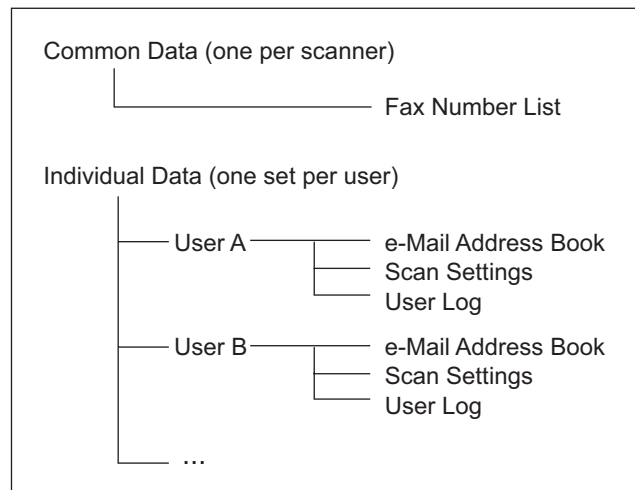
- When restoring from a user data store backup, if a backed up user name corresponds to that of an existing user in the current user data store, the backup user data will overwrite the current user data. If the backed up user name is "unknown", the backed up data will be added as a "new" user. Addition of new users cannot cause the 1,000 user limit to be exceeded, or the user data store restoration will fail.
- When the User Data Store is restored from a backup, the Fax Number List is also reverted to its old state.

The following example illustrates how the number of users could exceed 1,000:

1. 100 users (A001 to A100) log in.
2. The user data store is backed up (with 100 users: A001 to A100).
3. The user data store (containing users A001 to A100) is cleared.
4. 960 "new" users (A001 to A050 and B001 to B910) login.

5. The user data store (containing users A001 to A100) backed up in Step 2 is restored.
- ⇒ Users A001 to A100 are to be restored, of whom 50 are already in the current user data store (users A001 to A050) and so will be overwrite targets.
 - ⇒ Users A051 to A100 are considered "new" users and thus need to be added to the user data store. However 960 existing users + 50 new users = 1010 users.
 - ⇒ As the number of users would exceed the 1,000 user limit, the Step 2 user data store (containing users A001 to A100) is not restored.

The user data store contents are organized as follows:



The user data store may contain private information such as e-mail addresses or fax numbers, so care should be taken when managing such data.

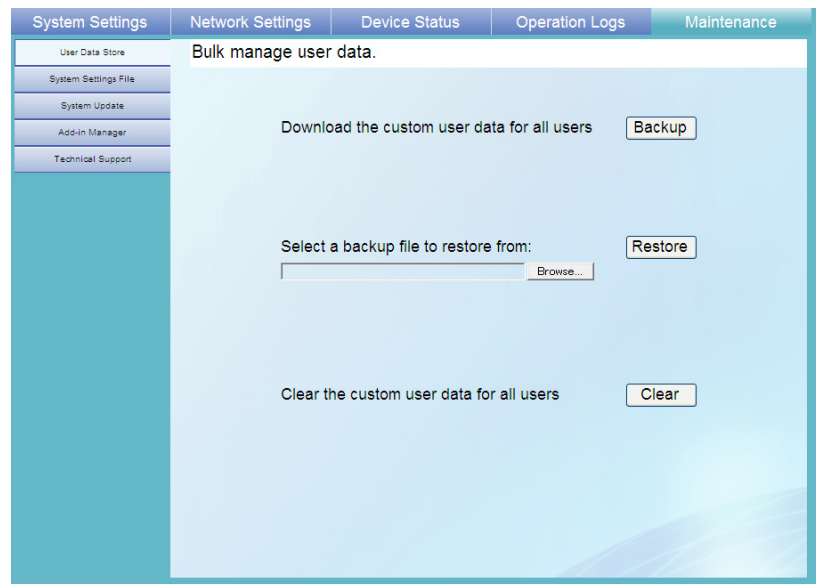
■ Backing up the User Data Store

As a precaution, the user data store should be backed up regularly.
The default file name is "restored_data".



User logs cannot be backed up.

1. Select the [Maintenance] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [User Data Store] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "User Data Store" screen appears.
3. Press the [Backup] button.



⇒ The "File Download - Security Warning" dialog box appears.

4. Press the [Save] button.



The size of the user log file is displayed in the "File Download - Security Warning" dialog box. Make sure there is enough free space on the disk where it is to be saved and press the [Save] button. If there is not enough free disk space, an incomplete file may be saved.

⇒ The "Save As" dialog box appears.

5. Enter a file name.

Use of a name that includes the scanner name and backup date is recommended.

6. Press the [Save] button.

⇒ A backup copy of the user data store is saved.



Do not change the contents of data store backup files.

If changed, the file may no longer be used as a backup. Trying to restore from a changed user data store backup file may render the scanner inoperable.

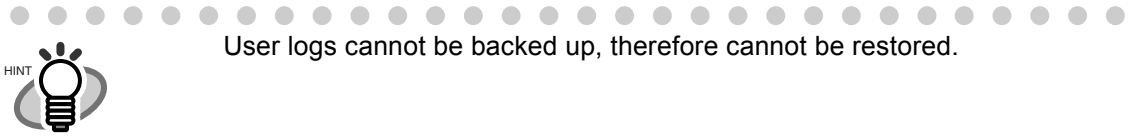


■ Restoring the User Data Store

The scanner's user data store can be restored from a backed-up user data store file.



- Restoring user data overwrites all user information stored at the time of restoration, and returns all e-mail address books, fax number list, and scan settings to the time the backup was taken.
- During user data store restoration, do not press and hold down the startup button for longer than four seconds, as it may cause the scanner to function abnormally.



User logs cannot be backed up, therefore cannot be restored.



1. Select the [Maintenance] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [User Data Store] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "User Data Store" screen appears.
3. Select a user data store backup file.
Press the [Browse] button to select a file.
4. Press the [Restore] button.
⇒ An "OK to overwrite?" confirmation message appears.
5. Press the [Yes] button.
⇒ After the user data store is restored, a restore completion message appears.
6. Press the [OK] button.

■ Clearing the User Data Store

The scanner's user data store can be deleted.



Clearing the user data store cannot be undone.



1. Select the [Maintenance] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [User Data Store] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "User Data Store" screen appears.
3. Press the [Clear] button.
⇒ The clear confirmation screen appears.
4. Press the [Yes] button.
⇒ The user data store is cleared.

4.10.2 Maintaining the System Settings Admin Tool

The scanner's system settings set by the administrator can be saved in CSV format, backed up, restored, or returned to their factory default values.



System settings do not include the network printer settings.



■ Downloading the System Settings in CSV Format

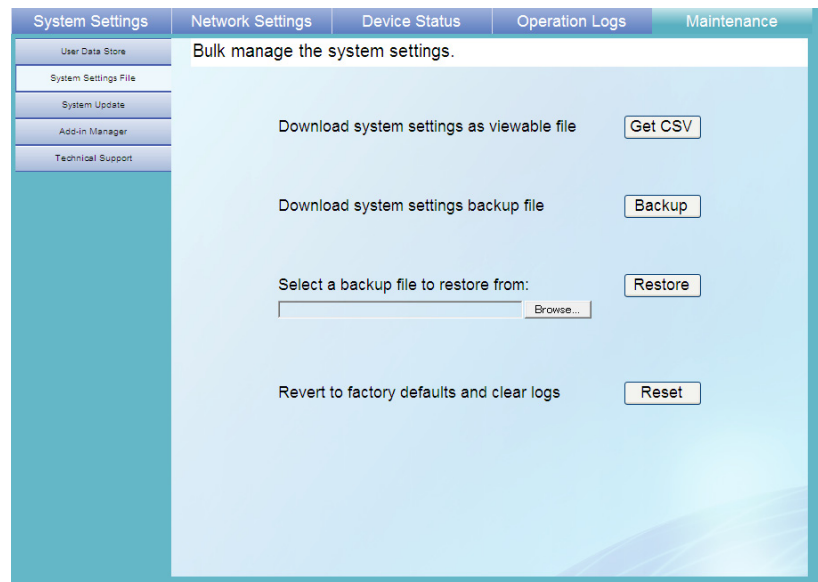
System settings downloaded in CSV format may be viewed by using spreadsheet software.

CSV system settings files are of the following format:

"Function_name", "Option_name", "Value"

The default file name is "Configuration_download.csv".

1. Select the [Maintenance] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [System Settings File] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "System Settings File" screen appears.
3. Press the [Get CSV] button.



⇒ The "File Download" dialog box appears.

-
4. Press the [Save] button.



The size of the user log file is displayed in the "File Download" dialog box. Make sure there is enough free space on the disk where it is to be saved and press the [Save] button. If there is not enough free disk space, an incomplete file may be saved.

⇒ The "Save As" dialog box appears.

5. Name the file and specify where it should be saved.

The file will contain CSV format data.

6. Press the [Save] button.

⇒ The system settings for the scanner are downloaded.

■ Backing up System Settings

The administrator can backup the scanner system settings.

Backup files can later be used to restore system settings. Backup should be performed regularly.

The default file name is "SystemSettingsFile".

1. Select the [Maintenance] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [System Settings File] tab on the left side menu.

⇒ The "System Settings File" screen appears.

3. Press the [Backup] button.

⇒ The "File Download - Security Warning" dialog box appears.

4. Press the [Save] button.



The size of the user log file is displayed in the "File Download - Security Warning" dialog box. Make sure there is enough free space on the disk where it is to be saved and press the [Save] button. If there is not enough free disk space, an incomplete file may be saved.

⇒ The "Save As" dialog box appears.

5. Name the file and specify where it should be saved.

The date of backup or scanner name should be used as an easy-to-understand file name.

6. Press the [Save] button.

⇒ The system settings are backed up.



Do not change the contents of system settings backup files.
If changed, the file may no longer be used as a backup. Trying to restore from a changed system settings backup file may render the scanner inoperable.

■ Restoring System Settings

The system settings backup file can be returned to the scanner to restore system settings to those at the time backup was taken.

1. Select the [Maintenance] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [System Settings File] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "System Settings File" screen appears.
3. Enter a backup file to restore from.
Press the [Browse] button to select a file.
4. Press the [Restore] button.
⇒ A confirmation message appears.
5. Press the [Yes] button.
⇒ After factory default settings have been restored, the scanner is restarted.



During system settings restoration, do not press and hold down the startup button for longer than four seconds, as it may cause the scanner to function abnormally.



The network interface connection will be lost when the scanner is restarted to complete the restoration of the system settings. To continue with other settings, wait a short time for the device to restart, then login to the network interface again.

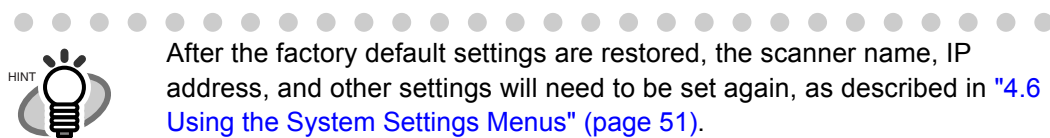
As the network interface connection to the scanner requires the IP address or scanner name, if this is changed by the restoration of the system settings (i.e. if the backed up IP address or scanner name is different to the pre-restoration IP address or scanner name), the new IP address or scanner name will be needed. If not known, the current state of these settings can always be checked by physically logging in to the scanner via the touch panel interface.

■ Resetting Factory Defaults

1. Select the [Maintenance] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [System Settings File] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "System Settings File" screen appears.
3. Press the [Reset] button.
⇒ A confirmation message appears.
4. Press the [Yes] button.
⇒ System settings are deleted and revert to factory defaults.
⇒ After factory default settings have been restored, the scanner is restarted.



During factory defaults reset, do not press and hold down the startup button for longer than four seconds, as it may cause the scanner to function abnormally.



After the factory default settings are restored, the scanner name, IP address, and other settings will need to be set again, as described in ["4.6 Using the System Settings Menus" \(page 51\)](#).

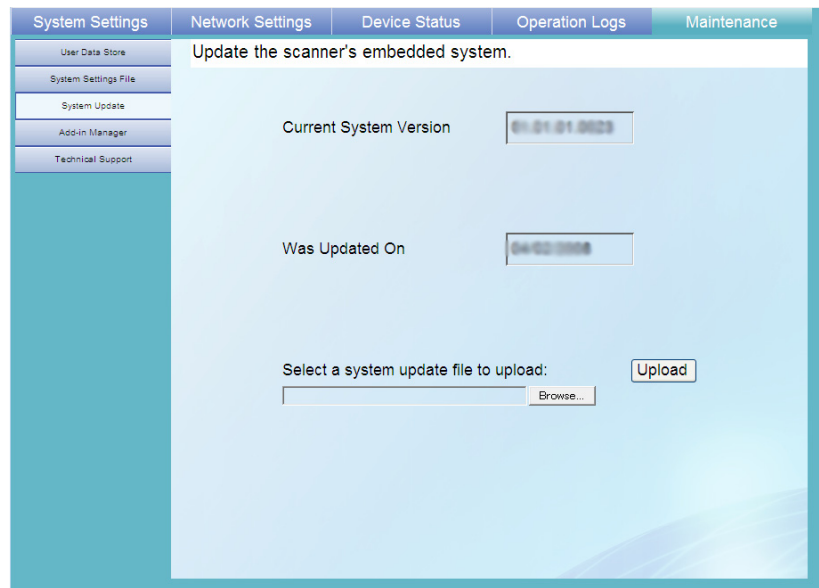


4.10.3 Updating the Scanner's System Software

Admin Tool

The scanner system can be updated as follows.

1. Select the [Maintenance] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [System Update] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "System Update" screen appears.



3. Select a system update file.
Press the [Browse] button to select a file.
4. Press the [Upload] button.
⇒ The version of the system update contained in the selected file is displayed.
5. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The system update process is started.
After the system has updated, the scanner is restarted.



- Wait for the system to restart.
- During the update, do not press and hold down the startup button for longer than four seconds, as it may cause the scanner to function abnormally.



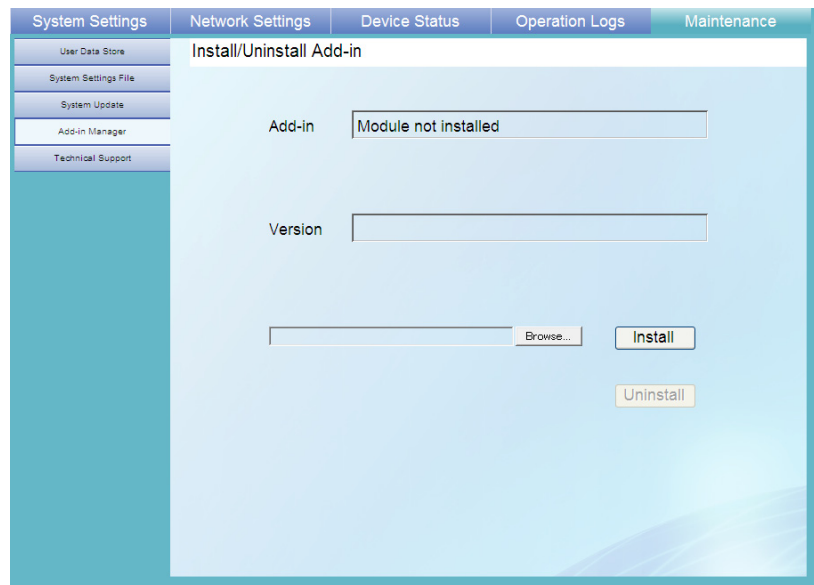
The network interface connection will be lost when the scanner is restarted to complete the system update. To continue with other settings, wait a short time for the device to restart, then login to the network interface again.

4.10.4 Installing/Uninstalling an Add-in Module Admin Tool

An Add-in is an application created using the fi-6010N SDK (Developer's Kit). This section describes how to install and uninstall an Add-in module.

■ Installing an Add-in Module

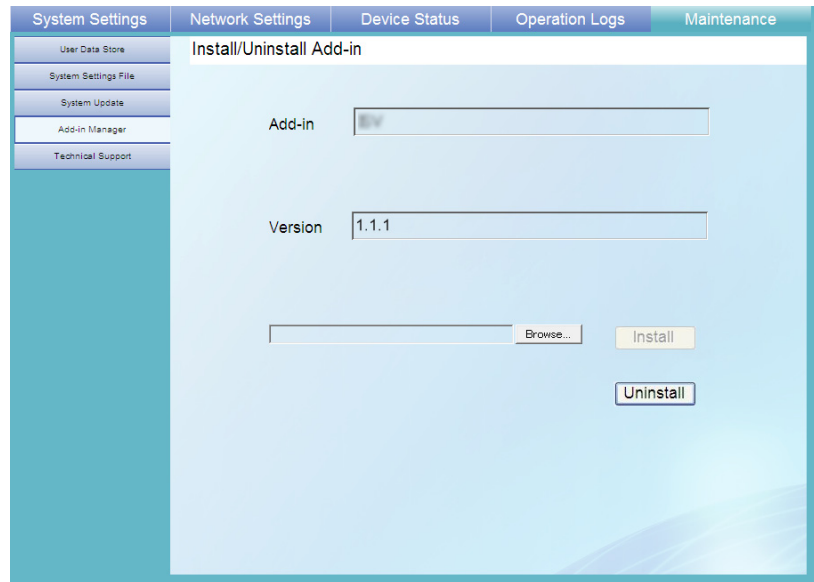
1. Select the [Maintenance] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Add-in Manager] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Add-in Manager" screen appears.



3. Select an Add-in installation file.
Press the [Browse] button to select a file.
4. Press the [Install] button.
⇒ A confirmation message appears.
5. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ After the Add-in module has been installed, the scanner is restarted.

■ Uninstalling an Add-in Module

1. Select the [Maintenance] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Add-in Manager] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Add-in Manager" screen appears.

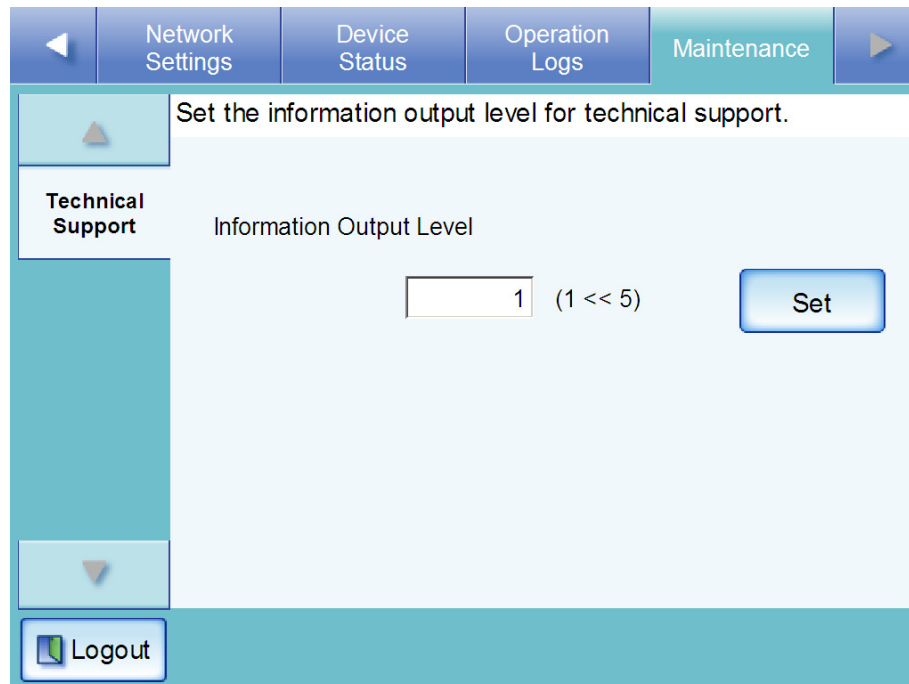


3. Press the [Uninstall] button.
⇒ A confirmation message appears.
4. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ After the Add-in module has been uninstalled, the scanner is restarted.

4.10.5 Setting the Information Output Level

Touch
PanelAdmin
Tool

1. Select the [Maintenance] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Technical Support] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Technical Support" screen appears.



3. Enter the desired information output level.
The default level is "1".
Increasing the value of the output level increases the detail of information collected, but slows down processing. Set the level requested by your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
4. Press the [Set] button.
⇒ The information output level is set.



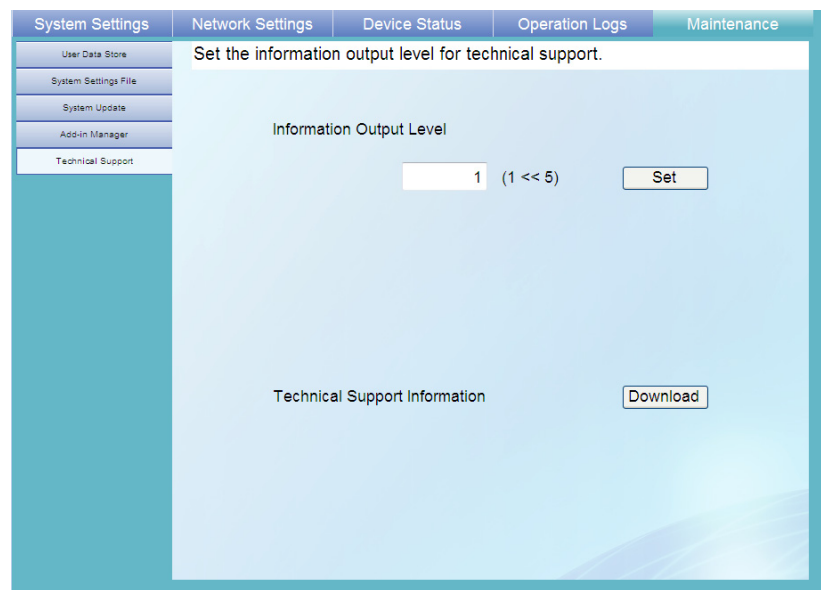
If the "Information Output Level" is set to "5", the output data may contain private user information such as e-mail addresses, so care should be taken when managing such data.

4.10.6 Obtaining Technical Support Admin Tool

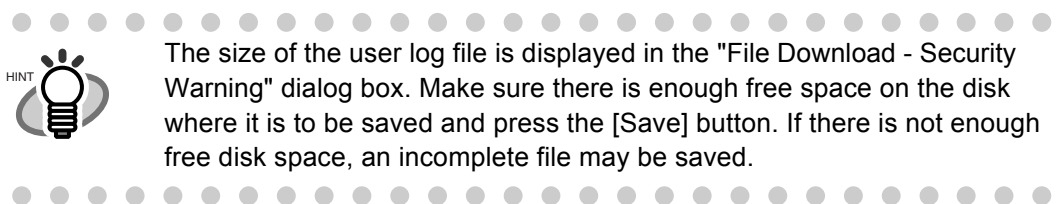
If any problems occur when setting up or using the scanner, technical support information can be collected to help determine the cause of the problem.

The information obtained should be sent to your FUJITSU scanner dealer along with the scanner when given for repair.

1. Select the [Maintenance] tab on the top menu.
2. Select the [Technical Support] tab on the left side menu.
⇒ The "Technical Support" screen appears.



3. Press the [Download] button.
⇒ The "File Download - Security Warning" dialog box appears.
4. Press the [Save] button.



⇒ The "Save As" dialog box appears.

5. Name the file and specify where it should be saved.
6. Press the [Save] button.
⇒ The technical information is downloaded.

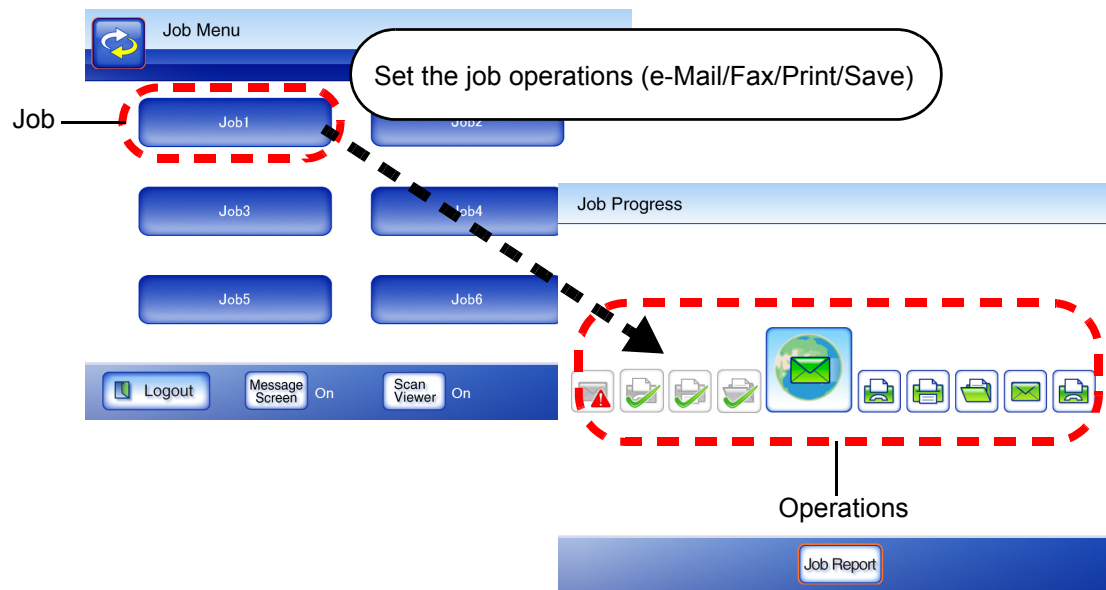
4.11 Setting Job Features

After the job sequence, job menu, and job group settings are performed on the Job Menu, a regular user can use each assigned job menu at login, and process a job.

1. Job Sequence Settings

A job sequence is a single operation that pulls together several user operations (e-Mail/Fax/Print/Save) according to the settings on the "Scan Settings" screen.

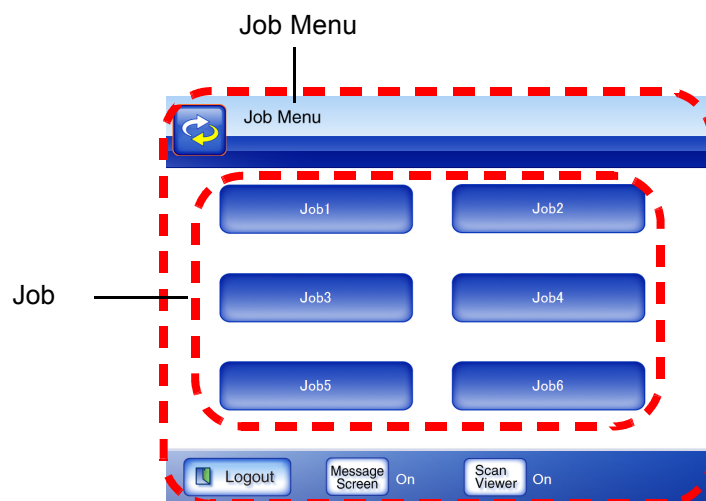
For example, the operation of sending scanned data by e-mail and then saving it in a folder can be set as a single job sequence.



2. Job Menu Settings

A job menu is a menu arrangement of the job sequences set by the user.

For example, you can assign a job sequence that sends scan data by e-mail and then saves it in a folder as a button, and set it on a "Job Menu".

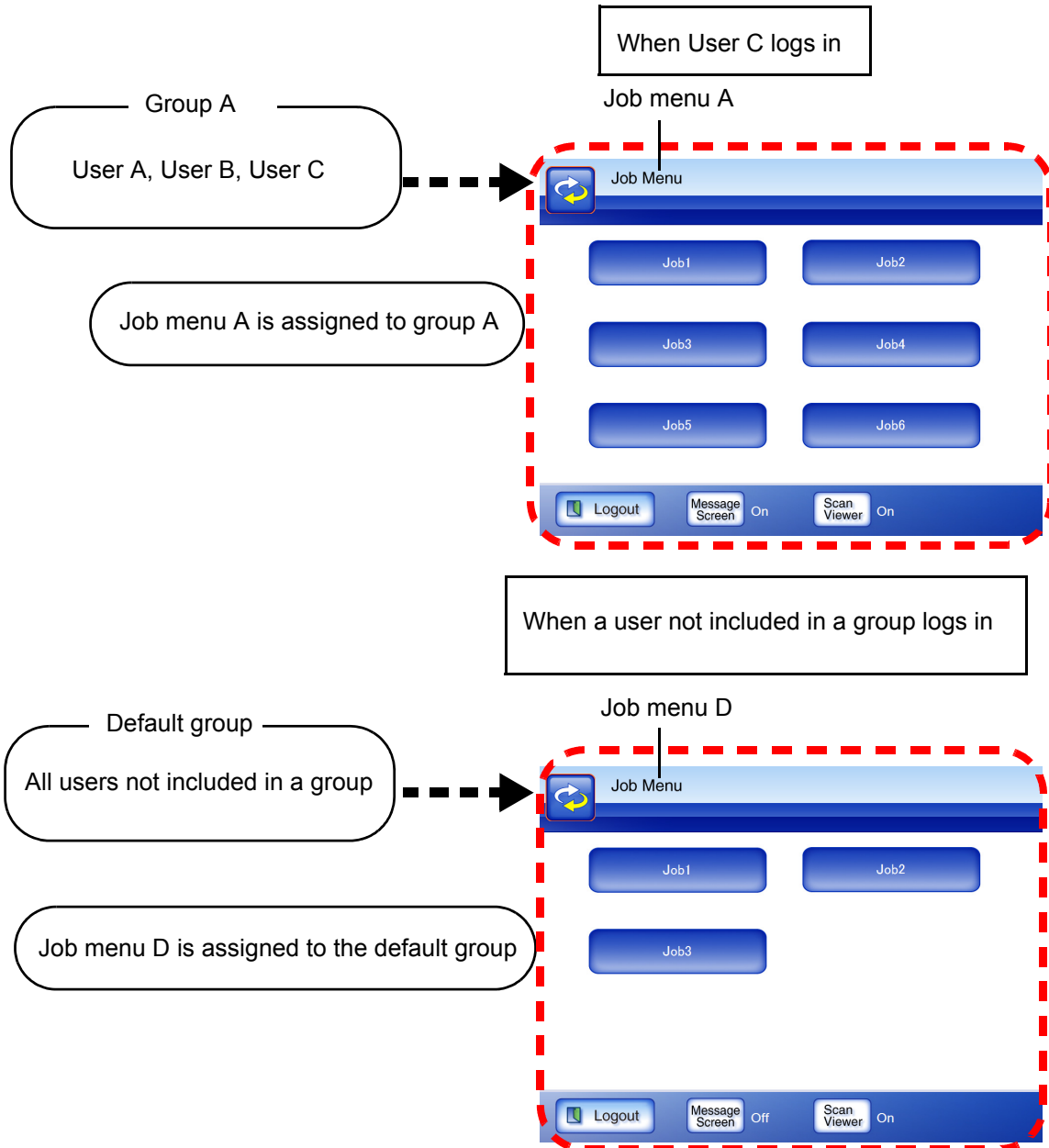


3. Job Group Settings

A job group is a group of users assigned with the same job menu, by the administrator.

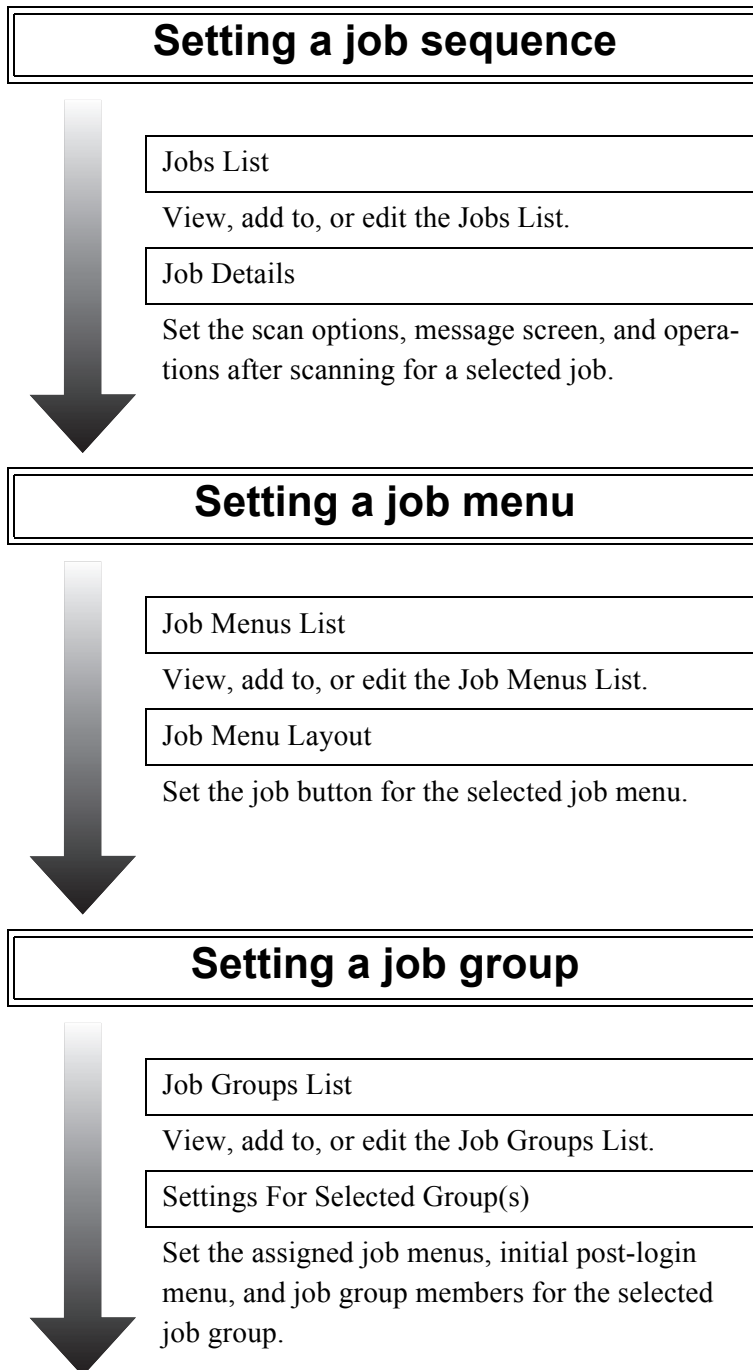
Users associated with a group can use its job menu. All users who are not included in any job group belong to a default group.

For example, job menu A is assigned to group A, and job menu D is assigned to the default group. User C is included in group A, therefore can use job menu A. Users not included in a job group are able to use job menu D.



4.11.1 Job Setting Quick User Guide

The procedure for an administrator to set up job is shown below.



For details, refer to
["4.11.2 Setting a Job Sequence"](#) (page 163).

For details, refer to
["4.11.3 Setting a Job Menu"](#) (page 176).

For details, refer to
["4.11.4 Setting a Job Group"](#) (page 182).

Processing a job

Process the job.

When a user logs in, the assigned job menu is displayed, and a job can be selected and processed.

Before processing a job set on the Central Admin Console "Job Mode Settings" screen, the job mode settings set on the "Job Mode Settings" screen must be released.

For details, refer to ["6.13 Processing a Job" \(page 349\)](#).

Admin Tool Central Admin

Up to 1,000 job sequences can be set.

This section describes how to add a job sequence.

- ⇒ The "Jobs List" window appears.

[illegible]

- ⇒ The "Job Details" window appears.

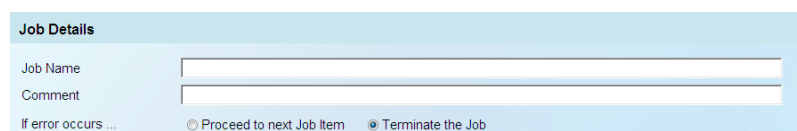
3. Set the [Job Name], [Comment], and [If error occurs].

Enter a job name in [Job Name]. This may be up to 64 characters long.

Enter comments about the job sequence in [Comment]. This may be up to 256 characters long.

For [If error occurs], if an error occurs while an item in the job sequence is being performed, set whether or not to continue with unfinished items before ending a job.

- If [Proceed to next Job Item] is selected
If an error occurs while an item in the job sequence is being performed, job processing proceeds to the next item in the sequence and completes all unfinished items before ending a job.
- If [Terminate the Job] is selected
If an error occurs while an item in the job sequence is being performed, job processing ends without completing any unfinished items.



The 'Job Details' form contains three input fields: 'Job Name', 'Comment', and 'If error occurs ...'. The 'If error occurs ...' field has two radio button options: 'Proceed to next Job Item' and 'Terminate the Job'.

4. Select the [▶] button to the left of [Scan Settings].

Set the desired scan options, such as Carrier Sheet, color mode, and paper size.

For details about setting values, refer to ["6.8 Setting the Scan Options" \(page 304\)](#).



The 'Scan Settings' form is organized into several sections: Basic, Save, Quality, and Advanced. The 'Basic' section includes settings for Carrier Sheet, Color Mode, Paper Size, Resolution, and Scan Mode. The 'Save' section includes File Format, Searchable PDF, Require PDF Password, and Compression. The 'Quality' section includes Brightness, Contrast, Sharpness, Dropout Color, and Background Removal. The 'Advanced' section includes Blank Page Skip, Page Orientation, Multifeed Setup, and Edge Cropping. Each section contains various options, including radio buttons, dropdown menus, and input fields.

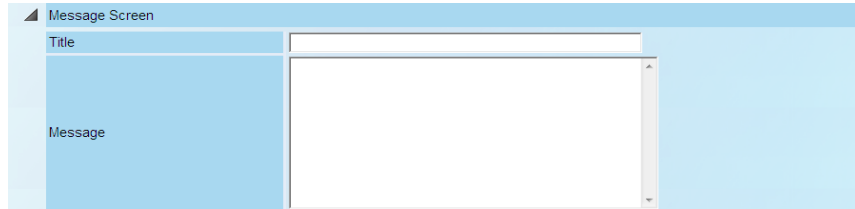
5. Select the [▶] button to the left of [Message Screen] to set whether or not to display the actual "Message Screen".


For details about the "Message Screen" screen, refer to ["6.13.1 Enabling/Disabling the Message Screen" \(page 352\)](#).


Enter a title and message text for the message shown on the "Message Screen".

"Title" may be up to 24 characters long.

"Message" may be up to 256 characters long.



ATTENTION  The layout of the message displayed in the message screen settings, and the actual "Message Screen" layout in the scanner may differ. Check the layout in the scanner and then enter the title and message in the "Message Screen".

- HINT** 
- Whether or not the title and message set in "Message Screen" are shown depends on whether the [Message Screen] button on the "Job Menu" screen is [On] or [Off].
 - If a title or message is not set in "Message Screen", even if the [Message Screen] button on the "Job Menu" is set to [On], the actual "Message Screen" is not displayed.

6. Set a job item.

Select the list button under [Job Items] to select one of following items:

- e-Mail
- Fax
- Print
- Save

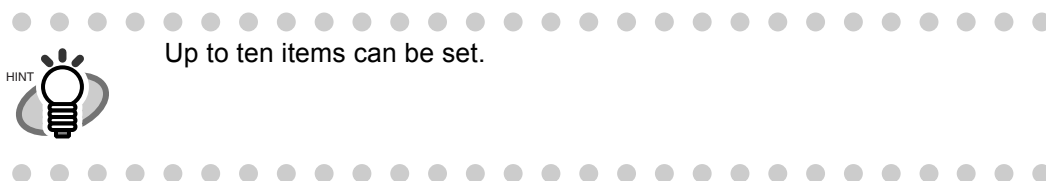
When the [Delete this Item] button is clicked, a confirmation window appears. Click the [OK] button to delete the item.

When the [Insert New Item] button is selected, the item selected in the list of items is inserted before the current item.



Job Items

1 [dropdown] [Delete This Item] [Insert New Item]

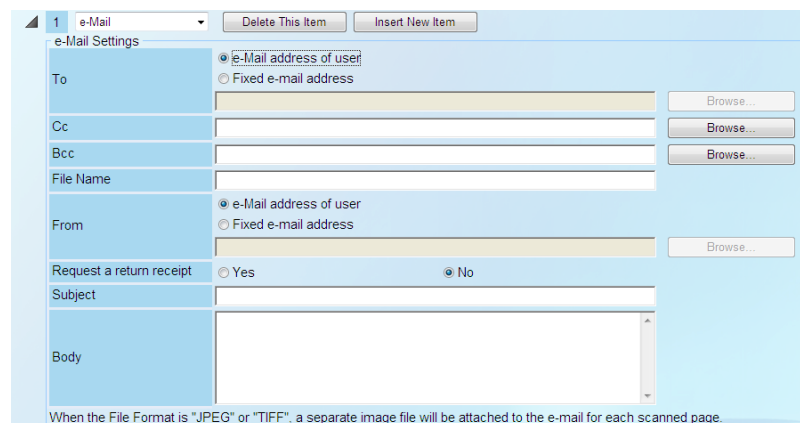


7. If [e-Mail] is selected for the job item in [Step 6](#), perform settings related to sending e-mail.

For details about setting values, refer to ["6.4 Sending the Scanned Data by e-Mail" \(page 265\)](#).

If the [e-Mail address of user] option button is selected for [To] and/or [From], when a job is processed, the e-mail address of the logged in user is specified. However, in the following cases, an error will occur during the job process.

- If the currently logged in user does not have an e-mail address
- If the currently logged in user is using the guest account



1 e-Mail [Delete This Item] [Insert New Item]

e-Mail Settings

☒ e-Mail address of user
☐ Fixed e-mail address

To [text field] [Browse...]

Cc [text field] [Browse...]

Bcc [text field] [Browse...]

File Name [text field]

☒ e-Mail address of user
☐ Fixed e-mail address

From [text field] [Browse...]

Request a return receipt ☐ Yes ☒ No

Subject [text field]

Body [text area]

When the File Format is "JPEG" or "TIFF", a separate image file will be attached to the e-mail for each scanned page.



Select the [Browse] button to set a different e-mail address from the "LDAP List" window.

Settings entered in the following screen are shown.

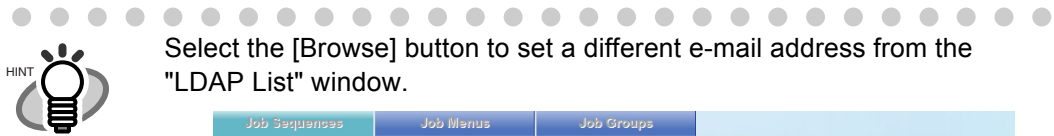
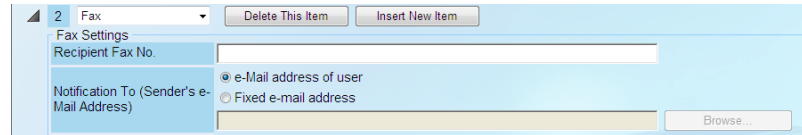
- For Admin Tool
"e-Mail LDAP Server" screen
- For Central Admin Console
"LDAP Server" section on the "Central Admin Server Settings" screen

However, whether or not SSL is used, depends on each LDAP server settings.

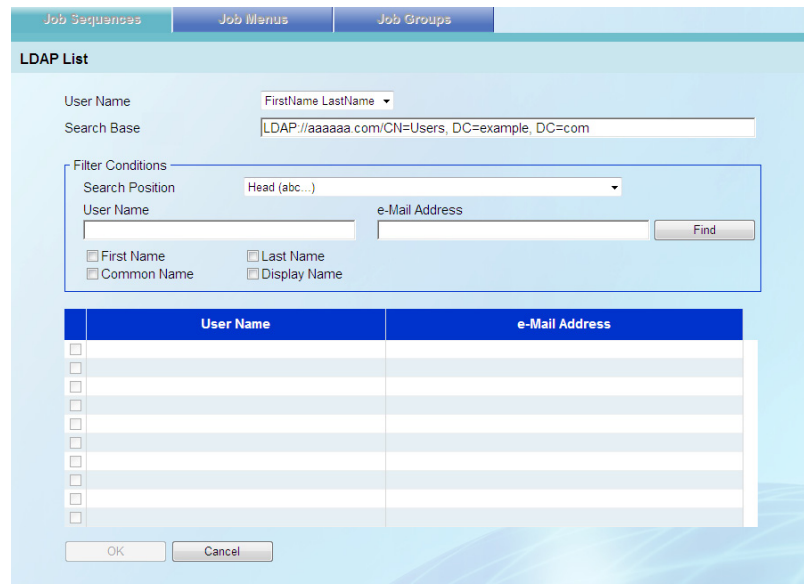
For more details about how to filter the LDAP List, refer to ["Filtering the LDAP List" \(page 173\)](#).

8. If [Fax] is selected for the job item in [Step 6](#), perform settings related to sending a fax. For details about setting values, refer to ["6.5 Sending the Scanned Data by Fax" \(page 277\)](#). If the [e-Mail address of user] option button is selected for "Notification To (Sender's e-Mail Address)", the e-mail address of the logged in user is used when a job sequence is performed. However, in the following cases, an error will occur when a job sequence is performed.

- If the currently logged in user does not have an e-mail address
- If logged in with the guest account



Select the [Browse] button to set a different e-mail address from the "LDAP List" window.



Settings entered in the following screen are shown.

- For Admin Tool
"e-Mail LDAP Server" screen
 - For Central Admin Console
"LDAP Server" section on the "Central Admin Server Settings" screen
- However, whether or not SSL is used, depends on each LDAP server settings.
- For more details about how to filter the LDAP List, refer to ["Filtering the LDAP List" \(page 173\)](#).

9. If [Print] is selected for the job item in [Step 6](#), perform settings related to printing.
For details about setting values, refer to ["6.6 Printing the Scanned Data" \(page 286\)](#).



Select the [Browse] button to set the network printer from the "Printer List" window.

Printer Alias▲	Network Path
FUJITSUX.2(Black&White)	\\DOMAIN01\\SERVER\\FUJITSUX.2(Black&White)
FUJITSUX.2(Duplex A4)	\\DOMAIN01\\SERVER\\FUJITSUX.2(Duplex A4)
FUJITSUX.2(RGB Color)	\\DOMAIN01\\SERVER\\FUJITSUX.2(RGB Color)
Printer01	\\DOMAIN01\\SERVER\\FUJITSUX2
Printer02	\\DOMAIN01\\SERVER\\FUJITSUX

10. If [Save] is selected for the job item in [Step 6](#), perform settings related to saving.
For details about setting values, refer to ["6.7 Saving the Scanned Data to a Network Folder" \(page 299\)](#).



- Select the [Browse] button to set the network folder from the "Folder List" window.

Folder Alias	Network Path
Folder01	\\DOMAIN0\\SERVER\\Folder01
Folder02	\\DOMAIN0\\SERVER\\Folder
Folder03	\\DOMAIN0\\SERVER\\Catalog
Folder04	\\DOMAIN0\\SERVER\\Letter
Folder05	\\DOMAIN0\\SERVER\\Photo

- Select the [Name Format] button to set the file name from the "File Names" window.

[Scanner Name]MMddyyyyhhmmss001 Preview

Sub-folders

Create sub-folders as necessary, using the following naming elements

☐ User Name

☐ Date

Name Format

Save data, using the following naming elements

☐ Prefix

☒ Scanner Name

☐ User Name

☒ Date

☒ Time

☒ Sequence Number Minimum digits 3

Common Formatting

Date Format MMddyyyy

Delimiter None

OK Cancel

For more details about settings values, refer to ["4.6.9 Setting a File Name Format" \(page 67\)](#).

11. Select the [OK] button.

⇒ A job sequence is added to the "Jobs List" window.

■ Cloning a job sequence

This section describes how to clone a job sequence.

1. Select the [Job Sequences] tab.
⇒ The "Jobs List" window appears.
2. Select the job sequence to be cloned.
3. Select the [Clone] button.
⇒ The "Job Details" window appears.
4. Clone the detailed job sequence settings.
5. Select the [OK] button.
⇒ A job sequence is added to the "Jobs List" window.

■ Editing a job sequence

This section describes how to edit a job sequence.

1. Select the [Job Sequences] tab.
⇒ The "Jobs List" window appears.
2. Select the job sequence to be edited.
3. Select the [Edit] button.
⇒ The "Job Details" window appears.
4. Edit the detailed job sequence settings.
5. Select the [OK] button.
⇒ The settings of the job sequence are changed.

■ Deleting a job sequence

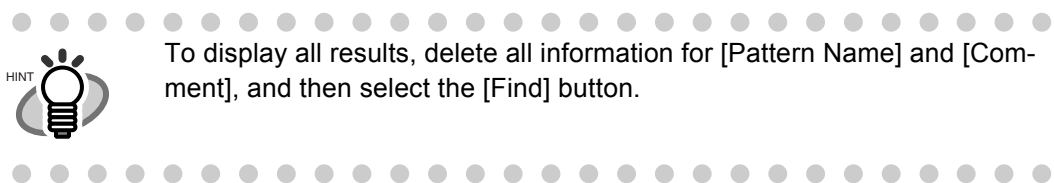
This section describes how to delete a job sequence.

1. Select the [Job Sequences] tab.
⇒ The "Jobs List" window appears.
2. Select the job sequence to be deleted.
3. Select the [Delete] button.
⇒ The confirmation window appears.
4. Select the [OK] button.
⇒ The job sequence is deleted.

■ Filtering job sequences

This section describes how to filter job sequences.

1. Select the [Job Sequences] tab.
⇒ The "Jobs List" window appears.
2. Enter [Job Name] and [Comment].
Enter either a part of or full [Job Name] and [Comment] for the job sequence(s) to be filtered.
"Job Name" may be up to 64 characters long.
"Comment" may be up to 256 characters long.
3. Select the [Find] button.
⇒ The filtered results appear.



■ Filtering the LDAP List

This section describes how to filter the LDAP List on the "LDAP List" window.

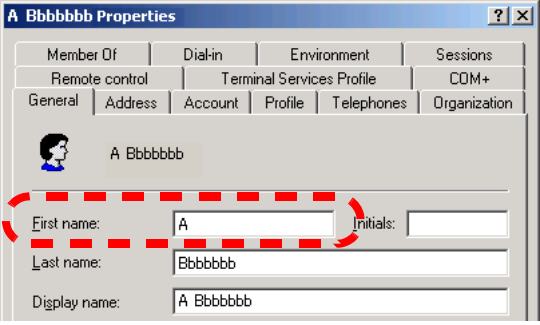
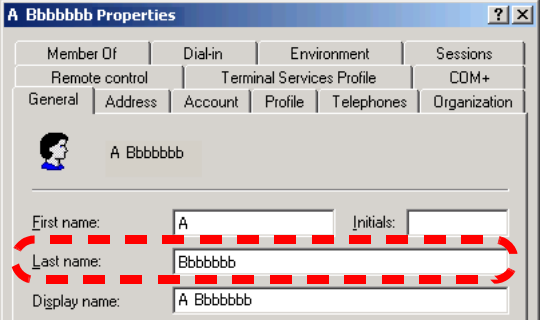
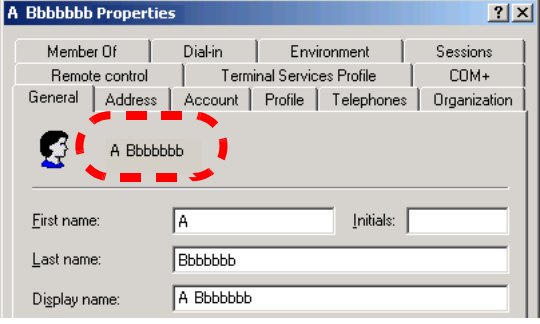
1. In the [User Name] drop-down list box, select the display format for the user names shown on the user name/e-mail address list.
2. Enter the LDAP server and character string to be used for LDAP searches in the "Search Base" field.
The LDAP entries under the character string entered here will become the search target.
This may be up to 520 characters long.
3. In the [Search Position] drop-down list box, select the filtering method.
The default setting is [Head (abc...)].

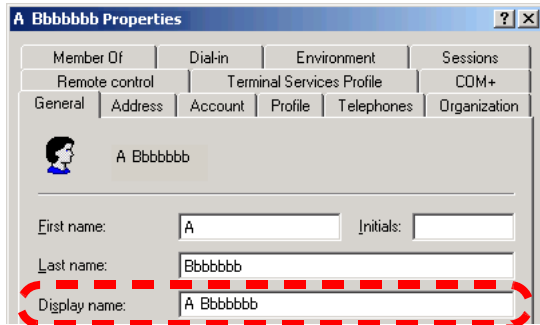
Search Position	Description	Example Target	Search Result
Head (abc...)	Filtered by words that start with the character string entered in Step 4 .	abc	abc, abc1, abcd, ...
Anywhere (...abc...)	Filtered by words that include the character string entered in Step 4 .	abc	abc, abc1, xabc, xabcy, ...
Tail (...abc)	Filtered by words that end with the character string entered in Step 4 .	abc	abc, 1abc, xabc, ...

4. Enter the filter character string.
Enter the user name and e-mail address to be filtered, in whole or in part.
Up to 256 characters may be entered for both user names and e-mail addresses.
If both a user name and e-mail address is entered, data containing either of them are searched as "AND Search".


5. Select the filter target.

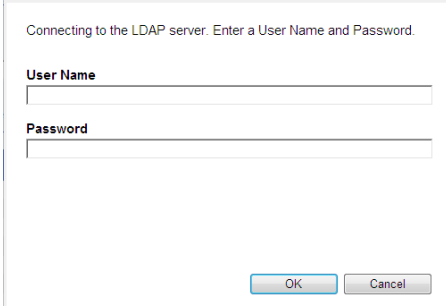
If multiple items are selected, data containing any of the search words are searched as "OR Search".

Checkbox name	Filter target in the Active Directory
First Name	<p>Filters the first names of users registered in the LDAP server.</p> 
Last Name	<p>Filters the last names of users registered in the LDAP server.</p> 
Common Name	<p>Filters the common names of users registered in the LDAP server.</p>  <p>This item can be set in [Active Directory Users and Computers].</p>

Checkbox name	Filter target in the Active Directory
Display Name	<p>Filters the display names of users registered in the LDAP server.</p> 

6. Select the [Find] button.
⇒ The filtered results appear.

- HINT** 
- If the [Find] button is selected, an authentication screen appears. Perform the following procedure for authentication.
 - Enter a user name and password.
User names may be up to 129 characters long.
Passwords may be up to 256 characters long.



- Select the [OK] button.
- To display all results, delete all filter strings and then select the [Find] button.

Admin Tool Central Admin

Up to 100 job menus may be set.

This section describes how to add a job menu.

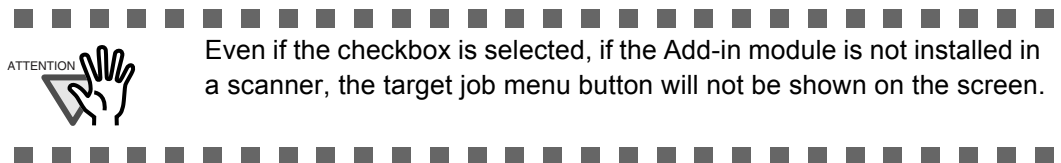
- [illegible]

- [illegible]

3. Enter the job menu name.
This may be up to 64 characters long.
4. Select the job button position, and select the [Edit] button.
⇒ The "Job Button Settings" window appears.

Job Name	Comment	Last Modified
Job1	Job1	9:43:17 AM
Job2	Job2	9:46:33 AM
Job3	Job3	9:47:09 AM
Job4	Job4	9:47:23 AM
Job5	Job5	9:47:36 AM
Job6	Job6	9:47:48 AM

5. Enter the job button name.
This may be up to 32 characters long.
6. In the [Job Button Pixmap] drop-down list box, select the job button pixmap.
When Job button image is selected, a job button pixmap appears in the right side of the [Job Button Color] drop-down list box, allowing to check the display image of the button while making a selection.
7. Set whether to start up the Add-in module.
To start up the Add-in module when the job button is selected, select the [Use button to start Add-in module] checkbox.
If this checkbox is selected, the Add-in module is assigned to the job button, rather than the job sequence. The "Job Button Name" and "Job Button Pixmap" are ignored. The button specified by the Add-in module appears in the Job Menu.



8. Select a job from the list.



To filter jobs, enter part of a "Job Name" and "Comment", or select all, and press the [Find] button.

"Job Name" may be up to 64 characters long.

"Comment" may be up to 256 characters long.

To clear all filtered results, delete the entered "Job Name" and "Comment", and press the [Find] button.

9. Select the [OK] button.

⇒ A job button is set on the "Job Menu Layout" area.

10. Repeat [Step 4](#) through [Step 9](#) as required for the number of job buttons.

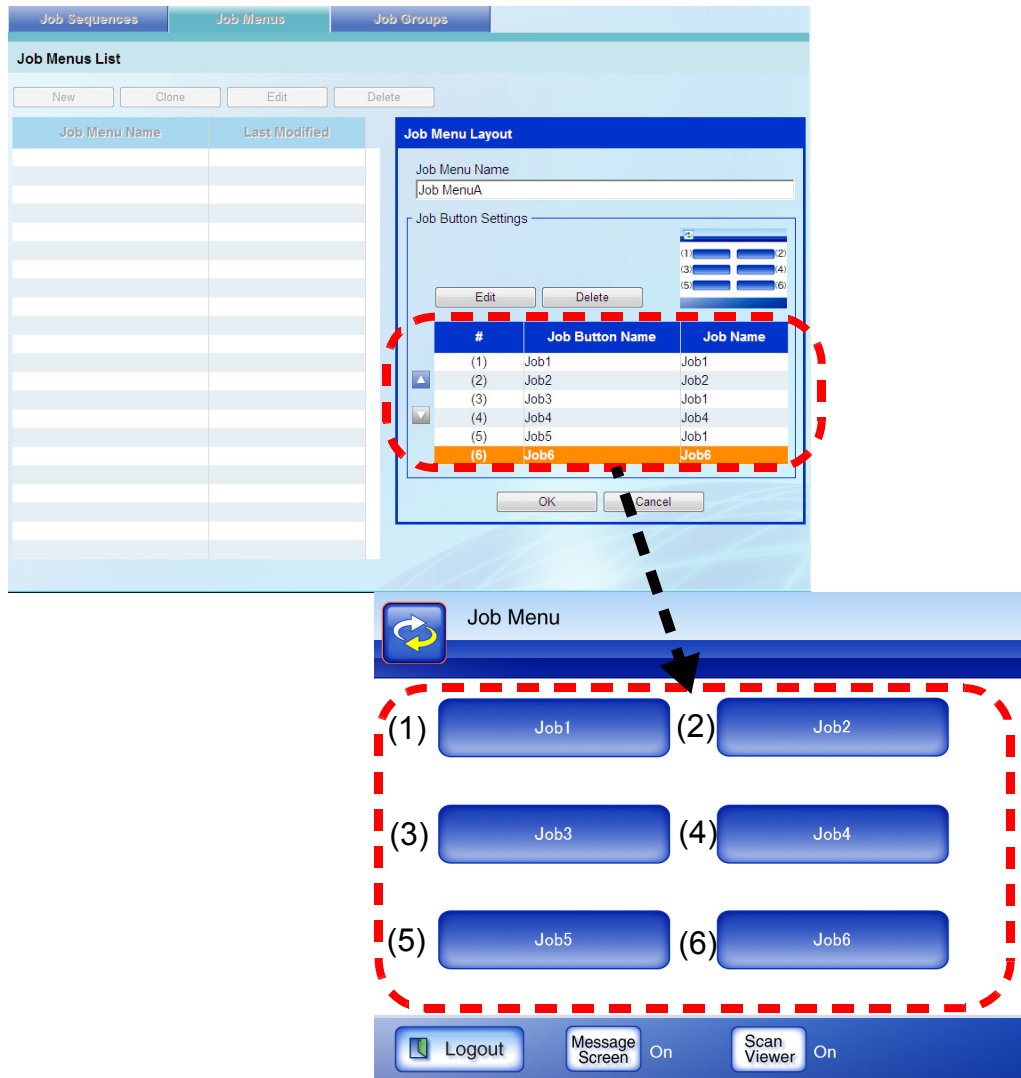


- Up to six job buttons can be set.
- To delete a job button, select the job button that you want to delete and press the [Delete] button.

11. Change the position of the job buttons as necessary.

Select the job button to move, and then select either the [Up] button or the [Down] button to move it.

The relationship between the order of job buttons on the "Job Menu Layout" area and the arrangement of buttons on the "Job Menu" is shown below.



12. Select the [OK] button.

⇒ A job menu is added to the "Job Menus List" window.

■ Cloning a job menu

This section describes how to clone a job menu.

1. Select the [Job Menus] tab.
⇒ The "Job Menus List" window appears.
2. Select the job menu to be cloned.
3. Select the [Clone] button.
⇒ The "Job Menu Layout" area becomes active.
4. Clone the detailed job menu settings.
5. Select the [OK] button.
⇒ A job menu is added to the "Job Menus List" window.

■ Editing a job menu

This section describes how to edit a job menu.

1. Select the [Job Menus] tab.
⇒ The "Job Menus List" window appears.
2. Select the job menu to be edited.
3. Select the [Edit] button.
⇒ The "Job Menu Layout" area becomes active.
4. Edit the detailed job menu settings.
5. Select the [OK] button.
⇒ The details of the job menu are changed.

■ Deleting a job menu

This section describes how to delete a job menu.

1. Select the [Job Menus] tab.
⇒ The "Job Menus List" window appears.
2. Select the job menu to be deleted.
3. Select the [Delete] button.
⇒ The confirmation window appears.
4. Select the [OK] button.
⇒ The job menu is deleted.

■ Viewing the detailed settings for a job menu

This section describes how to view the detailed settings for a job menu.

1. Select the [Job Menus] tab.
⇒ The "Job Menus List" window appears.
2. Select the job menu to view.
⇒ The details for the selected job menu appears in the "Job Menu Layout" area.



The information for the selected job menu shown in the "Job Menu Layout" area cannot be edited. To edit this information, select the [Edit] button.



4.11.4 Setting a Job Group

Admin
Tool

Central
Admin

Assign the job menu set in ["4.11.3 Setting a Job Menu" \(page 176\)](#) to a job group. Users included in a group can use the job menus assigned to the group.
Up to 100 job groups may be set.

■ Adding a job group

This section describes how to add a job group.

1. Select the [Job Groups] tab.

⇒ The "Job Groups List" window appears.

Job Group Name	Last Modified
Default Group	7:20:01 PM

Settings For Selected Group(s)

Job Group Name: Default Group

Assign the following Job Menu: [Select...]

Modes Available To User

☒ Both Job & Multi-Function
☐ Job Only
Initial Post-Login Menu: ☒ Multi-Function Menu ☐ Job Menu

Group Member Settings

Number of Members: -- [Edit]

[OK] [Cancel]

2. Select the [New] button.

⇒ The "Settings For Selected Group(s)" area become active.

Job Group Name	Last Modified
Default Group	7:20:01 PM

Settings For Selected Group(s)

Job Group Name: []

Assign the following Job Menu: [Select...]

Modes Available To User

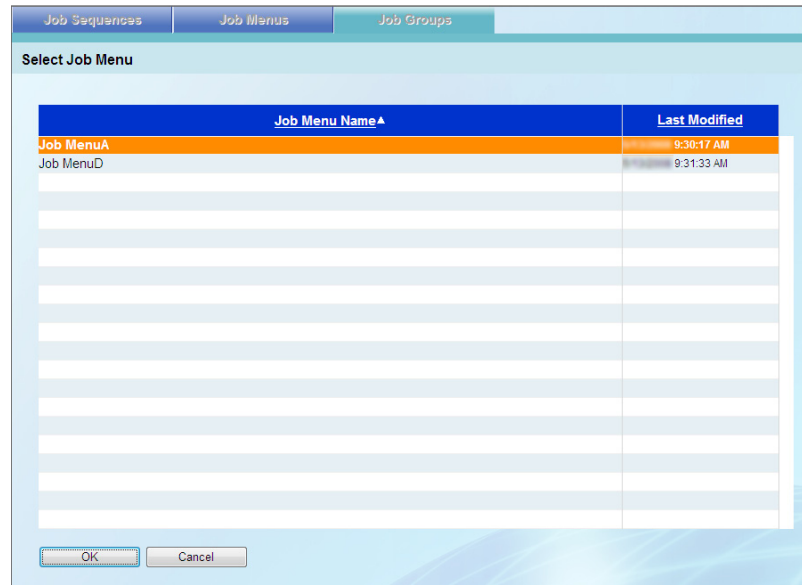
☒ Both Job & Multi-Function
☐ Job Only
Initial Post-Login Menu: ☒ Multi-Function Menu ☐ Job Menu

Group Member Settings

Number of Members: 0 [Edit]

[OK] [Cancel]

3. Enter the job group name.
This may be up to 64 characters long.
4. Select the [Select] button.
⇒ The "Select Job Menu" window appears.



5. Select a job menu.
6. Select the [OK] button.
⇒ A job menu is set on the "Settings For Selected Group(s)" area.
7. Set the whether or not to show the Multi-Function Main Menu after login.
 - If [Both Job & Multi-Function] is selected
The menu to appear first after a regular user login can be set on the "Initial Post-Login Menu".
 - If the [Multi-Function Menu] option button is selected
The Multi-Function Main Menu appears first after a regular user login.
 - If the [Job Menu] option button is selected
The Job Menu appears first after a regular user login.
 The user can use both the Multi-Function Main Menu (refer to ["3.2 Required Scanner Function Settings" \(page29\)](#)) and Job Menu (refer to ["4.11.3 Setting a Job Menu" \(page176\)](#)) by pressing the "Menu Mode" button.
 - If [Job Only] is selected
The Multi-function Main Menu is not shown. The Job Menu always appears after a regular user login.
The user cannot switch between the Multi-Function Main Menu and Job Menu by pressing the "Menu Mode" button.

8. Select the [Edit] button.

⇒ The "Group Member Settings" window appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Group Member Settings' window. At the top, there are tabs for 'Job Sequences', 'Job Menus', and 'Job Groups'. The 'Group Member Settings' section is active. It contains a 'Login User Name Format' section with two radio buttons: 'User Principal Name' (selected) and 'SAM Account Name'. Below this is a 'Search Base' text field containing 'LDAP://aaaaaa.com/CN=Users, DC=example, DC=com'. There are two main lists: 'Group Membership List' and 'LDAP List'. Each list has a 'Filter Conditions' section with a 'Find' button. The 'Group Membership List' has columns for 'Login User Name' and 'Domain Name'. The 'LDAP List' also has columns for 'Login User Name' and 'Domain Name'. Both lists have 'Select All' and 'Deselect All' buttons. At the bottom of the window are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

9. Set the login user name format.

- If [User Principal Name] is selected
The user principal name appears as the user name in the Group Membership List and the LDAP list.
- If [SAM Account Name] is selected
The SAM account name appears as the user name in the Group Membership List and the LDAP list.

10. Enter the LDAP server and character string to be used for LDAP searches in the "Search Base" field.

The LDAP entries under the character string entered here will become the search target.

This may be up to 520 characters long.

Settings entered in the following screen are shown.

- For Admin Tool
"Login LDAP Server" screen
- For Central Admin Console
"LDAP Server" section on the "Central Admin Server Settings" screen

However, whether or not SSL is used, depends on each LDAP server settings.

11. Select a user name checkbox to be added to a job group from the "LDAP List".



- To view detailed information about a logged in user, select the "Login User Name" or "Domain Name" link.

User Details	
User Principal Name	user@domain0.com
SAM Account Name	user
Job Group Name	
Search Base	LDAP://10.200.100.1/CN=users,CN=Users,DC=domain0,DC=com

User Details	
Common Name	user
First Name	
Initials	
Last Name	user
Display Name	user
Comment	
Workplace	
Phone Number	
E-mail Address	ZABC@example.com
Homepage	


OK

- To select the checkboxes for all users, press the [Select All] button. To clear the checkboxes for all users, press the [Deselect All] button.
- To filter the LDAP List, refer to ["Filtering the LDAP List" \(page 190\)](#) for more details.

12. Select the [<<<] button.

⇒ The user is added to the in the Group Membership List.

Users added to the Group Membership List are grayed on the LDAP list.



- Up to 1,000 users can be registered as a job group member.
- To delete a user registered in the Group Membership List, Select the checkbox for the user to be deleted, and then select the [>>>] button. Users deleted from the Group Membership List are returned to the LDAP List.
- To filter job group members, enter the login user name and domain name, in part or in full, and then select the [Find] button.
If "User Principle Name" is selected for the user name format, the login user name may be up to 768 characters long.
If "SAM Account Name" is selected for the user name format, the login user name may be up to 20 characters long.
"Domain Name" may be up to 256 characters long.
To display all results, clear both "Login User Name" and "Domain Name" fields under the Filter Conditions, and then select the [Find] button.

13. Select the [OK] button.

⇒ The number of users registered as job group members is shown in "Number of Members" on the "Settings For Selected Group(s)" screen.

14. Select the [OK] button.

⇒ A job group is added to the "Job Groups List" window.

■ Editing a job group

This section describes how to edit a job group.

1. Select the [Job Groups] tab.
⇒ The "Job Groups List" window appears.
2. Select the checkbox for the job group to be edited.
3. Select the [Edit] button.
⇒ The "Settings For Selected Group(s)" input fields become active.
4. Change the detailed job group settings.
5. Select the [OK] button.
⇒ The details of the job group are changed.

■ Deleting a job group

This section describes how to delete a job group.

1. Select the [Job Groups] tab.
⇒ The "Job Groups List" window appears.
2. Select the job group to be deleted.
3. Select the [Delete] button.
⇒ The confirmation window appears.
4. Select the [OK] button.
⇒ The job group is deleted

■ Viewing the detailed settings for a job group

This section describes how to view the detailed settings for a job group.

1. Select the [Job Groups] tab.

⇒ The "Job Groups List" window appears.

2. Select the job group to view.

⇒ The details for the selected job menu appears in the "Settings For Selected Group(s)" area.



The information for the selected job group shown on the "Settings For Selected Group(s)" screen cannot be edited. To edit this information, select the [Edit] button.



■ Assigning job menus to users not included in a job group

Users who are not included in any job group automatically belong to a Default Group. This section describes how to assign job menus to those users.

1. Select the [Job Groups] tab.

⇒ The "Job Groups List" window appears.

2. Select the "Default Group" option button.

3. Press the [Edit] button.

⇒ The "Settings For Selected Group(s)" area becomes active.

The screenshot shows the 'Job Groups List' window. It has a table with two columns: 'Job Group Name' and 'Last Modified'. The first row is 'Default Group' with a timestamp of '7:20:01 PM'. To the right of the table is a 'Settings For Selected Group(s)' panel. This panel contains a 'Job Group Name' field, an 'Assign the following Job Menu' section with a 'Select...' button, a 'Modes Available To User' section with radio buttons for 'Both Job & Multi-Function' (selected), 'Job Only', and 'Initial Post-Login Menu' (with sub-options 'Multi-Function Menu' and 'Job Menu'), and a 'Group Member Settings' section with a 'Number of Members' field set to 0 and an 'Edit' button. At the bottom of the settings panel are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

4. Select the [Select] button.

⇒ The "Select Job Menu" window appears.

5. Select a job menu.

6. Select the [OK] button.

⇒ A job menu is set on the "Settings For Selected Group(s)" area.

7. Set whether or not to display the "Multi-Function Main Menu".

- If [Both Job & Multi-Function] is selected

The menu to appear first after a regular user login can be set on the "Initial Post-Login Menu".

- If the [Multi-Function Menu] option button is selected

The Multi-Function Main Menu appears first after a regular user login.

- If the [Job Menu] option button is selected

The Job Menu appears first after a regular user login.

The user can use both the Multi-Function Main Menu (refer to ["3.2 Required Scanner Function Settings" \(page29\)](#)) and Job Menu (refer to ["4.11.3 Setting a Job Menu" \(page176\)](#)) by pressing the "Menu Mode" button.

- If [Job Only] is selected

The Multi-function Main Menu is not shown. The Job Menu always appears after a regular user login.

The user cannot switch between the Multi-Function Main Menu and Job Menu by pressing the "Menu Mode" button.

8. Select the [OK] button.

⇒ A job menu is assigned to users who are not included in a job group.

■ Filtering the LDAP List

This section describes how to filter the LDAP List on the "Job Group Member Settings" screen.

1. In the [Search Position] drop-down list box on the "LDAP List" window, select the filtering method.

The default setting is [Head (abc...)].

Search Position	Description	Example Target	Search Result
Head (abc...)	Filtered by words that start with the character string entered in Step 2 .	abc	abc, abc1, abcd, ...
Anywhere (...abc...)	Filtered by words that include the character string entered in Step 2 .	abc	abc, abc1, xabc, xabcy, ...
Tail (...abc)	Filtered by words that end with the character string entered in Step 2 .	abc	abc, 1abc, xabc, ...

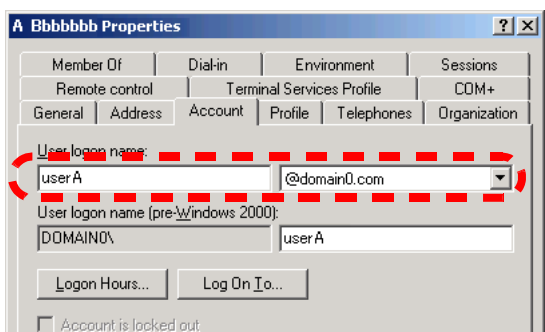
2. Enter the filter character string.

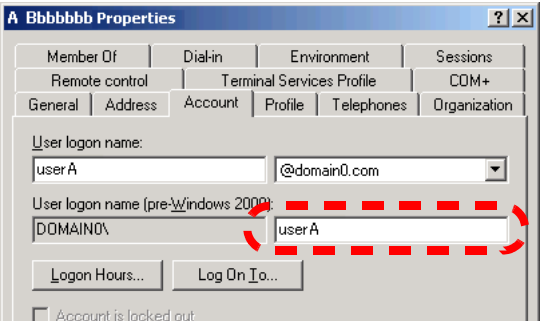
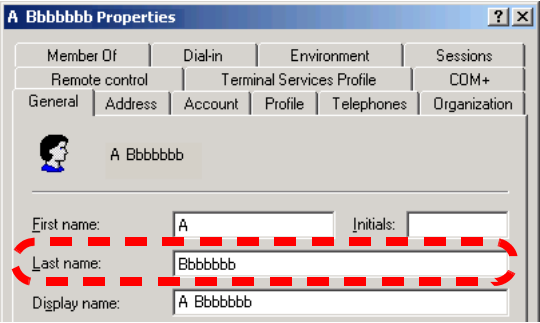
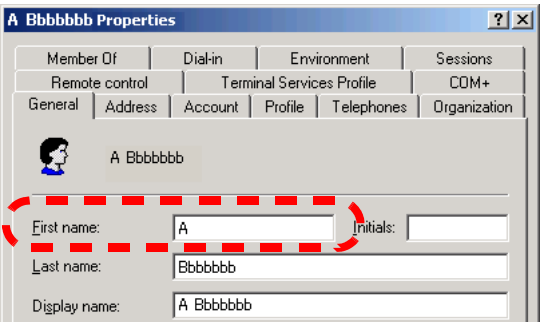
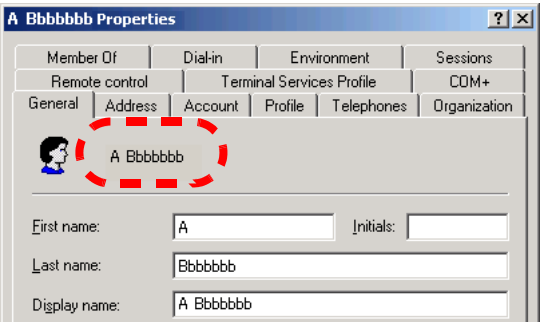
Enter the filter target, in whole or in part.

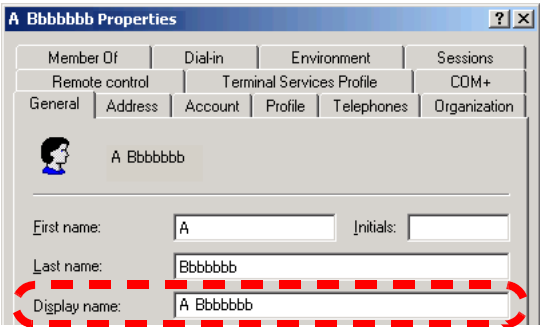
This may be up to 256 characters long.

3. Select the filter target.

If multiple items are selected, data containing any of the search words are searched as "OR Search".

Checkbox name	Filter target in the Active Directory
User Principal Name	<p>Filters the user principal names registered in the LDAP server.</p> 

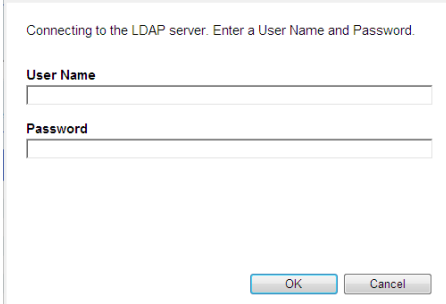
Checkbox name	Filter target in the Active Directory
SAM Account Name	<p>Filters the SAM account names of users registered in the LDAP server.</p> 
Last Name	<p>Filters the last names of users registered in the LDAP server.</p> 
First Name	<p>Filters the first names of users registered in the LDAP server.</p> 
Common Name	<p>Filters the common names of users registered in the LDAP server.</p>  <p>This item can be set in [Active Directory Users and Computers].</p>

Checkbox name	Filter target in the Active Directory
Display Name	<p>Filters the display names of users registered in the LDAP server.</p> 

4. Select the [Find] button.
⇒ The filtered results appear.



- If the [Find] button is selected, an authentication screen appears. Perform the following procedure for authentication.
 1. Enter a user name and password.
User names may be up to 129 characters long.
Passwords may be up to 256 characters long.



2. Select the [OK] button.
- To display all results, delete all filter strings and then select the [Find] button.



Chapter 5

Administrator Operations (Central Admin Console)

Admin

This chapter explains system setting and control of this scanner performed using the Central Admin Console.

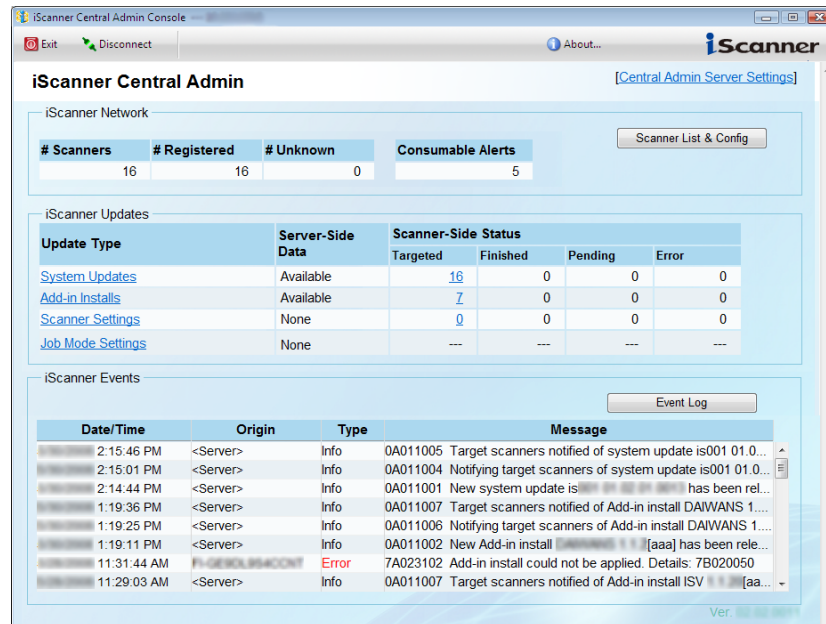
Messages may appear while performing operations described in this chapter. For more details about these messages and actions to take, refer to ["E.1.2 System Log Messages" \(page 449\)](#).


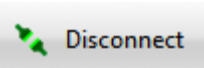
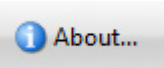
5.1 Using Central Admin Console Window.....	194
5.2 Central Admin Console Quick Guide	196
5.3 Pre-settings for Using Central Admin Console.....	198
5.4 Central Admin Server Login: via the Central Admin Console	207
5.5 Setting the Central Admin Server	215
5.6 Setting Scanner Configuration	220
5.7 Updating the System	228
5.8 Installing an Add-in.....	230
5.9 Updating the Scanner System Settings	232
5.10 Setting the Job Mode.....	236
5.11 Viewing Scanner-Side Status.....	239
5.12 Viewing Event Log	242
5.13 Maintaining Central Admin Settings	244

5.1 Using Central Admin Console Window

5.1.1 Buttons

This section describes the buttons displayed on the Central Admin Console window.



Button	Shown in manual as...	Used to ...
	[Exit] button	Exit the Central Admin Console.
	[Disconnect] button	Disconnect the connection to the Central Admin Server.
	[About] button	Show the version of the Central Admin Console.

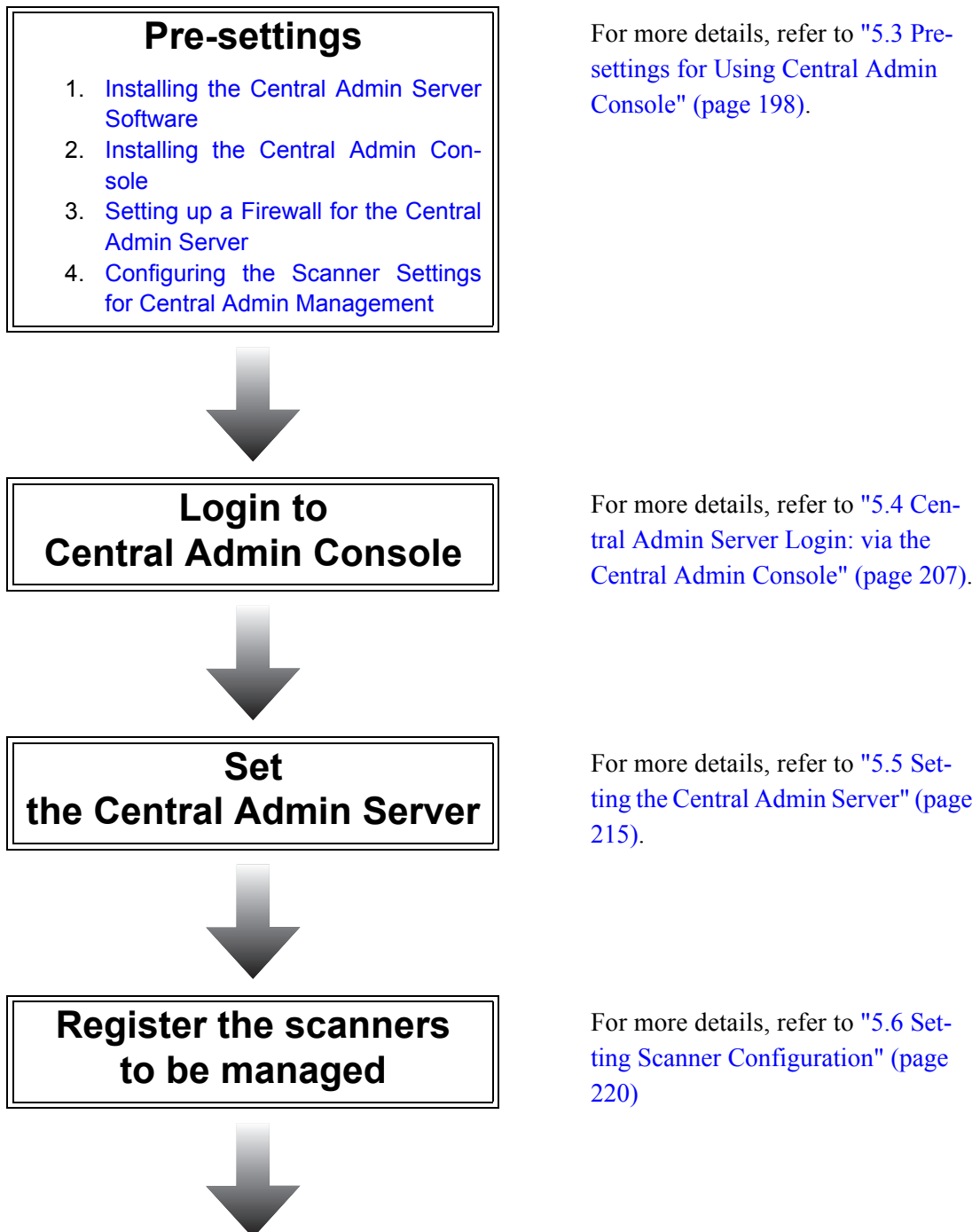
5.1.2 Input Fields and Entering Characters

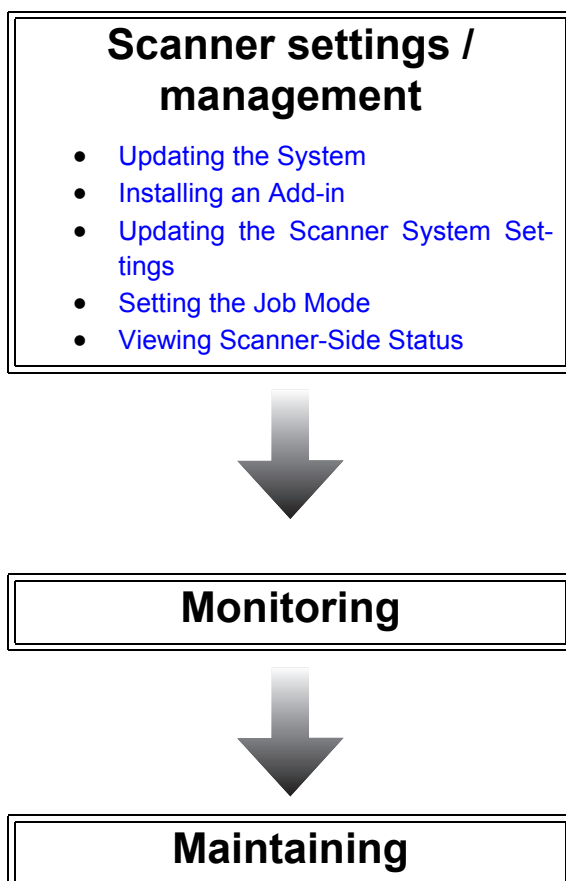
Only character strings for the following fields are case sensitive.

Screen	Field name	See...
Login	Password	page 207
Admin Password	Current Password New Password Confirm New Password	page 215
Edit Scanner Details	Scanner Name Settings Group Add-in Group	page 220
Authentication screen for setting a network printer	Password	page 232
Authentication screen for setting a network folder	Password	page 232
FTP Path for setting a network folder	Password	page 232

5.2 Central Admin Console Quick Guide

Administrator operations for management using the Central Admin Console are as follows.





- For more details, refer to "[5.7 Updating the System](#)" (page 228).
- For more details, refer to "[5.8 Installing an Add-in](#)" (page 230).
- For more details, refer to "[5.9 Updating the Scanner System Settings](#)" (page 232).
- For more details, refer to "[5.10 Setting the Job Mode](#)" (page 236).
- For more details, refer to "[5.11 Viewing Scanner-Side Status](#)" (page 239).

For more details, refer to "[5.12 Viewing Event Log](#)" (page 242).

For more details, refer to "[5.13 Maintaining Central Admin Settings](#)" (page 244).

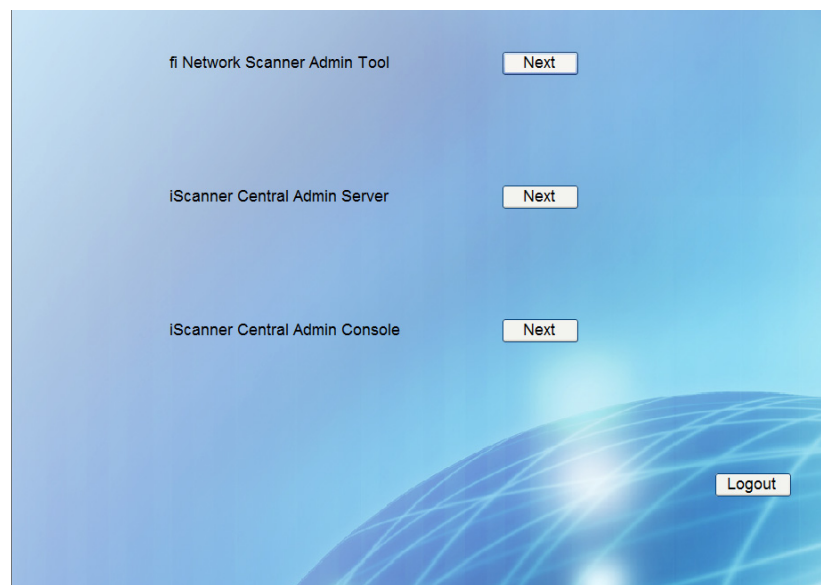
5.3 Pre-settings for Using Central Admin Console

This section explains the required pre-settings for using the Central Admin Console.

5.3.1 Installing the Central Admin Server Software

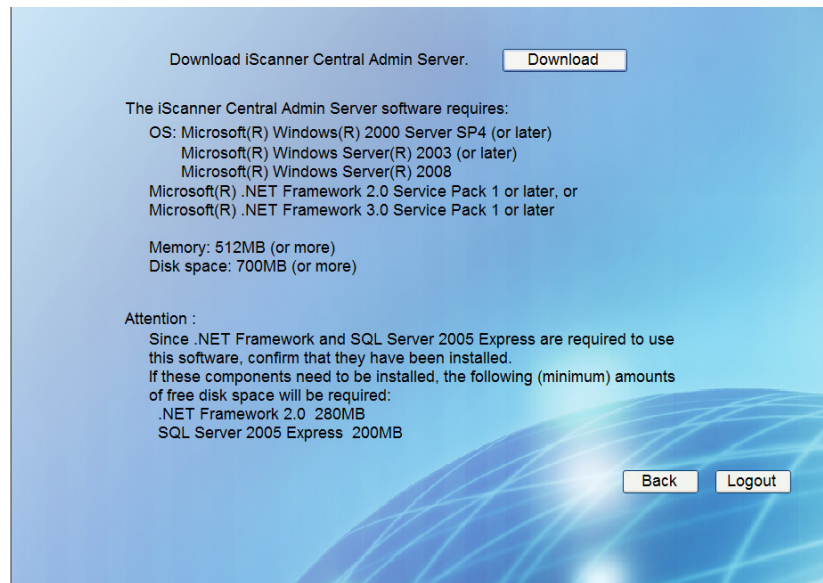
Install the Central Admin Server software in a personal computer.
The following describes the required settings for scanner.

1. Perform [Step 1](#) to [Step 3](#) of "Installing the Admin Tool" (page 42).
⇒ The download screen appears.
2. Press the [Next] button for the iScanner Central Admin Server.



⇒ The iScanner Central Admin Server download screen appears.

3. Press the [Download] button.



- Downloading is not possible while a scanner operation is in process.
- Do not close the Web browser or logout until installation is complete.
- The required 700MB of free disk includes 200MB which is required to install Microsoft® SQL Server™ 2005 Express Edition.

⇒ Follow the wizard instructions displayed on the window.

The following port number and protocol settings will be required. Enter the same port number and protocol settings as used for the pre-settings.

- Port number for scanner communication
- Port number for Central Admin Console communication

After installation, the port number and protocol settings can be changed on the Central Admin Console "Central Admin Server Settings" screen.

⇒ After installation is complete, restart the computer.



- If the Central Admin Server software is already installed, skip to ["5.3.2 Installing the Central Admin Console" \(page 202\)](#).
- Make sure that the Central Admin Server date and time values are set correctly. If the date/time difference between the values set in the server and actual values is large, normal operation may not be possible.
- After the Central Admin Server software is installed, a Windows user account (Account name: iSCentralAdmin) is added. This user is required for Central Admin, therefore, do not change or delete the account.



- For details of the operating environment when installing the Central Admin Server software, refer to "[1.4.3 Requirements for Central Admin Server](#)" (page 13).
- When installing the Central Admin Server software, the same necessary pre-settings before logging in with the Admin Tool are required. For more details, refer to "[4.4 Setting up for Administrator Access via the Admin Tool](#)" (page 39).
- To install the Central Admin Server software on Windows Server® 2008, login as an administrator. Do not install with Administrators group rights.
- If the following error message appears, installation was not successful.

An installation package for the product Microsoft SQL Server Native Client cannot be found. Try the installation agent using a valid copy of the installation package 'sqlncli.msi'.

In this case, uninstall "SQL Server Native Client". Then, try installing the Central Admin Server software again.

- If the installation process fails and the following error message appears, stop the IIS service and re-start manually. Then, re-install the Central Admin Server software.

The installation process was canceled because the system was busy. Try restarting the Installation Wizard again later.

- If the following error message appears in Windows Server® 2008, check that IIS Management Console is installed. If IIS Management Console is not installed, select and install IIS Management Console in "Role Services".

Installation requires that the IIS Management Console be installed.

Refer to the manual for details.

To select the role services for IIS, point to [Administrative Tools] - [Server Manager], select Web Server (IIS) in "Roles Summary".

- In order to use HTTPS for communication to a scanner, or personal computer installed with Central Admin Console software, a self-signed certificate is automatically imported on the Central Admin Server. However, it is recommended that a formal certificate is installed manually. For more details, refer to "[Importing the Certificate](#)" (page 201).
- If an interruption or error occurs during the installation or uninstallation process, the following software components may be installed.
 - AMMANAGER instance of Microsoft SQL Server 2005
 - Microsoft SQL Server Native Client
 - Microsoft SQL Server Setup Support Files
 - Microsoft SQL Server VSS Writer
 - MSXML 6.0 Parser

In this case, uninstall the software components described above.

For more details about uninstalling software components, the following is a description of the process using Windows Server® 2003 as an example.

To uninstall a software component, select [Control Panel] - [Add or Remove Programs].

To uninstall "Microsoft SQL Server 2005 AMMANAGER instance", point to "Add or Remove Programs", select "Microsoft SQL Server 2005" and press the [Remove] button. Select the "Remove SQL Server 2005 instance components" checkbox, select "AMMANAGER: Database Engine" under "Select all instance", and press the [Next] button. From here on after, follow the instructions on the wizard displayed on the screen. For programs other than "Microsoft SQL Server 2005 AMMANAGER instance", deletion is not necessary as they are used by other applications.

- If the following changes are to be made after the Central Admin Server software has been installed, uninstall the Central Admin Server software, and re-install after making the changes.
 - If the Central Admin Server is to be used as the Active Directory domain controller
 - If the domain controller role assignment is to be deleted

■ Importing the Certificate

This section uses Windows Server® 2003 as an example.

1. To startup IIS Manager, on the [Start] menu, point to [Administrative Tools], and select [Internet Information Services (IIS) Manager].
2. Show the web sites for importing the certificate.
Certificates are be imported to the following Web sites:
 - AmConsole
 - AmService
3. Right-click the Web site and select "Properties".
4. On the [Directory Security] tab, select "Server Certificate" in the "Secure communications" frame.
 - ⇒ The [Welcome to the Web Server Certificate Wizard] appears.
 - ⇒ Follow the wizard instructions displayed on the window.



For Windows Server® 2008, set the fingerprint for the imported certificate in the CertHash.xml file.

The CertHash.xml installation path is as follows.

```
Central_Admin_Server_installation_folder\AmManager\Sys\CertHash.xml
```

An example for setting the fingerprint for the certificate "cc ce a0 66 e3 9c 9b 2a 65 45 03 a3 c4 f4 e5 e6 ad ec df 9f" is as follows.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" ?>
<IISPolicy>
  <CertHash>cc ce a0 66 e3 9c 9b 2a 65 45 03 a3 c4 f4 e5 e6
ad ec df 9f</CertHash>
</IISPolicy>
```

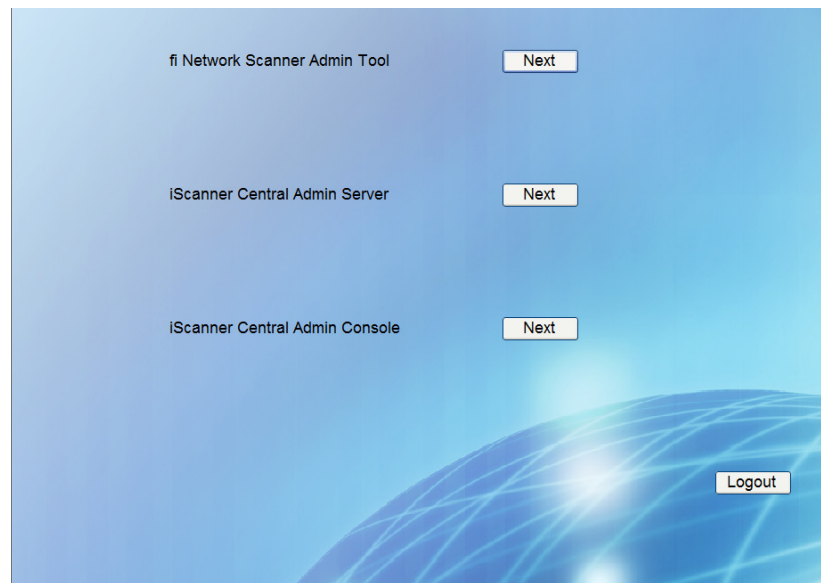
5.3.2 Installing the Central Admin Console

Install the Central Admin Console in a personal computer.

1. Perform [Step 1](#) to [Step 3](#) of "Installing the Admin Tool" (page 42).

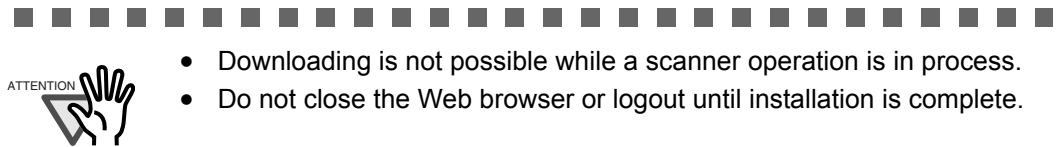
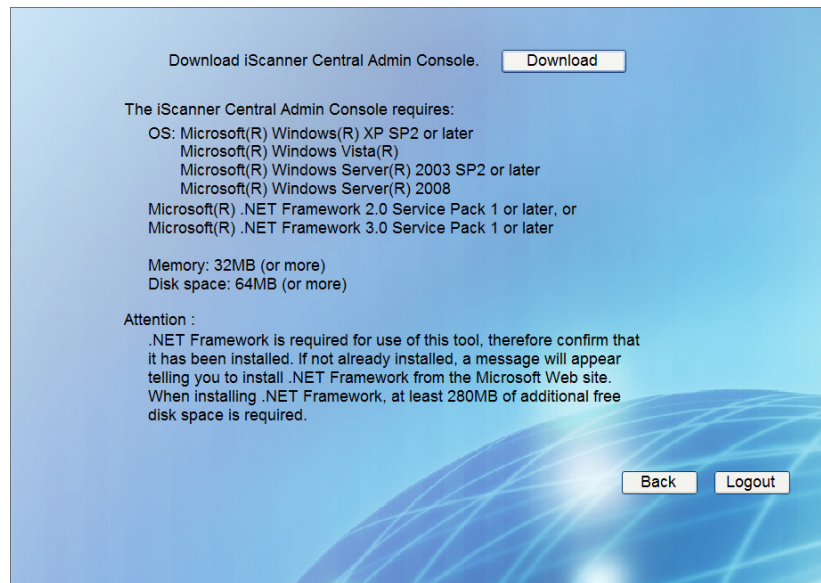
⇒ The download screen appears.

2. Press the [Next] button for the iScanner Central Admin Console.



⇒ The iScanner Central Admin Console download screen appears.

3. Press the [Download] button.



- Downloading is not possible while a scanner operation is in process.
- Do not close the Web browser or logout until installation is complete.

⇒ Follow the wizard instructions displayed on the window.

When "Installation complete" is displayed, the installation is complete. Press the [Close] button.

⇒ After installation is completed, log out from fi-6010N on the Web browser and close the Web browser.

⇒ After installation, the Central Admin Console can be started by selecting [Start] menu - [All Programs] - [iScanner Central Admin] - [iScanner Central Admin Console].



- The Admin Tool must be installed before installing the Central Admin Console. For more details about how to install the Admin Tool, refer to ["4.4.3 Installing the Admin Tool" \(page 42\)](#).
- If the Central Admin Console is already installed, skip to ["5.3.3 Setting up a Firewall for the Central Admin Server" \(page 205\)](#).
- From the Web browser [Tools] menu, select [Internet Options], and note the following points about the settings shown on the [Internet Options] dialogbox.
 - In the [Accessibility] dialog box shown when selecting the [Accessibility] button on the [General] tab, do not change the formatting and user style sheet settings. If these settings are changed, the displayed style of the Central Admin Console may be corrupted.
 - In the [Language Preference] dialog box shown when selecting the [Languages] button on the [General] tab, move the same language as for the Central Admin Server operation system to the top. If a different language is specified, a problem may occur with the input or displays for the Central Admin Console.
 - On the [Security] tab, if "Security level for this zone" is set to "High", part of the Admin Tool screen may not be correctly displayed. In this case, on the [Security] tab, add the scanner or Central Admin Server to the trusted site zone and select the [Default Level] button. Or select the [Custom Level] button and set [Binary and script behaviors] to "Enable".



- For details of the operating environment when installing the Central Admin Console, refer to ["1.4.2 Requirements for Central Admin Console" \(page 12\)](#).
- When installing the Central Admin Console, the same necessary pre-settings before logging in with the Admin Tool are required. For more details, refer to ["4.4 Setting up for Administrator Access via the Admin Tool" \(page 39\)](#).

5.3.3 Setting up a Firewall for the Central Admin Server

This section describes how firewall settings for the Central Admin Server.

Set the following port number for communication in the Central Admin Server, to enable management by the Central Admin Console.

From/To	Protocol	Port Number
Scanner ⇒ Central Admin Server	HTTP/ HTTPS (TCP)	Port number set for scanner communication.
Central Admin Console ⇒ Central Admin Server	HTTP/ HTTPS (TCP)	Port number set for Central Admin communication.

For details about setting a firewall, refer to the manual for the relevant firewall.

5.3.4 Configuring the Scanner Settings for Central Admin Management

This section describes the scanner settings environment.

The following settings for connecting a scanner to the Central Admin Server are required to enable management by the Central Admin Console.

- "Admin Network" screen from the "Network Settings" tab
For more details, refer to ["4.7.2 Setting the Admin Network" \(page 78\)](#).
- "Central Admin Server" screen from the "Network Settings" tab
For more details, refer to ["4.7.3 Setting a Central Admin Server" \(page 80\)](#).

5.3.5 Uninstalling the Central Admin Server Software/Console

This section describes how to uninstall the Central Admin Server Software/Console. Refer to this section if uninstallation is required.

■ Uninstalling the Central Admin Server Software

This section uses Windows Server® 2008 as an example.

Uninstall the Central Admin Server Software from [Control Panel] - [Add or Remove Programs] of the personal computer in which it is installed.



- Before starting uninstallation, disconnect the Central Admin Server from the network.
If the uninstallation process is completed while the Central Admin Server is connected to the network, normal operation cannot be guaranteed.
- All files in the installation folder are deleted when the Central Admin Server software is uninstalled. Back up the information related to Central Admin as required. For details, refer to ["5.13.1 Backing Up Central Admin Settings" \(page 244\)](#).
- If the following message appear while uninstalling Central Admin Server software, click "Retry". Even if the same message appears again, re-start the Central Admin Server, and uninstall it again.

Another application has exclusive access to the file ASPNETDB.MDF. Please shut down all other applications, then click Retry.



■ Uninstalling the Central Admin Console

This section uses Windows Vista® as an example.

Uninstall the Central Admin Console from [Control Panel] - [Add or Remove Programs] of the personal computer in which it is installed.



- Before starting uninstallation, close the Central Admin Console.
If the uninstallation process is completed while the Central Admin Console is in operation, normal operation cannot be guaranteed.
- Even if uninstalled, data will remain. Delete this data if it is not required.
For Windows® XP, data is saved in the following way.

```
C:\Documents and Settings\User_name  
  \Local Settings\Application Data\FUJITSU  
  \iScannerCentralAdminConsoxxx
```

The character string shown in italics is variable.

User_name can be the name of any Central Admin Console user.



5.4 Central Admin Server Login: via the Central Admin Console

Using the Central Admin Console allows an administrator to set multiple scanners via the network interface.

This section describes how to login from the Central Admin Console.



If the normal screen display does not appear (for example: an "X" mark appears), wait for a few minutes and try again. If the problem still occurs, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.



- The default user name and password for the administrator are set as follows:
User name: admin
Password: password
- Session timeout time is 20 minutes (fixed). Selecting links and buttons extends the session timeout time by 20 minutes. However, the session timeout time is extended automatically when the Central Admin Console main window is being opened, so as not to result in a session timeout.



1. Select [Start] menu - [All Programs] - [iScanner Central Admin] - [iScanner Central Admin Console].

⇒ The Central Admin Console starts.

2. Set the "Connect to" field.

Enter the Central Admin Server IP address, host name, or FQDN.



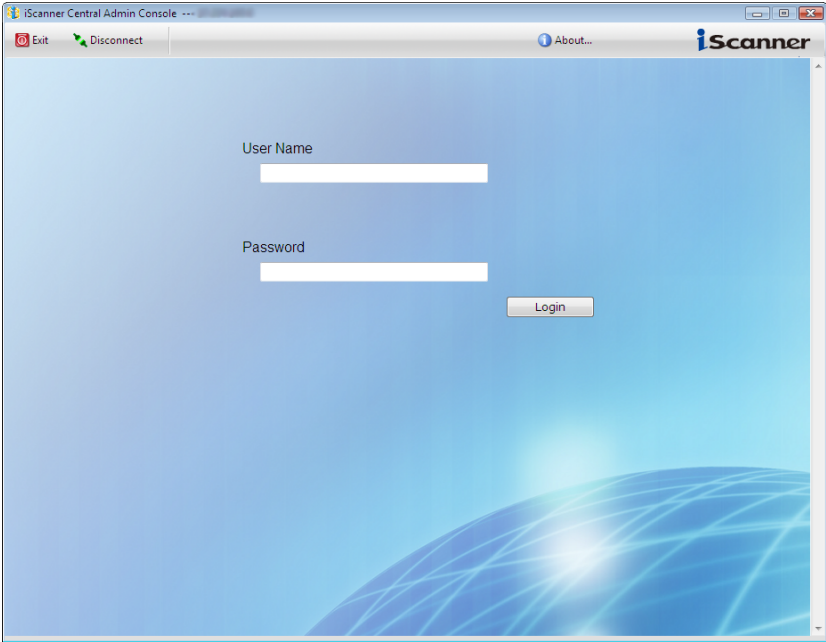
- If the port number was changed in ["5.5 Setting the Central Admin Server" \(page 215\)](#), enter the port number changed for Port Number.
- To use SSL, select the [Use HTTPS] checkbox.
- If Central Admin Console is started while there is insufficient free memory, a script error may occur. Try again after ensuring that there is enough free memory.
- For Windows Server® 2003 and Windows Server® 2008, when first connecting to the Central Admin Server, a confirmation screen for whether or not to add the specified URL to the trusted site zone may appear. In this case, after adding the Central Admin Server URL as a trusted site, close the Central Admin Console once, and re-open.



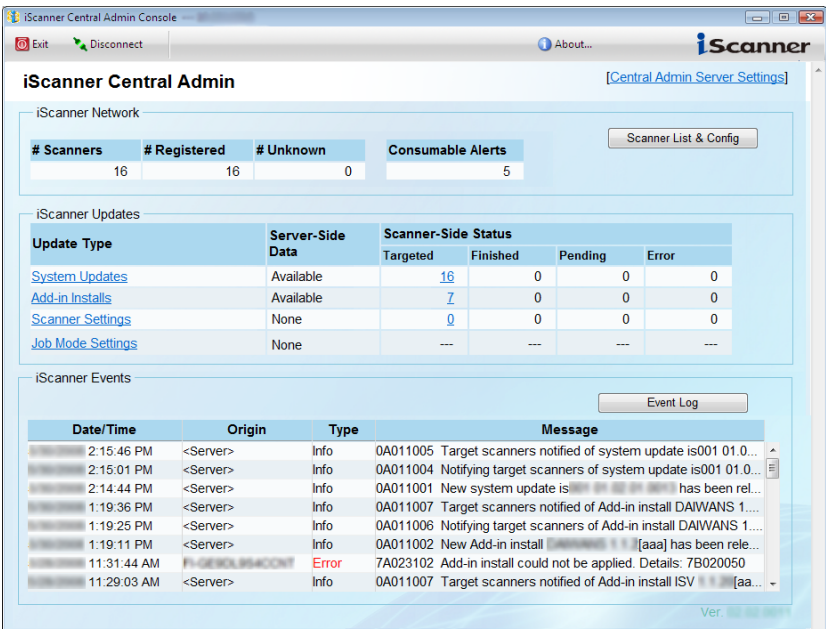
3. Press the [Connect] button.

⇒ The Central Admin Console login screen appears.

4. Enter a "User Name" and "Password".
Enter "admin" for the user name.
Passwords must be between 7 and 127 alphanumeric characters (case sensitive).



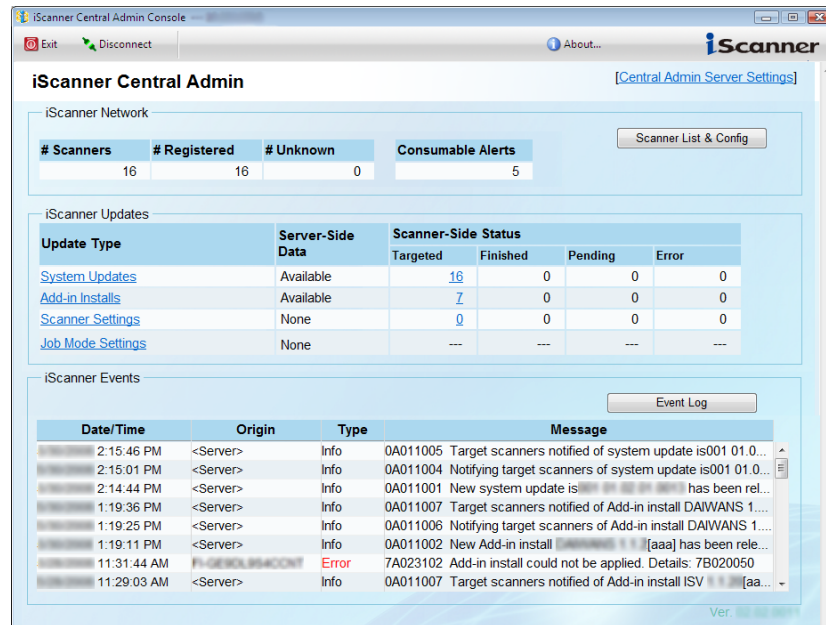
5. Select the [Login] button.
⇒ If the user is authenticated, the Central Admin Console main window appears.

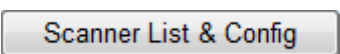


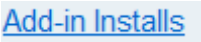
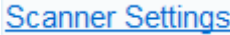
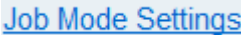
5.4.1 Using Central Admin Console Main Window

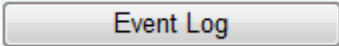
■ Links and Buttons

This section describes the links and buttons shown on the Central Admin Console main window.



Actual icon	Shown in manual as...	Used to ...
[Central Admin Server Settings]	[Central Admin Server Settings] link	Access the "Central Admin Server Settings" window. For details, refer to "5.5 Setting the Central Admin Server" (page 215).
	[Scanner List & Config] button	Access the "Scanner List & Config" window. For details process, refer to "5.6 Setting Scanner Configuration" (page 220).
System Updates	[System Updates] link	Access the "System Updates" window. For details process, refer to "5.7 Updating the System" (page 228).

Actual icon	Shown in manual as...	Used to ...										
	[Add-in Installs] link	Access the "Add-in Installs" window. For details process, refer to "5.8 Installing an Add-in" (page 230) .										
	[Scanner Settings] link	Access the "Scanner Settings" window. For details process, refer to "5.9 Updating the Scanner System Settings" (page 232) .										
	[Job Mode Settings] link	Access the "Job Mode Settings" window. For details process, refer to "5.10 Setting the Job Mode" (page 236) .										
<div><div><div>Scanner-Side Status</div><table><tr><th>Targeted</th><th>Finished</th></tr><tr><td>44</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>---</td><td></td></tr></table></div></div>	Targeted	Finished	44		5		0		---		[Scanner-Side Status] link	Access the "Scanner-Side Status" window for each of the following update types: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• System Updates• Add-in Installs• Scanner Settings For details, refer to "5.11 Viewing Scanner-Side Status" (page 239) .
Targeted	Finished											
44												
5												
0												

	[Event Log] button	Access the "Event Log" window. For details, refer to "5.12 Viewing Event Log" (page 242) .										

■ Lists

This section describes the lists shown on the main screen of the Central Admin Console.

The screenshot shows the iScanner Central Admin Console interface. It features a top menu bar with 'Exit', 'Disconnect', and 'About...'. The main content area is divided into several sections, each highlighted with a red dashed box and a numbered callout:

- 1. iScanner Network:** This section displays a summary of scanner status with four metrics: # Scanners (16), # Registered (16), # Unknown (0), and Consumable Alerts (5). A 'Scanner List & Config' button is located to the right.
- 2. iScanner Updates:** This section shows a table of updates. The table has columns for 'Update Type', 'Server-Side Data', and 'Scanner-Side Status' (which is further divided into 'Targeted', 'Finished', 'Pending', and 'Error'). The rows include 'System Updates', 'Add-in Installs', 'Scanner Settings', and 'Web Mode Settings'.
- 3. iScanner Events:** This section displays a table of events. The table has columns for 'Date/Time', 'Origin', 'Type', and 'Message'. It shows a list of events with their timestamps, origins (e.g., '<Server>'), types (e.g., 'Info', 'Error'), and messages.
- 4. Ver.:** This label points to the version information located at the bottom right of the interface.

No.	List Name	Used to ...
1	iScanner Network	<p>Show the registration status of scanners.</p> <p>The scanner group managed by the Central Admin Server is called the "iScanner Network".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • # Scanners Show the total number of scanners. • # Registered Show the total number of scanners registered with the Central Admin Server. • # Unknown Show the total number of scanners not registered, according to the scanner configuration defined on the Central Admin Server. • Consumable Alerts Show a replacement notification for the following consumables. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pad assembly • Pick roller • Scanner List & Config Add, edit and delete scanner configuration.

No.	List Name	Used to ...
2	iScanner Updates	<p>Show the status of various scanner processes. The following is a description of the displayed items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Update Type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • System Updates Register update module, set notifications etc. • Add-in Installs Register install module, set notification calls etc. • Scanner Settings Register scanner settings, set notification calls etc. • Job Mode Settings Register jobs, perform settings etc. • Server-Side Data <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Available Show available status. • Available(*) Scanners already targeted to receive an update notification call are marked with an asterisk (*). • None Show unavailable status. • Scanner-Side Status <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Targeted Show the number of scanners targeted for updates. • Finished Show the number of scanner which have finished updating. • Pending Show the number of scanners updating/waiting to be updated. • Error Show the number of scanners which could not be updated.

No.	List Name	Used to ...
3	iScanner Events	<p>Show latest 100 events in the event log.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Log for events that occur on the Central Admin Server • Log for events that occur in the scanners, where "Type" is "Error" or "Warning" <p>The following is a description of the displayed items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Event Log View events output by the Central Admin Server or scanners. • Date/Time Date and time of event that occurred in the Central Admin Server. • Origin If the event occurred in the Central Admin Server, shows <Server>. If the event occurred in a scanner, shows the scanner name. • Type There are three event log types. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Info • Error • Warning • Message
4	Ver.	Show the Central Admin Server software version.

5.5 Setting the Central Admin Server

Operating environment for the Central Admin Server is set up by changing the administrator password and setting network and LDAP server.

The central admin server settings can be set from the "Central Admin Server Settings" window.

To open the "Central Admin Server Settings" window, select the [Central Admin Server Settings] link in the Central Admin Console main window.

Central Admin Server Settings

Change Administrator Password User Roaming Data (Select & Clear)

Scanner Registration

☒ Automatically add new scanners to the Central Admin configuration when they are discovered.

Network Connection

☐ Use HTTPS to communicate with the Central Admin Console

Central Admin Console Port Number 10444

☐ Use HTTPS to communicate with scanners

Scanner Communication Port Number 20444

Maximum Connections 10

Wake-On-LAN

Port Number 443

Tries 3

Interval 1 sec

LDAP Server

☒ Enable LDAP searches

☐ Use Global Catalog ☐ Use SSL

LDAP Server (IP address, hostname, or FQDN)

Search Base (DN) (eg. CN=Users,DC=example,DC=com)

Maximum Results 1000

Search Timeout 60 sec

Data Import/Export

CSV File Charset UTF-8

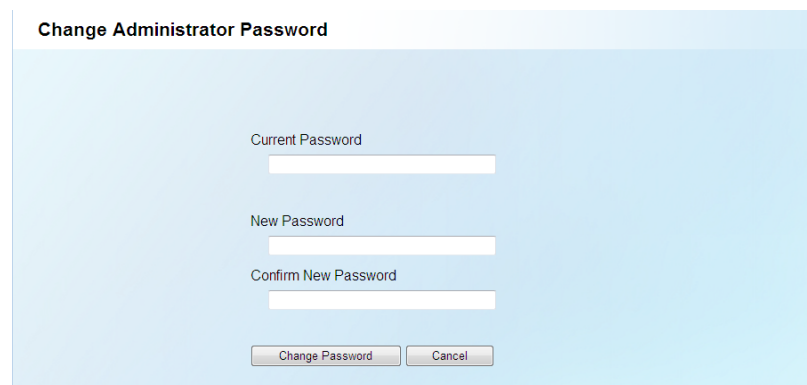
Log Retention

Keep records for 30 days

OK Cancel

■ [Change Administrator Password] button

This opens the "Change Administrator Password" window to change the administrator password.

A screenshot of a web-based dialog box titled "Change Administrator Password". The dialog has a light blue background. It contains three text input fields: "Current Password", "New Password", and "Confirm New Password". Below the input fields are two buttons: "Change Password" and "Cancel".

- **Current Password**
Enter the current password.
- **New Password/Confirm New Password**
Password must be between 7 and 127 characters long. Blank spaces at the start and end will be removed.
- **[Change Password] button**
Changes the administrator password to the entered password.
- **[Cancel] button**
Returns to the "Central Admin Server Settings" window without confirming the entered contents.

■ [User Roaming Data (Select & Clear)] button

This opens the "User Roaming Data (Select & Clear)" window to delete unnecessary user roaming data.

User Roaming Data (Select & Clear)

Select the user(s) whose user roaming data is to be deleted from the central admin server, then click the [Clear] button. Clear All

Filter Conditions

User Name Refresh List

Clear Select All Deselect All

	User Name	Info Last Modified
<input type="checkbox"/>	abc@	8:42:42 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	user01@	8:43:11 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	user02@	8:43:40 AM
<input type="checkbox"/>	xyz@	8:45:44 AM

Pages: 1

* "Select All" and "Deselect All" apply to the current page only.

Back

- [Clear All] button
 - Deletes all user roaming data even if filtered.
- Filter Conditions
 - Filters the users displayed in the user list.
 - User Name
 - Enter a part of or entire user name of the scanner to be filtered.
 - This can be up to 64 characters long.
 - [Refresh List] button
 - Refreshes the list by filtering using the entered filtering conditions.
- [Clear] button
 - Select the checkbox of the user name to be deleted, and select the [Clear] button to delete.
- [Select All] button
 - Selects all checkboxes in the user list.
- [Deselect All] button
 - Deselects all checkboxes in the user list.
- User list
 - Access the user list.
- [Back] button
 - Returns to the "Central Admin Server Settings" window.

■ Scanner Registration

Sets whether to reject registration of a scanner whose configuration information is not set.

- Automatically add new scanners to the Central Admin configuration when they are discovered.
Select the checkbox to add a new scanner automatically.
If the checkbox is selected, scanner configuration can automatically be added to the Central Admin Server.
Scanner configuration information can be set from the "Scanner List & Config" window displayed by selecting the [Scanner List & Config] button in the Central Admin Console main window.

■ Network Connection

Sets up the network to communicate with scanners and the Central Admin Console.

- Use HTTPS to communicate with the Central Admin Console
Select this checkbox to use HTTPS for Central Admin Console communication.
- Central Admin Console Port Number
Enter the port number used to communicate with the Central Admin Console.
The default is "10444". The value can be specified within the range of 1 to 65535.
- Use HTTPS to communicate with scanners
Select the checkbox to use HTTPS to communicate with scanners. If this checkbox setting is changed, the "SSL" setting on the "Admin Network" screen from the "Network Settings" tab screen must also be changed for all managed scanners.
- Scanner Communication Port Number
Enter the port number used to communicate with scanners using http/https.
The default is "20444". The value can be specified within the range of 1 to 65535.
- Maximum Connections
Select the maximum number of scanners that can be connected simultaneously to the Central Admin Server.
The default is "10".
- Wake-On-LAN
Configures the Wake-On-LAN settings to start the scanner to be controlled from the Central Admin Server.
 - Port Number
Enter the port number to be used to send magic packet for Wake-On-LAN.
The default is "443". The value can be specified within the range of 1 to 65535.
 - # Tries
Select the number of times magic packet is sent for Wake-On-LAN.
The default is "3".
 - Interval
Select the interval for sending magic packet for Wake-On-LAN.
The default is "1" sec.

■ LDAP Server

Configures the LDAP server used for the "Job Mode Settings" window displayed by selecting the [Job Mode] link in the Central Admin Console main window.

- **Enable LDAP searches**
Select this checkbox to enable LDAP searches.
If the checkbox is not selected, the following items cannot be entered.
 - **Use Global Catalog**
Select the checkbox to use Global Catalog.
 - **Use SSL**
Select the checkbox to use SSL to communicate with the LDAP server.
 - **LDAP Server**
Enter the LDAP server IP address, host name, or FQDN.
This may be up to 255 characters long.
 - **Search Base (DN)**
Enter a character string to be used as the LDAP search base.
LDAP entry under the string entered here is set as the search target.
This may be up to 255 characters long.
 - **Maximum Results**
Select the maximum number of LDAP search results to be displayed.
The default is "1000".
 - **Search Timeout**
Select the timeout time of LDAP search.
The default is "60" sec.

■ Data Import/Export

Set the character code for input/output files.

- **CSV File Charset**
Select the charset of CSV files to be used for scanner configuration import/export or event download.

■ Log Retention

Sets the number of days to keep the event log.

- **Keep records for**
Select the maximum number of days to keep the event log.
The default is "30" days.

■ [OK] button

Confirms the entered contents and returns to the Central Admin Console main window.

■ [Cancel] button

Returns to the Central Admin Console main window without confirming the entered contents.

5.6 Setting Scanner Configuration

Scanner configuration is set by adding, editing and deleting scanner configuration.

Scanner configuration can be set from the "Scanner List & Config" window.

The "Scanner List & Config" window is displayed by selecting the [Scanner List & Config] button in the Central Admin Console main window.

Scanner Name	IP Address	Settings Group	Add-in Group	Comment	Status		
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-050	192.168.1.100	SG01	AG01	1F_001	Pending	27,000	34,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-051	192.168.1.101	SG01	AG01	1F_002	Pending	43,000	16,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-052	192.168.1.102	SG01	AG01	1F_003	Pending	20,000	15,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-053	192.168.1.103	SG01	AG01	1F_004	Pending	32,000	46,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-054	192.168.1.104	SG01	AG01	1F_005	Pending	37,000	49,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-055	192.168.1.105	SG01	AG01	1F_006	Pending	29,000	49,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-056	192.168.1.106	SG01	AG01	1F_007	Pending	40,000	12,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-057	192.168.1.107	SG01	AG01	1F_008	Pending	21,000	16,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-058	192.168.1.108	SG01	AG01	1F_009	Pending	41,000	17,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-059	192.168.1.109	SG01	AG01	1F_010	Pending	29,000	13,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-060	192.168.1.110	SG01	AG01	2F_001	Pending	31,000	13,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-061	192.168.1.111	SG02	AG02	2F_002	Pending	30,000	19,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-062	192.168.1.112	SG02	AG02	2F_003	Pending	10,000	13,000
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-063	192.168.1.113	SG02	AG02	2F_004	Error	27,000	48,000

Scanner configuration is information used to identify scanners on the Central Admin Server, when registering configuration information from a scanner to the Central Admin Server.

The registered scanners can be reviewed, and modified by the Central Admin Server functions.

Initially, scanner configuration for each scanner in the scanner group is automatically added. To prevent scanner configuration from automatically being added, clear the "Automatically add new scanners to the Central Admin configuration when they are discovered" checkbox in the "Central Admin Server Settings" window in advance.

Scanner configuration can be registered on the Central Admin Server in the following ways.

- Import from the Central Admin Console "Scanner List & Config" window
Import a defined scanner configuration file, and register scanner configuration for several scanners at once.
- Add directly from the Central Admin Console "Scanner List & Config" window
Add scanner configuration directly from the Central Admin Console "Scanner List & Config" window for one scanner at a time.

The following table shows which config items can be added/imported to the Central Admin Server from a config file or from a scanner.

Item	Comment	Configuration from file	Configuration from scanner
Scanner Name	Scanner name	Yes	Yes
Model	Scanner model	Yes	Yes
IP Address	Scanner IP address	Yes	Yes
Port Number	Scanner port number	Yes	Yes
Subnet Mask	Scanner subnet mask	Yes	Yes
Use HTTPS?	Whether or not HTTPS communication to the scanner is used	Yes	Yes
MAC Address	Scanner MAC address	Yes	Yes
Comment	Note	Yes	—
Info Last Modified	Last date and time scanner configuration was modified	— (*1)	— (*1)
Software Status	Software status	— (*1)	— (*1)
System Updates	Whether or not the system is to be updated	Yes	—
Current System Update Status	The current system update status	— (*1)	— (*1)
System Version	Scanner system version	—	Yes
Scanner Version	Scanner firmware version	—	Yes
Last System Update	System update notification date	— (*1)	— (*1)
Add-in Group	Name used to identify applied Add-in instal modules	Yes	—
Current Add-in Install Status	Install update notification date	— (*1)	— (*1)
Add-in Version	Scanner Add-in install module version	—	Yes
Last Add-in Install	Last Add-in install	— (*1)	— (*1)
Settings Group	Name used to identify applied scanner settings	Yes	—

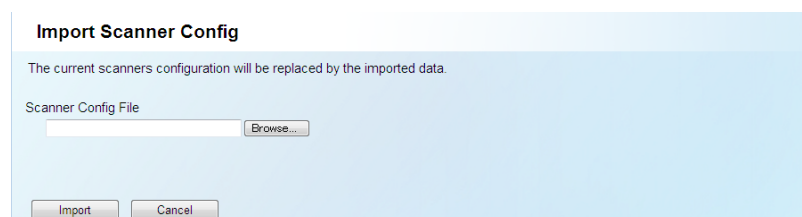
Item	Comment	Configuration from file	Configuration from scanner
Current Scanner Settings Status	The current scanner settings status	— (*1)	— (*1)
Last Scanner Settings Update	Date and time scanner settings were last updated	— (*1)	— (*1)
Last Inventory Taken	Date and time inventory was last taken	— (*1)	— (*1)
Total Throughput (Sheets)	Total number of scanned sheets	—	Yes
Pad Assembly (Sheets)	Number of times pad assembly has been used	—	Yes
Pick Roller (Sheets)	Number of times pick roller has been used	—	Yes
Date of Registration	Date on which scanner was registered.	—	Yes
Cumulative On Time (Hours)	Total scanner "On" time, in hours	—	Yes

(*1): Automatically set from the Central Admin Sever.

■ [Import Config] button

This button opens the "Import Scanner Config" window to allow the import of pre-created scanner configuration data from a file. Such a scanner configuration file may contain data for several scanners, all of whose configurations are then changed at once.

Details of the importable data (settings) allowed in a scanner configuration file are given in ["B.2.1 Scanner Configuration File Format \(for Importing\)" \(page 421\)](#). Note that only those settings detailed as being importable may be imported.



- Scanner Config File

Select the [Browse] button and specify the scanner configuration information file to be imported.

- [Import] button

Imports the entered scanner configuration file and returns to the "Scanner List & Config" window.



- If a scanner configuration file of OMB is imported, entire scanner configuration information is deleted.
- The imported scanner configuration file overwrites the current scanner configuration.
- If the imported scanner configuration information contains the same MAC address or scanner name as in the existing scanner configuration information, the MAC address or the scanner name will be recognized as already existing. This is determined in the order of MAC address, scanner name. In this case, on the table shown in ["5.6 Setting Scanner Configuration" \(page 220\)](#), items in the "Configuration from file" column marked "Yes" are replaced, and those marked with "—" are left as they are.
- If the same MAC address or scanner name does not exist, the imported scanner configuration information will be added.



- [Cancel] button

Returns to the "Scanner List & Config" window without confirming the entered contents.

■ [Export Config] button

Shows the "Save As" window to specify a file to export scanner configuration. However, if the "Include detailed scanner information." checkbox is selected, the configuration for all scanners is exported. For details on the format of the scanner configuration file to be exported, refer to ["B.2.1 Scanner Configuration File Format \(for Importing\)" \(page 421\)](#).

■ Filter Conditions

Filters the scanners displayed in the scanner list.

- Scanner Name

Enter a part of or entire scanner name of the scanner to be filtered.
This may be up to 15 characters long.

- IP Address

Enter a part of or entire IP address of the scanner to be filtered.
This may be up to 15 characters long.

- Settings Group

Select the settings group of the scanner to be filtered.
The default is "(All)".

- Add-in Group

Select the Add-in group of the scanner to be filtered.
The default is "(All)".

- **Comment**
Enter a part of or entire comment on the scanner to be filtered.
This may be up to 64 characters long. Line-feed cannot be used.
- **Status**
Select the status of the scanner to be filtered.
The default is "(All)".
- **[Refresh List] button**
Refreshes the list by filtering using the entered filtering conditions.

■ [New] button

The button displays the "Edit Scanner Details" window to add scanner configuration information.

- **Scanner Name (Required)**
Enter the scanner name.
This may be up to 15 characters long. Alphanumeric characters and hyphens may be used.
Scanner names cannot consist of numerical characters only.
A hyphen cannot be used as the first character of a scanner name.
- **IP Address**
Enter the numeric IP address.
This may be up to 15 characters long. Numbers and periods (.) may be used.
- **MAC Address**
Enter the MAC address of the scanner.
This may be up to 17 characters long. Alphanumeric characters and colons (:) may be used.
- **Settings Group**
Enter the settings group of the scanner. Press the list button to select a settings group name from the currently used settings groups.
This group name is used to identify the settings contents of a group.
The settings group name entered here is displayed on the "Scanner Settings" window, Settings Groups.
This may be up to 32 characters long.
The following character strings cannot be used:
(Default) (All) __default__ __all__
" __ " is two underbars entered one after another.
- **Add-in Group**
Enter the Add-in group of the scanner. Press the list button to select an Add-in group name from the currently used Add-in groups.
This group name is used to identify an Add-in module.

The Add-in name entered here is displayed on the "Add-in Installs" window, Add-in Groups.

This may be up to 32 characters long.

The following character strings cannot be used:

(Default) (All) __default__ __all__

"__" is two underbars entered one after another.

- **System Updates**
Select the checkbox to not update the system.
- **Comment**
Enter the comments on the scanner.
This may be up to 256 characters long.
- **[OK] Button**
Adds the entered scanner configuration information and returns to the "Scanner List & Config" window.
- **[Cancel] button**
Returns to the "Scanner List & Config" window without confirming the entered contents.

■ [Clone] button

Select the checkbox of the scanner to be copied and select the [Clone] button to display the "Edit Scanner Details" window to copy the scanner configuration information.

■ [Edit] button

Select the checkbox of the scanner to be edited and select the [Edit] button to display the "Edit Scanner Details" window to edit the information.

■ [Delete] button

Deletes a scanner from the scanner network.

Select the checkbox(es) of the scanner(s) to be deleted, and select the [Delete] button to delete.



- Deleting the scanner configuration does not exclude a scanner from Central Admin management. Therefore, the Central Admin Server setting in the scanner will not be "Unregistered". To exclude a scanner from Central Admin management, select "Central Admin" to [Off] in the scanner.
- To exclude multiple scanners from Central Admin management at one time, release a new set of scanner settings to target scanners.
- To include the scanner in the iScanner Network again, re-register the scanner on the Central Admin Server.



■ [Select All] button

Selects all checkboxes in the scanner list.

■ [Deselect All] button

Deselects all checkboxes in the scanner list.

■ Scanner information list

Shows the scanner information list.

- Scanner name link
Shows the "Scanner Details" window to view the scanner information details.

Scanner Details

Back fi Network Scanner Admin Tool [Start]

Networking Info

Scanner Name	iS-061
Model	fi-6010NS
IP Address	192.168.171.100
Port Number	80
Use HTTPS?	No
MAC Address	08:00:2B:00:00:07
Comment	
Info Last Modified	4/1/2008 3:38:44 PM

Software Status

System Updates	Will be applied when available
Current System Update Status	NotTarget
System Version	
Last System updated	
Add-in Group	
Current Add-in Install Status	NotTarget
Add-in Version	
Last Add-in Install	
Settings Group	
Current Scanner Settings Status	NotTarget
Last Scanner Settings Update	

Hardware Status

Last Inventory Taken	4/1/2008 3:38:44 PM
Total Throughput (Sheets)	45,480
Pad Assembly (Sheets)	45,000
Pick Roller (Sheets)	45,000
Date of Registration	1/1/2007
Cumulative On Time (Hours)	65

Back

- [Back] button
Returns to the "Scanner List & Config" window.
- [fi Network Scanner Admin Tool [Start]] button
Communicates to the Wake-On-LAN Magic Packet and starts and connects the Admin Tool to a scanner, after the scanner has started up.



- If "Auto Login" is set to [On] on the [System Settings] - "Login Settings" screen, the Admin Tool cannot be started.
- Scanners are identified by their IP addresses. If the scanner information includes multiple scanners with the same IP address, scanners which are not to be targeted may be connected.





If the scanner is not started, using Wake-On-LAN to start the scanner and connect with the Admin Tool will take a few minutes.

If a "Connection error" occurs, and the screen returns to the screen for specifying a connection, try re-connecting.

■ [Back] button

Returns to the Central Admin Console main window.

5.7 Updating the System

The system can be updated by uploading a new system update module and setting update calls.

The system can be updated from the "System Updates" window.

The "System Updates" window is displayed by selecting the [System Updates] link in the Central Admin Console main window.

System Updates

Upload and release system updates to the scanners.

Registered System Update

Current Release

Version	(None)
Release Date	

Upload & Release a New System Update

System Update Module

☐ Issue an Update Call

Scanner Notification Schedule

☒ Now

☐ Later

00 Hour 00 Min

■ Registered System Update

- Current Release

Displays the version and the release date of the currently available update module.

Selecting the [Cancel] button cancels release of the update module and deletes the module.

■ Upload & Release a New System Update

Uploads a new system update module and issues an update call as needed.

The new system update module will be released, and applied to the scanners when one of the following occurs:

- Scanner is started, or resumed from the standby mode
- Scanner is logged out
- Scanner is notified of any update modules

Updates can be applied to the scanners that are in power-off or standby mode using Wake-On-LAN.

If an update module is already available, the update module is replaced. However, if the date of the last modified update module version is the same as, or earlier than the currently available one, the update module cannot be uploaded.

- System Update Module

Select the [Browse] button to specify the update module file.

Select the [Upload] button to upload the update module.

- **Issue an Update Call**

Select the checkbox to issue an update call.

When the checkbox is selected, even if a scanner is not started or logged in to, the update module is sent and applied to the scanner according to the Scanner Notification Schedule. However, if the update is released while logged in to a scanner, the update will be applied after logged out. If any other available updates are pending, those are also applied at the same time.

- **Scanner Notification Schedule**

Sets the schedule to notify update module.

- **Now**

Issues a call immediately.

- **Later**

Specifies the date and time to issue a call.

The default value is 00:00 of the following day. The value can be specified within the range between the current time and a month later.

The scanner notification schedule uses the Central Admin Server timezone.

- **[Register] button**

Registers the uploaded update module.



When a new system update is available, it will only be installed in a scanner if the new version is higher than the current version. Targeted scanners are restarted after the new system update has been installed.

Pending updates are performed in the following order:

1. System Updates
2. Add-in Installs
3. Scanner Settings

■ **[Back] button**

Returns to the Central Admin Console main window.

5.8 Installing an Add-in

An Add-in for scanner can be installed by uploading an Add-in module and setting update calls. An Add-in can be installed from the "Add-in Installs" window.

The "Add-in Installs" window is displayed by selecting the [Add-in Installs] link in the Central Admin Console main window.

Add-in Installs

Upload and release Add-ins to the scanners.

Add-in Groups

(Default)

Registered Add-in Module

Add-in Group : (Default)

Current Release

Version (None)

Release Date

Upload & Release a New Add-in

Upload an Add-in Module for the Add-in Group selected above.

☐ Issue an Update Call

Scanner Notification Schedule

☒ Now

☐ Later

00 Hour 00 Min

■ Add-in Groups

Displays Add-in groups.

Scanners which are not to be assigned to Add-in groups belong to the "(Default)" group.

Select a group for registering a new Add-in module.

If an Add-in is released, "(Released)" is shown after the Add-in group name.

The default value is "(Default)".

■ Registered Add-in Module

- Add-in Group

Displays the Add-in group name selected in the "Add-in Groups" list.

- Current Release

Displays the version and the release date of the currently available Add-in module.

Selecting the [Cancel] button cancels release of the Add-in module and deletes the module.

■ Upload & Release a New Add-in

Uploads a new Add-in module and issues an update call as needed.

The new Add-in update module will be released, and applied to the scanners when the one of the following occurs:

- Scanner is started, or resumed from the standby mode
- Scanner is logged out
- Scanner is notified of any update modules

Updates can be applied to the scanners that are in power-off or standby mode using Wake-On-LAN.

If the Add-in module is already available, the module is replaced. However, if the date of the last modified Add-in module version is the same as, or earlier than the currently available one, the module cannot be uploaded.

- Upload an Add-in Module for the Add-in Group selected above.

Select the [Browse] button to specify the install module file.

Select the [Upload] button to upload the Add-in module.

- Issue an Update Call

Check the checkbox to issue an update call.

When the checkbox is selected, even if a scanner is not started or logged in to, the update module is sent and applied to the scanner according to the Scanner Notification Schedule. However, if the update is released while logged in to a scanner, the update will be applied after logged out. If any other available updates are pending, those are also applied at the same time.

- Scanner Notification Schedule

Sets the schedule to notify Add-in module.

- Now

Issues a call immediately.

- Later

Specifies the date and time to issue a call.

The default value is 00:00 of the following day. The value can be specified within the range between the current time and a month later.

Update call schedule uses the Central Admin Server timezone.

- [Register] button

Registers the uploaded Add-in module to the selected Add-in group.



When a new Add-in module is available, it will only be not installed in a scanner if both the name and version match that of the current Add-in. Scanners are restarted twice when installing a new Add-in, once to uninstall the old Add-in, and once again after the new Add-in has been installed.

Pending updates are performed in the following order:

1. System Updates
2. Add-in Installs
3. Scanner Settings

■ [Back] button

Returns to the Central Admin Console main window.

5.9 Updating the Scanner System Settings

The scanner settings can be updated by uploading new sets of scanner settings and setting update calls.

The scanner settings can be updated from the "Scanner Settings" window.

The "Scanner Settings" window is displayed by selecting the [Scanner Settings] link in the Central Admin Console main window.

■ Settings Groups

Displays the settings groups.

Scanners which are not to be assigned to settings groups belong to the "(Default)" group.

Select a group for registering a new set of scanner settings.

If scanner settings are released, "(Released)" is shown after the settings group name.

The default value is "(Default)".

■ Registered Scanner Settings

- Settings Group

Displays the settings group name selected in the "Settings Groups" list.

- Current Release

Displays the release date of the currently available scanner settings.

Selecting the [Cancel] button cancels release of the scanner settings.



If the scanner settings are canceled, checking or changing the settings contents becomes difficult. Also, editing and viewing of the network printers/folders setting contents on the Job Sequence "Job Mode Settings" screen, may not be possible. For more details, refer to ["Create & Release a New Set of Job Mode Settings"](#) (page 237).



■ Upload & Release a New Set of Scanner Settings

Uploads scanner settings and issues an update call as needed.

The new set of scanner settings will be released, and applied to the scanners when one of the following occurs:

- Scanner is started, or resumed from the standby mode
- Scanner is logged out
- Scanner is notified of any update modules

Updates can be applied to the scanners that are in power-off or standby mode using Wake-On-LAN. However, if the update is released while logged in to a scanner, the update will be applied after logged out.

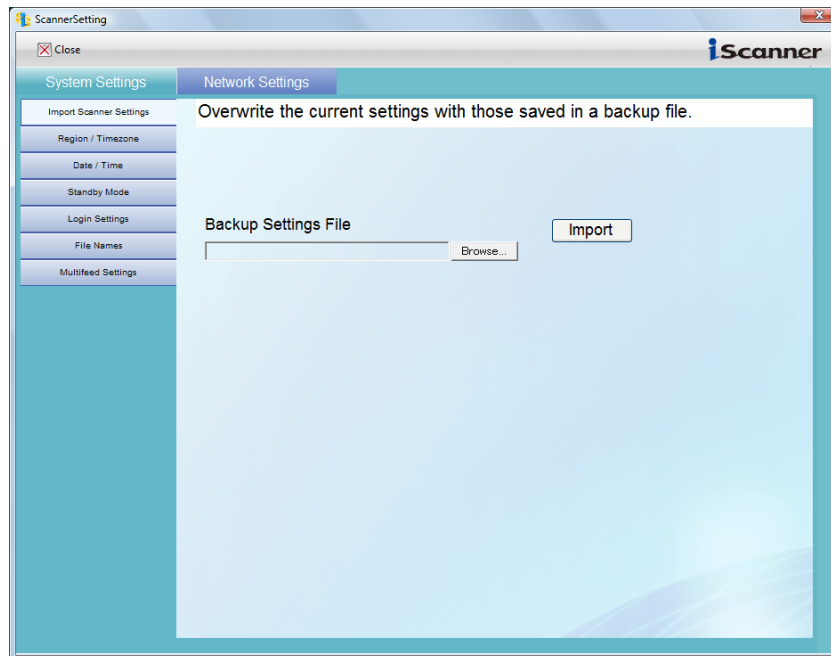
If scanner settings are already available, the scanner settings are replaced.

- [Edit Scanner Settings] button

Shows the "Edit Scanner Settings" window to set up the scanner settings.

If scanner settings are available, the available scanner settings values are shown.

If no scanner settings have been released, the default values are shown.



If you return to the Main Menu from the "Scanner Settings" screen without registering the scanner settings, the edited contents will be lost.



- [System Settings] tab

The setting items are the same as those set in the system settings menu in the window for administrator operations. For details, refer to ["4.6 Using the System Settings Menus" \(page 51\)](#).

However, the "Import Scanner Settings" button for the "System Settings" menu is only displayed on the Central Admin Console "Edit Scanner Settings" window.

The current configuration of the scanners saved by using the Admin Tool can be sent to the Central Admin Server from the "Import Scanner Settings" screen. The current configuration of the scanners is the information saved in ["Backing up System Settings" \(page 150\)](#). The current configuration of the scanners can be imported in the following way.

- 1) Specify the scanner configuration file to be imported.

Select a file using the [Browse] button.

- 2) Press the [Import] button.

⇒ The current configuration of the scanners is sent to the Central Admin Server.

The imported scanner settings are applied to the scanner according to the Scanner Notification Schedule.

- [Network Settings] tab
The setting items are the same as those set in the network settings menu in the window for administrator operations. For details, refer to ["4.7 Using the Network Settings Menus" \(page 76\)](#).
- [Close] button
Registers the entered scanner settings and returns to the "Scanner Settings" window.
- Issue an Update Call
Select the checkbox to issue an update call.
When the checkbox is selected, even if a scanner is not started or logged in to, the update module is sent and applied to the scanner according to the Scanner Notification Schedule. However, if the update is released while logged in to a scanner, the update will be applied after logged out. If any other available updates are pending, those are also applied at the same time.
- Scanner Notification Schedule
Sets the schedule to notify scanner settings.
 - Now
Issues a call immediately.
 - Later
Specifies the date and time to issue a call.
The default value is 00:00 of the following day. The value can be specified within the range between the current time and a month later.
The Scanner Notification Schedule uses the Central Admin Server timezone.
- [Register] button
Registers the entered scanner settings to the selected settings group.



When a new set of scanner settings is available, first any existing network printer and network folder settings are deleted, then the new scanner settings are written over the old scanner settings.

Once the new scanner settings have been applied, any changes to the settings of individual scanners are retained until the next time a new set of scanner settings becomes available from the Central Admin Server.

Pending updates are performed in the following order:

1. System Updates
2. Add-in Installs
3. Scanner Settings

■ [Back] button

Returns to the Central Admin Console main window.

5.10 Setting the Job Mode

The job mode can be set by registering a new job mode and setting a release schedule.

The job mode can be set from the "Job Mode Settings" window.

The "Job Mode Settings" window is displayed by selecting the [Job Mode Settings] link in the Central Admin Console main window.

Job Mode Settings

Modify and release the Job Mode settings used by the scanners.

Registered Job Mode Settings

Current Release

Version (Date) (None)

Release Date

Scheduled Release

Version (Date) (None)

Release Date

Create & Release a New Set of Job Mode Settings

Edit the Job Mode Settings

Settings Release Schedule

☒ Now

☐ Later

Hour Min

■ Registered Job Mode Settings

- Current Release

Shows the upload date and the release date of the current job mode settings.

Selecting the [Cancel] button cancels release of the job mode settings.

- Scheduled Release

Shows the next scheduled upload date and the release date of the job mode settings.

Selecting the [Cancel] button cancels release schedule of the job mode settings.

Even if available job mode settings are canceled, job mode settings already sent to a scanner will not become invalid. To not use job mode settings in a scanner, on the [Network Settings], "Central Admin Server" screen, set "Job Mode" to "Off".

■ Create & Release a New Set of Job Mode Settings

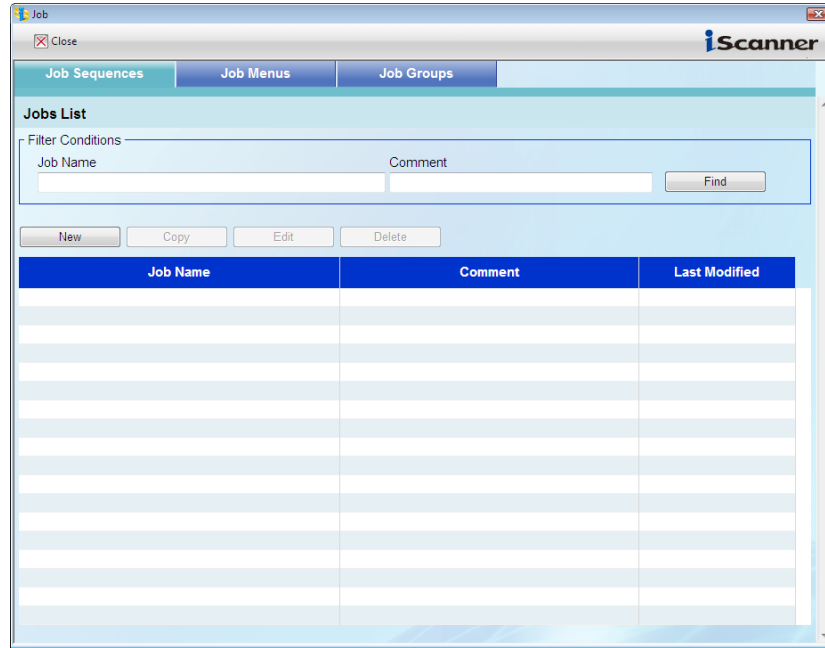
Creates and releases a new set of job mode settings.

After registering a new set of job mode settings, the job mode settings are replaced.

- [Job Mode Settings] button

The button displays the "Job Mode Settings" window to configure job mode settings.

The contents of the last configured job mode settings are shown.



- [Job Sequences] tab

The setting items are the same as those set in the [Job Sequences] tab in the job mode settings menu in the window for administrator operations. For details, refer to ["4.11.2 Setting a Job Sequence" \(page 163\)](#).

To set "Print" or "Save" for a job sequence, a network printer or network folder must be previously added on the "Edit Scanner Settings" screen. The job sequences and "Edit Scanner Settings" screen settings are related in the following way.

- The network printers shown on the "Printer List" window when "Print" is selected as a job item, are the network printers set on the "Edit Scanner Settings" screen.
- The network folders shown on the "Folder List" window when "Save" is selected as a job item, are the network folders set on the "Edit Scanner Settings" screen.

- [Job Menus] tab

The setting items are the same as those set in the [Job Menus] tab in the job mode settings menu in the window for administrator operations. For details, refer to ["4.11.3 Setting a Job Menu" \(page 176\)](#).

- [Job Groups] tab

The setting items are the same as those set in the [Job Groups] tab in the job mode settings menu, in the window for administrator operations. For details, refer to ["4.11.4 Setting a Job Group" \(page 182\)](#).

- [Close] button

Registers the entered job mode settings and returns to the "Job Mode Settings" window.

- Settings Release Schedule

Sets the schedule to release job mode settings.

- Now

Release immediately.

- Later

Specifies the date and time to release.

The default value is 00:00 of the following day. The value can be specified within the range between the current time and a month later.

The Release Schedule uses the Central Admin Server timezone.

- [Register] button

Registers the entered job mode settings.

■ [Back] button

Returns to the Central Admin Console main window.

5.11 Viewing Scanner-Side Status

Status details can be viewed for each of the following update types:

- System Updates
- Add-in Installs
- Scanner Settings

The usage status for each scanner can be viewed from the "Scanner-Side Status" window. The "Scanner-Side Status" window is displayed by selecting the [Scanner-Side Status] link (numerical link below [Version]) in the Central Admin Console main window.

Status Details (System Updates)

Select target scanners and click the [Call Now] button to notify them of a pending update.

Filter Conditions

Scanner Name	IP Address	Settings Group	Add-in Group	Status
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	(All)	(All)	(All)

Scanner Name	IP Address	Settings Group	Add-in Group	Status	Version
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-050	192.168.0.100	SG01	AG01	NotTarget	
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-051	192.168.0.101	SG01	AG01	Pending	
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-052	192.168.0.102	SG01	AG01	Pending	
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-053	192.168.0.103	SG01	AG01	Pending	
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-054	192.168.0.104	SG01	AG01	Pending	
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-055	192.168.0.105	SG01	AG01	Pending	
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-056	192.168.0.106	SG01	AG01	Pending	
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-057	192.168.0.107	SG01	AG01	Pending	
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-058	192.168.0.108	SG01	AG01	Pending	
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-059	192.168.0.109	SG01	AG01	Pending	
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-060	192.168.0.110	SG01	AG01	Pending	
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-061	192.168.0.111	SG02	AG02	Pending	
<input type="checkbox"/> iS-062	192.168.0.112	SG02	AG02	Pending	

* Click the scanner names to view individual scanner details.
* Scanners already targeted to receive an update notification call are marked with an asterisk (*).

■ Filter Conditions

Filters the scanners displayed in the scanner list.

- Scanner Name
Enter a part of or entire scanner name of the scanner to be filtered.
This may be up to 15 characters long.
- IP Address
Enter a part of or entire IP address of the scanner to be filtered.
This may be up to 15 characters long.
- Settings Group
Select the settings group of the scanner to be filtered.
The default is "(All)".
- Add-in Group
Select the Add-in group of the scanner to be filtered.
The default is "(All)".
- Status
Select the status of the scanner to be filtered.
The default is "(All)".
- [Refresh List] button
Refreshes the list by filtering using the entered filtering conditions.

■ [Call Now] button

Select the checkbox of the scanners to be notified, and select the [Call Now] button to issue a call. If a target scanner is in error status, the error is cleared before notification. The scanner-side status is changed to "Pending", and becomes an update target. All update call targets are "Pending" for "Scanner-Side Status".

■ [Clear Errors] button

Select the checkbox for the scanner in error status, and press the [Clear Errors] button to clear the error. The scanner-side status is changed to "Pending", and becomes an update target.

■ [Select All] button

Selects all checkboxes in the scanner list.

■ [Deselect All] button

Deselects all checkboxes in the scanner list.

■ Scanner list

Views the scanner list.

- Scanner name link

Opens the "Scanner Details" window to view the scanner details.

Scanner Details

Back fi Network Scanner Admin Tool [Start]

Networking Info

Scanner Name	iS-061
Model	fi-6010NS
IP Address	192.168.171.100
Port Number	80
Use HTTPS?	No
MAC Address	08:00:2B:00:00:07
Comment	
Info Last Modified	4/1/2008 3:38:44 PM

Software Status

System Updates	Will be applied when available
Current System Update Status	NotTarget
System Version	
Last System updated	
Add-in Group	
Current Add-in Install Status	NotTarget
Add-in Version	
Last Add-in Install	
Settings Group	
Current Scanner Settings Status	NotTarget
Last Scanner Settings Update	

Hardware Status

Last Inventory Taken	4/1/2008 3:38:44 PM
Total Throughput (Sheets)	45,480
Pad Assembly (Sheets)	45,000
Pick Roller (Sheets)	45,000
Date of Registration	4/1/2008
Cumulative On Time (Hours)	65

Back

- [Back] button

Returns to the "Scanner-Side Status" window.

- [fi Network Scanner Admin Tool [Start]] button

Sends the Wake-On-LAN Magic Packet to start a scanner, runs the Admin Tool, and connects to the scanner.

- Version

Displayed version is different depending on the Update Type of the [Scanner-Side Status] link selected in the Central Admin Console main window.

■ [Back] button

Returns to the Central Admin Console main window.

5.12 Viewing Event Log

Event logs output from the scanners or the Central Admin Server can be viewed.

The latest 100 items of event logs can be viewed in the Central Admin Console main window.

- Log for all events that occur on the Central Admin Server
- Log for events that occur in the scanners, where "Type" is "Error" or "Warning"

To view all event logs, check the "Event Log" window.

The "Event Log" window is displayed by selecting the [Event Log] button in the Central Admin Console main window.

Event Log

Select the type of iScanner network events that you wish to check and click the [Refresh List] button.

Download Clear Log

Filter Conditions

Origin : ☒ Server ☒ Scanner

Type : ☒ Error ☒ Warning ☒ Info Refresh List

Date/Time	Origin	Type	Message
9:04:25 PM	FI-BU1YMW9Q74QL	Info	0A021104 Scanner inventory has been updated.
9:03:24 PM	FI-BU1YMW9Q74QL	Info	0A021104 Scanner inventory has been updated.
7:16:48 PM	FI-JROA86394OX2	Info	0A021109 User roaming data uploaded to server. User: @domain0.s...
7:13:14 PM	FI-JROA86394OX2	Info	0A021109 User roaming data uploaded to server. User: @domain0.s...
7:11:35 PM	FI-JROA86394OX2	Info	0A021109 User roaming data uploaded to server. User: @domain0.s...
7:10:25 PM	FI-JROA86394OX2	Info	0A021104 Scanner inventory has been updated.
7:08:36 PM	FI-BU1YMW9Q74QL	Info	0A021104 Scanner inventory has been updated.
6:56:18 PM	FI-BU1YMW9Q74QL	Info	0A021104 Scanner inventory has been updated.
6:27:00 PM	FI-BU1YMW9Q74QL	Info	0A021104 Scanner inventory has been updated.
6:24:47 PM	FI-BU1YMW9Q74QL	Info	0A021104 Scanner inventory has been updated.
5:13:38 PM	FI-BU1YMW9Q74QL	Info	0A021104 Scanner inventory has been updated.
5:11:38 PM	FI-BU1YMW9Q74QL	Info	0A021104 Scanner inventory has been updated.
5:10:48 PM	FI-BU1YMW9Q74QL	Info	0A021104 Scanner inventory has been updated.
5:10:26 PM	FI-BU1YMW9Q74QL	Info	0A021104 Scanner inventory has been updated.

Page: 1

Back

■ [Download] button

Shows the "Save As" window to specify a file to output event logs.

The default file name is "execlog.csv".

When downloaded to a computer, the file will contain CSV format data. The file is saved in the following form:

Date/Time,Origin,Type,Event_ID,"Message"

The types are, E: Error, W: Warning, I: Info.

■ [Clear Log] button

Clears all event logs.

■ Filter Conditions

Filters the events displayed in the event log list.

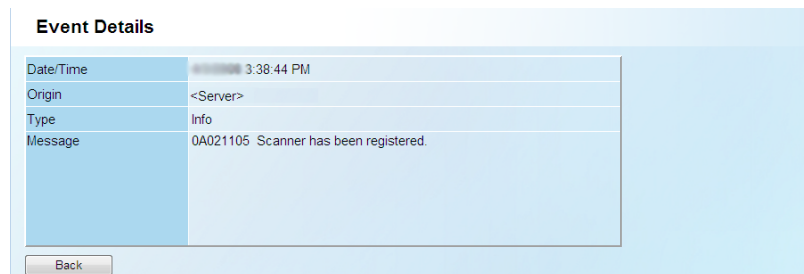
- Origin
 - Select the origin of the events to be displayed.
 - Server
 - Shows the events that occurred in the Central Admin Server.
 - Scanner
 - Shows the events that occurred in each scanner.

- **Type**
Select the type of the events to be opened.
 - **Error**
Opens the event logs whose type is Error.
 - **Warning**
Opens the event logs whose type is Warning.
 - **Info**
Opens the event logs whose type is Info.
- **[Refresh List] button**
Refreshes the list by filtering using the entered filtering conditions.

■ Event Log

Opens the event list.

- **Date/Time link**
Displays the "Event Details" window to view the event details.



- **[Back] button**
Returns to the "Event Log" window.

■ [Back] button

Returns to the Central Admin Console main window.

5.13 Maintaining Central Admin Settings

Central admin settings set by the administrator can be backed up, restored, and obtained.

5.13.1 Backing Up Central Admin Settings

Central admin settings set by the administrator can be backed up.

Central admin settings can be restored using the backup file.

Take backups periodically just in case. To back up central admin settings, execute

"AmBackup.exe" from the command prompt on the personal computer installed Central Admin Server software.

When backing up, the Central Admin Server is in a temporarily suspended state, and connection from the Central Admin Console or uploading/downloading of user roaming data, and release of updates to scanners is not possible.

- Command storage location

Under the "Bin" folder in the installation folder of the Central Admin Server software

- Command executable format

AmBackup.exe *backup_folder_name*

The character string shown in italics is variable.



- Make sure to run the `AmBackup.exe` command after changing the current directory to the Bin folder in the installation folder of the Central Admin Server software.
- Specify a folder without files and sub-folders as the backup folder. If the specified backup folder does not exist, it is created.
- Do not change the backup folder structure. If changed, restoration may not be processed correctly.
- Do not change the content of the backup file of central admin settings. If the backup file content is changed and restored, processes related to central control may operate improperly.
- For Windows® 2000 Server, IIS will be stopped while a command is running.
- All files in the installation folder are deleted when the Central Admin Server software is uninstalled. Therefore, save all backup files to a location other than in the installation folder.





Before executing the `AmBackup.exe` command, confirm that the storage disk has sufficient free space. If free space is insufficient, an incomplete file may be saved.

The required free capacity is approximately twice the free capacity under the "Data" folder in the installation folder.

5.13.2 Restoring Central Admin Settings

Central admin settings that has been backed up can be restored to the Central Admin Server. To restore central admin settings, execute "AmRestore.exe" from the command prompt on the personal computer installed with the Central Admin Server software.

- Command storage location

Under the "Bin" folder in the installation folder of the Central Admin Server software

- Command executable format

AmRestore.exe *backup_folder_name*

The character string shown in italics is variable.



- Make sure to run the AmRestore.exe command after changing the current directory to the Bin folder in the installation folder of the Central Admin Server software.
- The language for the backup and restore Central Admin Servers must be the same. If languages are different, Central Admin may not operate correctly when restoring.
- For Windows® 2000 Server, IIS will be stopped while a command is running.



- The admin password is not backed up and restored by using the AmBackup.exe and AmRestore.exe commands. Even if the AmRestore.exe command is executed, the admin password is not changed.
- For Windows Server® 2008, to use HTTPS for communication to a scanner, or personal computer installed with the Central Admin Console, additional settings may be required for the target Central Admin Server to be restored. For more details, refer to ["Importing the Certificate" \(page 201\)](#).

5.13.3 Obtaining Technical Support on the Central Admin Server

If any problems occur when setting up or using central admin, technical support information on the Central Admin Server can be collected to help determine the cause of the problem.

To obtain technical support information, execute the "AmInvestigate.exe" command prompt on the personal computer installed with the Central Admin Server software.

When obtaining technical support, the Central Admin Server is in a temporarily suspended state. Do not try to obtain technical support unless requested by your FUJITSU scanner dealer, or a problem occurs.

- Command storage location

Under the "Bin" folder in the installation folder of the Central Admin Server software

- Command executable format

```
AmInvestigate.exe -d output_folder [-p encrypted_password] [-v]
```

The character string shown in italics is variable.

To show the status of the process, specify -v.

The information is output to the specific output folder for each type. If an encrypted password is specified, the technical support information is encrypted.

Chapter 6

Regular User Operations

User

This scanner is used to scan documents which then can be sent by e-mail or fax, printed on a network printer, or saved to a network folder.

To perform the operations described in this chapter, the scanner must first be setup by the administrator.

For details of scanner setup, refer to "[Chapter 4 Administrator Operations \(Touch Panel and Admin Tool\)](#)" (page 31).

Messages may appear while performing operations described in this chapter. For more details about these messages and actions to take, refer to "[E.2 Regular User Messages](#)" (page 457).

6.1 Loading Documents.....	250
6.2 Using Touch Panel Screens: Regular User	256
6.3 Logging in: Regular User Mode.....	262
6.4 Sending the Scanned Data by e-Mail	265
6.5 Sending the Scanned Data by Fax	277
6.6 Printing the Scanned Data	286
6.7 Saving the Scanned Data to a Network Folder.....	299
6.8 Setting the Scan Options	304
6.9 Enabling/Disabling the Scan Viewer	340
6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer	343
6.11 Checking the User Log	346
6.12 Maintenance	348
6.13 Processing a Job	349

6.1 Loading Documents

This section describes how to load documents onto the scanner.

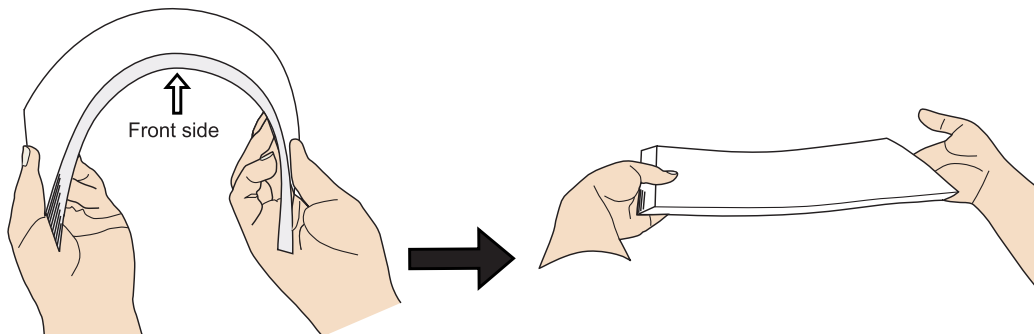
6.1.1 How to Load Documents

1. Check the number of document sheets.

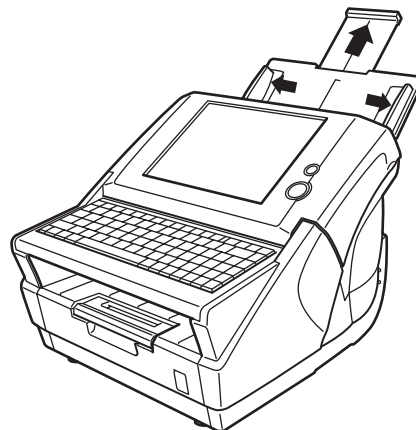
For document sheet limits, refer to ["A.3 Maximum Document Loading Capacity"](#) (page 414).

2. Fan the documents.

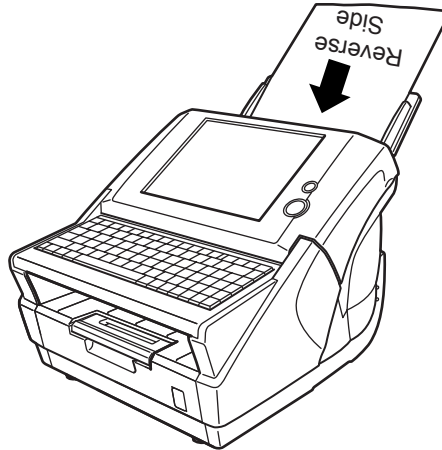
1. Lightly grip the ends of the document stack in both hands, and flex it back and forth two or three times.



2. Rotate the documents 90 degrees, and fan again.
 3. Align the edges of the document sheets.
3. Load the documents into the ADF paper chute.
 1. Extend the ADF paper chute and adjust the side guides to hold the documents.



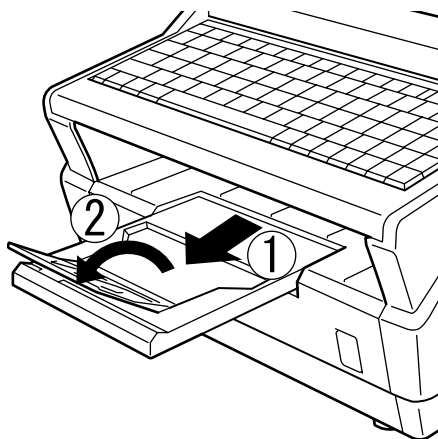
2. Load the documents face down. If only one side is to be scanned, it should face down in the ADF paper chute.



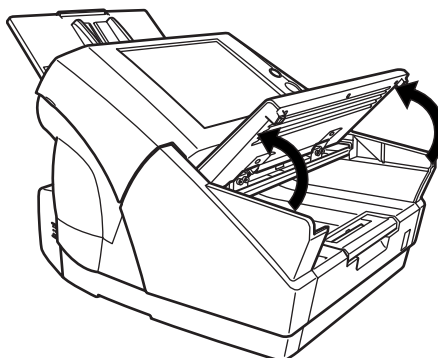
3. Adjust the side guides to the width of the documents.
Move the side guides so that they touch both sides of the documents.
If there is any space between the side guides and the edges of documents, the scanned data may be skewed.



- The output tray holds the document sheets after they have been scanned. It can be pulled out and adjusted to the size of the document being scanned.
 1. Pull out before scanning.
 2. The extension flap of output tray may also be lifted up, as shown in the figure below.



- Small documents may be retrieved by lifting up the keyboard after scanning has completed.



6.1.2 Loading Documents Using a Carrier Sheet

A Carrier Sheet is a plastic sheet specifically used for loading non-standard documents onto the scanner. It allows you to scan documents that cannot be scanned in the regular way. Also, documents larger than A4 size, such as A3 and B4, can be scanned by folding in half, inserting into the Carrier Sheet, and scanning in duplex mode. The scanned images will be merged output as one page. You can also merge both front and back side images of a document smaller than A4 size to output a double-page spread image.

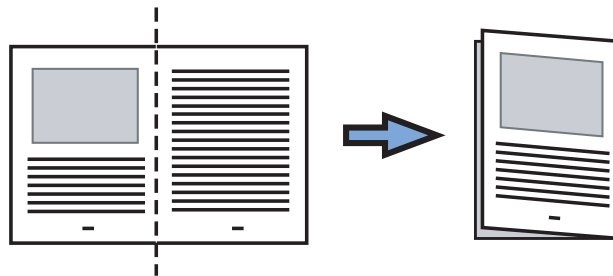


- When using a Carrier Sheet, set the size of the scanned document to be output. For more details, refer to ["6.8.1 Carrier Sheet" \(page 310\)](#).
- When a Carrier Sheet is used for scanning, continuous scanning is not possible. Scan one page at one time.



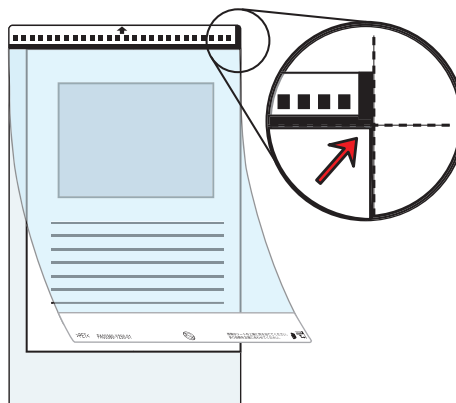
1. Fold the sheet to be scanned in half.

Fold the sheet tightly and smooth out the crease. Otherwise, the sheet may be skewed during scanning.



2. Open the Carrier Sheet and insert the document.

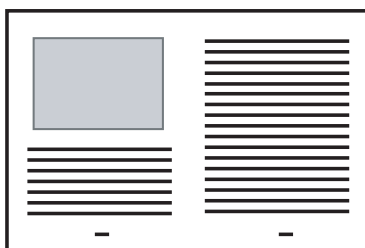
Align the fold with the right edge of the Carrier Sheet so that the document fits into the Carrier Sheet at the upper corner.



-
3. Load the Carrier Sheet with the black and white striped section (printed section) facing downwards as shown in the following figure.



4. Adjust the side guides to the width of the Carrier Sheet.
Adjust the side guides so that there is no space between the guides and the Carrier Sheet. Space between the guides and Carrier Sheet may cause the Carrier Sheet to become unaligned during scanning, and skew the scanned image.
5. Start the scan.
⇒ The front and back side images are merged into a double-page spread image.





There may be a gap between the front and back side images, or a line may appear on the output image.

When a sheet of thick paper is scanned, images on the both right and left side may be skewed to a trapezoidal shape.

The degree of skewing varies depending on the condition of the document (how it is folded or loaded).

Troubleshoot the problem as follows, and the situation may be improved.








- Is the document neatly folded? If not, fold it neatly.
- Is the edge of the document aligned with the edge of the Carrier Sheet? If not, align the document with the Carrier Sheet.
- Try to scan the document with the front side of the Carrier Sheet facing the paper chute or vice verse.

Also, the folded part of the document may be mis-detected, causing unintentional trimming of the scanned image. In this case, the folded edge of the document should be placed 1mm away from the edge of the Carrier Sheet.

6.2 Using Touch Panel Screens: Regular User

6.2.1 Common Buttons and Indicators

After the user logs in, the following buttons and indicators are shown on the touch panel screens.

Icon	Shown in manual as...	Used to ...
	[Up] button, [Down] button	Scroll up or down between items.
	[OK] button	Set the contents of the current screen.
	[Cancel] button	Cancel the contents of the current screen, or return to the previous screen.
	[Yes] button	If the color of the button is yellow, it means that the button is selected.
	[No] button	If the color of the button is blue, it means that the button is not selected.
	[Caps Lock] indicator	Indicate that the [Caps Lock] key has been set (on the keyboard).
	[Num Lock] indicator	Indicate that the [Num Lock] key has been set (on the keyboard).



If the [Logout] button or [Cancel] button is pressed before the [OK] button, the contents of the screen will not be set.

6.2.2 Regular User Settings Overview

Regular users can configure the following settings.

- **Login**
Set the scanner to automatically login without displaying the "Login" screen, when the scanner power is switched on or restarted.
Also, set whether or not to enable login with the guest account.
- **Initial Post-Login Menu**
Set whether to display the "Multi-Function Main Menu" or "Job Menu".
Switch between the "Multi-Function Main Menu" and "Job Menu", or display only the "Job Menu".
- **User Roaming Data**
If roaming mode is enabled, a regular user can login on different scanners while retaining their user data.
The following user data can be used in roaming mode.
 - "My List" e-Mail Address Books
 - Scan Settings
 - Name of the last network printer used
 - Name of the last network folder used
 If the same network printer/folder is not set for each scanner, the name of the latest one used is not shown.
- **Job Roaming Info**
Retain job settings managed on the Central Admin Server, when logging in to different scanners.

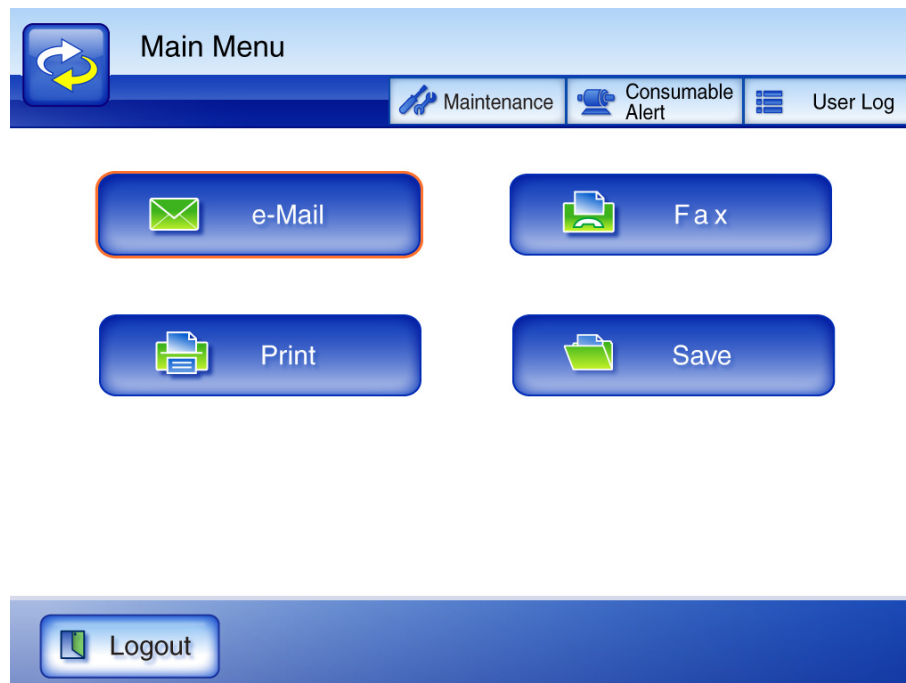




When Roaming Mode or Job Mode is [On], if communication with the Central Admin Server is not possible at login, a confirmation message will appear. If the [OK] button is selected, the settings saved in the scanner are used. Selecting the [Cancel] button returns to the login screen.











6.2.3 Main Menu Screen

The type of buttons (e-Mail/Fax/Print/Save) displayed on the main menu differs according to the settings of the relevant server.

The following describes the main menu according to settings for e-Mail, Fax, Print and Save.

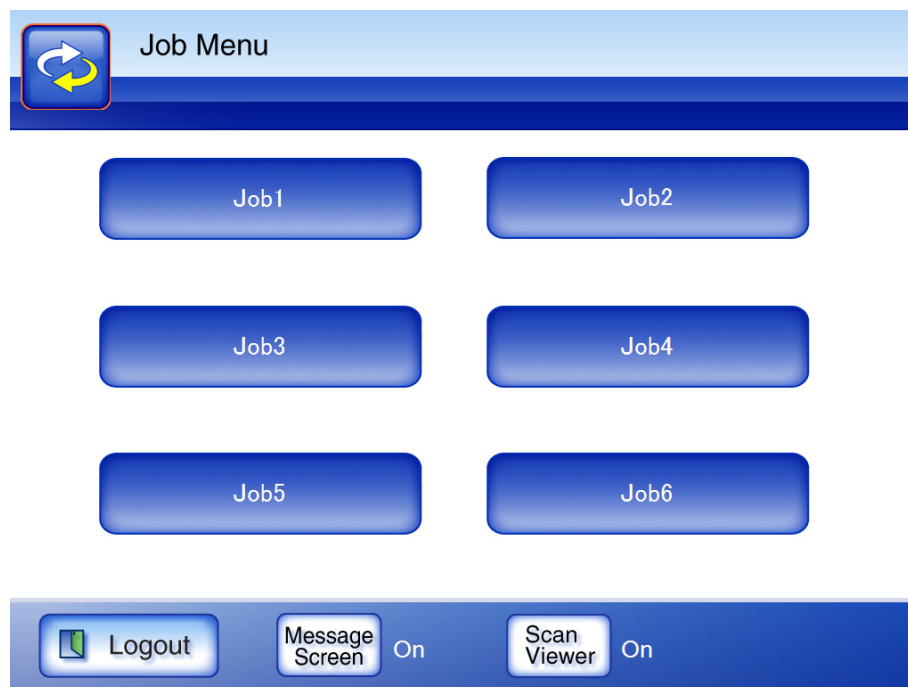






Icon	Shown in manual as...	Used to ...
	[Menu Mode] button	Switch between the "Multi-Function Main Menu" and the "Job Menu". For details, refer to "6.2.4 Job Menu Screen" (page 260) .
 Maintenance	[Maintenance] button	Access the "Maintenance" screen. For details, refer to "6.12 Maintenance" (page 348) .


Icon	Shown in manual as...	Used to ...
	[Consumable Alert] button	<p>Access the "Consumable Alert" screen. A colored alert indicator is used to warn that a "consumable replacement" is pending.</p>  <p>Replacement is not required.</p>  <p>Parts need to be replaced soon. Contact a system administrator.</p>  <p>Parts need to be replaced now. Replace the necessary part. For details, refer to "7.6 Replacing Parts" (page 367).</p>
	[User Log] button	<p>Access the "User Log" screen. For details, refer to "6.11 Checking the User Log" (page 346).</p>
	[e-Mail] button	<p>Access the "Send e-Mail" screen. For details, refer to "6.4 Sending the Scanned Data by e-Mail" (page 265).</p>
	[Fax] button	<p>Access the "Send Fax" screen. For details, refer to "6.5 Sending the Scanned Data by Fax" (page 277).</p>
	[Print] button	<p>Access the "Print" screen. For details, refer to "6.6 Printing the Scanned Data" (page 286).</p>
	[Save] button	<p>Access the "Save" screen. For details, refer to "6.7 Saving the Scanned Data to a Network Folder" (page 299).</p>
	[Logout] button	<p>Logout the current user.</p>

6.2.4 Job Menu Screen

The type of buttons displayed on the job menu differs according to the job settings. The following describes an example of a job menu according to job settings.



Icon	Shown in manual as...	Used to...
	[Menu Mode] button	Switch between the "Multi-Function Main Menu" and the "Job Menu". For more details refer to, " 6.2.3 Main Menu Screen " (page 258)
	[Job] button	Start the specified job process for each job button. For more details, refer to " 6.13 Processing a Job " (page 349).
	[Logout] button	Logout the current user.
	[Message Screen] button	Set whether or not the "Message Screen" for checking the job report. For more details, refer to " 6.13.1 Enabling/Disabling the Message Screen " (page 352).

Icon	Shown in manual as...	Used to...
	[Scan Viewer] button	Set whether or not to display the Scan Viewer screen during a scan. For more details, refer to " 6.9 Enabling/Disabling the Scan Viewer " (page 340).

6.2.5 Input Fields and Entering Characters

Only passwords for the following fields are case sensitive.

Screen	Field	See...
Login	Password	page 262
Authentication screen for setting a network printer	Password	page 286
Authentication screen for setting a network folder	Password	page 299
PDF Password	Password Confirm Password	page 323

6.3 Logging in: Regular User Mode



Do not move or shake the scanner when it is turned on.
This can damage the rotating hard disk drive and cause data to be lost.



LDAP (Active Directory) is used to perform user authentication for the scanner login. This allows either of the following two forms of login name to be specified in the user info. The scanner follows the Active Directory user name format when authenticating the user login.

User Name	Authentication Target
SAM Account Name Does not contain a "@"	Active Directory user login name (sAMAccountName). (sAMAccountName authentication process is performed) Example: user
User Principal Name Contains a "@"	Active Directory user login name (userPrincipalName). (userPrincipalName authentication process) Example: user@example.com

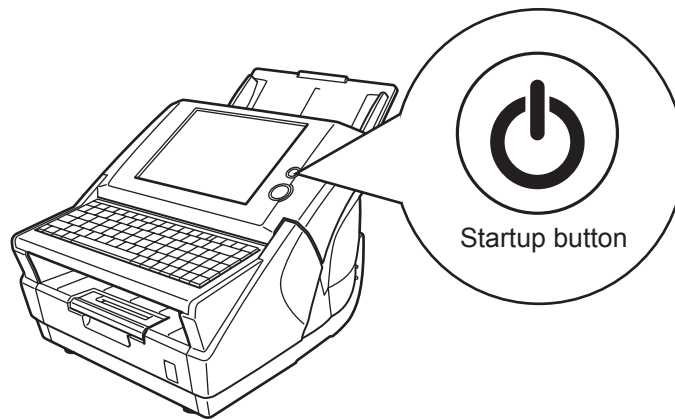
Note that the authenticated user info is also used when saving scans to a network folder. When the scanner is turned on or restarted, automatic login without displaying the "Login" screen is possible.

Login is not possible if the Active Directory account option is "User must change password at next logon". Contact an administrator to change a password, and then try logging in.



- When using the scanner without an LDAP server, enter the following user name and password. For details about the LDAP server, refer to ["LDAP Server" \(page 15\)](#).
User Name: guest
Password: guest
However this can not be used if login with the guest account is disabled.
- For details about automatic login or enabling login with the guest account, refer to ["4.6.7 Setting the Login Method" \(page 63\)](#).
- Only one administrator or user can login to the scanner at any one time.

1. Push the startup button.



⇒ The "Login" screen appears.

2. Enter a "User Name" and "Password" that has been stored in the LDAP server.

Login

Caps Lock Num Lock

User Name :

guest

Password :

Shutdown Login

Field Name	Description
User Name	User names may be up to 64 characters long. All alphanumerics (case sensitive) and some symbols are allowed. User names may not start with a "@" or ".". The following symbols cannot be used: / \ [] : ; = , + * ? < > "
Password	Passwords may be up to 256 characters long, and all alphanumerics (case sensitive) and symbols are allowed.



- The "Caps Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Caps Lock is set.
- The "Num Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Num Lock is set.
- If "Global Catalog" is selected for the login LDAP server, the "UPN Suffix" input field is displayed.

User names including a UPN suffix may be up to 64 characters long. If a UPN suffix is entered, "@" and the "UPN_suffix" will be appended to the "User_name".

The entered UPN suffix is remembered and used again at the next login. For example, if the user name is "user", and "example.com" is entered for the UPN suffix, it is corrected to "user@example.com".

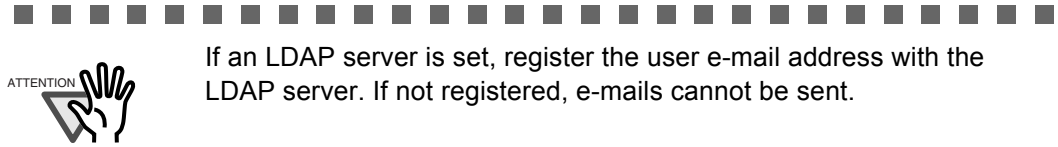
In this case, this is the "User Principal Name".

A UPN suffix is not required when logging in as a guest. Even if entered, it will be ignored.

3. Press the [Login] button.

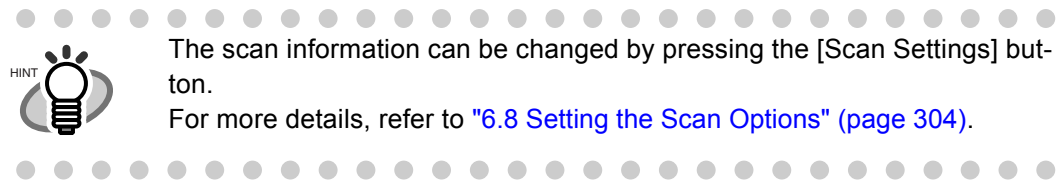
⇒ If the user name and password are valid, the "Main Menu" screen appears.

6.4 Sending the Scanned Data by e-Mail



1. On the "Main Menu" screen, press the [e-Mail] button.

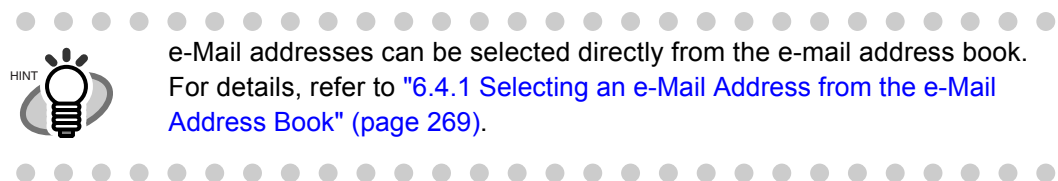
⇒ The "Send e-Mail" screen appears.



2. Enter e-mail addresses in "To", "Cc", and "Bcc" fields.

For more details about E-mail Address setting values, refer to ["B.1 e-Mail Address Setting Values" \(page 420\)](#).

To enter multiple addresses, separate each mail address with a ";". A scan can be sent to a maximum of 30 addresses at any one time.



Send e-Mail

Caps Lock
 Num Lock

To :

File Name :

F:\SCAN\71710000000010

Cc :

From :

Bcc :

Subject :

Body :

Cancel

Scan Settings

Default

Scan Viewer

On

Scan

-
3. Enter a file name for the scan data into the "File Name:" field.

File names may be up to 128 characters long, excluding the following symbols.

\ / : * ? " < > | { }

By default, "Scanner Name" + "Scan Date/Time" is entered.



The following file names cannot be used:

- CON
- PRN
- AUX
- CLOCK\$
- NUL
- COM0 to COM9
- LPT0 to LPT9



4. Check that address shown in the "From:" field is correct.

Direct input for this field is only possible if logged in with the guest account.

Enter a "From" e-mail address.

For details about the e-mail address settings, refer to ["B.1 e-Mail Address Setting Values" \(page 420\)](#).

If logged in with an account other than the guest account, the "From" input field is not shown, but the user e-mail address registered with the LDAP server is set for this field.

5. Enter an e-mail title into the "Subject:" field.

The subject may be up to 128 characters long.

6. Enter the e-mail contents into the "Body:" field.

The body may be up to 512 characters long, including line feeds.

7. Select whether or not to request a return receipt.



If  is pressed and becomes , a return receipt will be requested.



8. Press the [Scan] button.

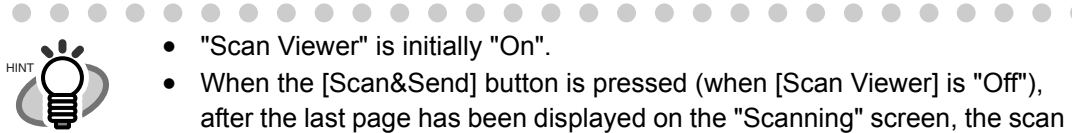
When [Scan Viewer] is Off, this will be a [Scan&Send] button.

⇒ Scanning starts.

Each page is briefly shown on the screen as it is scanned.

When the scan has completed, the "Scan Viewer" screen opens.

For more details about the "Scan Viewer" screen, refer to ["6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer" \(page 343\)](#).



- "Scan Viewer" is initially "On".
- When the [Scan&Send] button is pressed (when [Scan Viewer] is "Off"), after the last page has been displayed on the "Scanning" screen, the scan data is attached to an e-mail and sent, and the touch panel screen returns to the "Main Menu".

For more details, refer to ["6.9 Enabling/Disabling the Scan Viewer" \(page 340\)](#)



9. Check the scanned data.

For more details about the "Scan Viewer" screen, refer to ["6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer" \(page 343\)](#).

10. On the "Scan Viewer" screen, press the [Send] button.

⇒ The scanned data is sent with the specified file as an e-mail attachment.



Mailing scan data to cdef@example.com



⇒ The "Main Menu" screen is shown again.

6.4.1 Selecting an e-Mail Address from the e-Mail Address Book

As mentioned in [Step 2](#) of "6.4 Sending the Scanned Data by e-Mail" (page 265), instead of entering an e-mail address with keyboard, e-mail addresses may be directly selected from an e-mail address book.

The e-mail address book contains "My List" and "LDAP List" sections. Operations other than search operations for both sections are the same. The search method for "My List" is Anywhere. For "LDAP List" searches choose from Head, Anywhere, and Tail search methods.

The following explains how to select an e-mail address using the "LDAP List".

The LDAP list is an e-mail address book which uses data stored on the LDAP server.

If the LDAP server is not used, the [LDAP List] tab is not shown.

In the following cases, the [LDAP List] tab is not shown, therefore cannot be used.

- If an LDAP server is not used
- If logged in with the guest account



1. On the "Send e-Mail" screen, press the button to the right of the e-mail address field.

⇒ The "e-Mail Address Book" screen for the LDAP list appears.

2. Select the search parameter.

The search parameters and button names shown on the left and middle buttons can be customized. For details about customizing the search parameters and the button names, refer to ["4.7.10 Setting the LDAP Search Parameters" \(page 95\)](#).

Pressing the left or middle button displays the search results according to the search parameter shown on the button, in alphabetical order. If multiple items are selected, data containing any of the search words are searched as "OR Search".

Pressing the [e-Mail Address] button displays the search results by e-mail address, in alphabetical order.

3. Press the [Search Position] button.

⇒ The "Search Position" screen appears.

4. Select a search position setting.

By default, [Head (abc...)] is set.



Search Position	Search Method	Example Target	Search Result
Head (abc...)	The LDAP e-mail address book is searched for entries which start with the character string entered in Step 5 .	abc	abc, abc1, abcd, ...
Anywhere (...abc...)	The LDAP e-mail address book is searched for entries which include the character string entered in Step 5 .	abc	abc, abc1, xabc, xabcy, ...
Tail (...abc)	The LDAP e-mail address book is searched for entries which end with the character string entered in Step 5 .	abc	abc, 1abc, xabc, ...



When the LDAP server contains several tens of thousands of entries, "Anywhere" and "Tail" searches can take a long time.



⇒ The screen returns to the "e-Mail Address Book" LDAP list. The selected position is displayed to the right of the [Search Position] button.

5. Enter a search string.

Contacts can be searched for individually, or all at the same time. Search strings may be up to 256 characters long.

Wild card characters cannot be used. The actual characters * ? [] will be searched for.

6. Press the [Find] button.

⇒ The search results are displayed on the right side. Five results are displayed at a time.



- The number of LDAP search results displayed can be specified. LDAP server settings can be changed by the administrator. For details, refer to ["4.7.8 Setting the Login LDAP Server" \(page 88\)](#).
- If items are missing for search results according to the display format of the search results, "----" is shown instead. For example, if the display format is "LastName FirstName", and the user "LastName: Fujitsu, FirstName: None" is registered on the LDAP server, the search result is displayed as follows. Search result display format: Fujitsu ----
- Search methods differ for the My List and LDAP List. Therefore, search results differ according to the list selected.

Search Character	My List	LDAP List
Case	Insensitive	Insensitive
Diacritical/Accent marks	Sensitive	Insensitive

7. Select the desired e-mail address from the search results.



- Selecting an e-mail address and pressing the [+] button, can be used to add a selected e-mail address to an e-mail. To add multiple e-mail addresses, simply select another e-mail address and press the [+] button.
- Selecting an e-mail address and pressing the [Add to My List] button, adds the selected e-mail address to the "My List" e-mail address book.
- Selecting an e-mail address and pressing the [Details] button, allows you to check information for the selected e-mail contact.

e-Mail Address Details

Last Name	ABC
First Name	DEF
e-Mail Address	ABC@example.com
Common Name	ABC
Display Name	ABC



8. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The address is added to the field in the "Send e-Mail" screen.

When multiple e-mail addresses are entered using the e-mail address book, a ";" is automatically entered in between each address.

Up to 30 e-mail addresses can be entered at one time.

6.4.2 Adding a Contact to the e-Mail Address Book

The following explains how to add a contact to your My List. Contacts cannot be added to the LDAP list.

A maximum of 1,000 contacts can be stored in the e-mail address book. Once 1,000 contacts have been entered, no more can be added.

1. Open the "e-Mail Address Book" screen.

To access the "e-Mail Address Book" screen, on the "Send e-Mail" screen, press



the button to the right of an e-mail address field.

Or on the "Main Menu" screen, press the [Maintenance] button, then on the "Maintenance" screen, press the [Edit e-Mail Address] button. For details, refer to ["6.12 Maintenance" \(page 348\)](#).

2. Select the [My List] tab.

3. Press the [Add] button.

⇒ The "Add e-Mail Address" screen appears.

4. Enter the contact details.

First names and last names may be up to 64 characters long. Last name and/or first name may be skipped.

For more details about e-mail address setting values, refer to "[B.1 e-Mail Address Setting Values](#)" (page 420).

Add e-Mail Address

Caps Lock

Num Lock

First Name :

Last Name :

e-Mail Address :

Cancel

OK

5. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The address is added to your My List.

6.4.3 Editing a Contact in the e-Mail Address Book

The following explains how to edit a contact stored in your My List. Contacts stored in the LDAP list cannot be edited.

1. Open the "e-Mail Address Book" screen.

To access the "e-Mail Address Book" screen, on the "Send e-Mail" screen, press



the button to the right of an e-mail address field.

Or on the "Main Menu" screen, press the [Maintenance] button, then on the "Maintenance" screen, press the [Edit e-Mail Address] button. For details, refer to ["6.12 Maintenance" \(page 348\)](#).

2. Select the [My List] tab.
3. Select the contact that is to be edited.
4. Press the [Edit] button.
⇒ The "Edit e-Mail Address" screen appears.
5. Edit the contact information.

First names and last names may be up to 64 characters long. First name may be skipped.

For more details about E-mail Address setting values, refer to ["B.1 e-Mail Address Setting Values" \(page 420\)](#).

Edit e-Mail Address

Caps Lock
 Num Lock

First Name :

aaaaaaa

Last Name :

bbbbbb

e-Mail Address :

cdef@example.com

Cancel

OK

6. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ The edited e-mail address is saved in your My List address book.

6.4.4 Deleting a Contact from the e-Mail Address Book

The following explains how to delete a contact from your My List. Contacts stored in the LDAP list cannot be deleted.

1. Open the "e-Mail Address Book" screen.

To access the "e-Mail Address Book" screen, on the "Send e-Mail" screen, press



the button to the right of an e-mail address field.

Or on the "Main Menu" screen, press the [Maintenance] button, then on the "Maintenance" screen, press the [Edit e-Mail Address] button. For details, refer to ["6.12 Maintenance" \(page 348\)](#).

2. Select the [My List] tab.
3. Select the name of the contact address that is to be deleted.
4. Press the [Delete] button.
⇒ The "Delete e-Mail Address" screen appears.
5. Check the contact that is set to be deleted is the correct one and press the [OK] button.

Delete e-Mail Address

OK to delete the following data?

First Name : aaaaaaa

Last Name : bbbbbb

e-Mail Address : cdef@exampl...



 Cancel

 OK

⇒ The contact is deleted from the e-mail address book.

6.5 Sending the Scanned Data by Fax

1. On the "Main Menu" screen, press the [Fax] button.

⇒ The "Send Fax" screen appears.



The scan information can be changed by pressing the [Scan Settings] button.

For more details, refer to ["6.8 Setting the Scan Options" \(page 304\)](#).

2. Enter a fax number into the "Recipient Fax No." field.

Recipient fax numbers may be up to 64 digits long.

Numbers and the following symbols can also be used.

-*#



Recipient fax numbers can be selected directly from the fax number list.

For details, refer to ["6.5.1 Selecting a Fax Number from the Fax Number List" \(page 279\)](#).

3. In the "Notification To (Sender's e-Mail Address)" field, enter an e-mail address for Send Fax result alert e-mails.

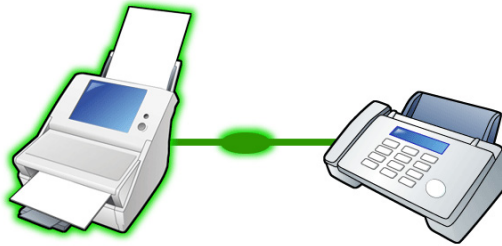
For more details about E-mail Address setting values, refer to ["B.1 e-Mail Address Setting Values" \(page 420\)](#).

4. Press the [Scan&Send] button.

When [Scan Viewer] is On, this will be a [Scan] button.

⇒ Scanning starts.

After the last page is displayed on the "Scanning" screen, the scan data is sent by fax, and the touch panel screen returns to the "Main Menu".



Faxing scan data to 123456789



- "Scan Viewer" is initially "Off".
- When the [Scan] button is pressed (when [Scan Viewer] is "On"), each page is briefly shown on the screen as it is scanned. When the scan has completed, the "Scan Viewer" screen opens. For more details about Scan Viewer, refer to ["6.9 Enabling/Disabling the Scan Viewer" \(page 340\)](#) and ["6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer" \(page 343\)](#).
- A delivery report message with the following title is sent by e-mail from the scanner to the "Notification To (Sender's e-Mail Address)" address.
Network Scanner (XXXX) Error

6.5.1 Selecting a Fax Number from the Fax Number List

As mentioned in [Step 2](#) of "6.5 Sending the Scanned Data by Fax" (page 277), instead of entering a fax number with keyboard, fax numbers may be directly selected from a fax number list.



1. On the "Send Fax" window, press .
⇒ The "Fax Number List" screen appears.

2. Select the search parameter.

Pressing the [Fax No.] button displays the search results by fax numbers, in number order.
Pressing the [Recipient] button displays the search results by recipient names, in alphabetical order.

Fax Number List

Caps Lock
 Num Lock

Recipient

Fax No.

Search Target :

Find

Search Position

Head
(abc...)

+ Add

/ Edit

Delete

Dwight David Eisenhower	1 / 1
John Fitzgerald Kennedy	
Lyndon Baines Johnson	
Rutherford Richard Hey	
Stephen Grover Cleveland	

▲

▼


Cancel

OK

3. Press the [Search Position] button.
⇒ The "Search Position" screen appears.

4. Select a search position setting.

By default, [Head (abc...)] is set.



Search Position	Search Method	Example Target	Search Result
Head (abc...)	The LDAP fax number list is searched for entries which start with the character string entered in Step 5 .	abc	abc, abc1, abcd, ...
Anywhere (...abc...)	The LDAP fax number list is searched for entries which include the character string entered in Step 5 .	abc	abc, abc1, xabc, xabcy, ...
Tail (...abc)	The LDAP fax number list is searched for entries which end with the character string entered in Step 5 .	abc	abc, 1abc, xabc, ...

⇒ The screen returns to the "Fax Number List". The selected position is displayed to the right of the [Search Position] button.

5. Enter a search string.

Contacts can be searched for individually, or all at the same time. A search string may be up to 64 characters long. Wild card characters cannot be used (the actual characters * ? [] will be searched for).

6. Press the [Find] button.

⇒ The search results are displayed on the right side. Five results are displayed at a time.

Fax Number List Caps Lock Num Lock

Recipient Fax No.

Search Target :
abc Find

Search Position Head (abc...)

abcdefg

1 / 1

+ Add Edit Delete

Cancel OK

7. Select a fax number.

8. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The fax number is added to the field in the "Send Fax" screen.


Only one fax number can be entered at a time.

6.5.2 Adding a Contact to the Fax Number List

A maximum of 1,000 contacts can be stored in the fax number list.
Fax contact numbers added to the list are accessible to all users.

1. Open the "Fax Number List" screen.



To access the "Fax Number List" screen, on the "Send Fax" screen, press  .
Or on the "Main Menu" screen, press the [Maintenance] button, then on the "Maintenance" screen, press the [Edit Fax Numbers] button. For details, refer to ["6.12 Maintenance" \(page 348\)](#).

2. Press the [Add] button.

The screenshot shows the 'Fax Number List' screen. At the top, there's a title bar with 'Fax Number List' and status indicators for 'Caps Lock' and 'Num Lock'. Below this is a green-bordered area containing a search section with 'Recipient' and 'Fax No.' buttons, a 'Search Target' input field, a 'Find' button, and a 'Search Position' dropdown set to 'Head (abc...)'. To the right of the search section is a list of five empty rows. At the bottom of the green area are '+ Add', 'Edit', and 'Delete' buttons. Below the green area is a blue bar with a 'Cancel' button and an 'OK' button with a green play icon.

⇒ The "Add Fax Number" screen appears.

3. Enter the fax contact details.

Recipients may be up to 64 characters long.

Fax numbers may be up to 64 digits long. Numbers and the following symbols can also be used.

-*#

Add Fax Number

Caps Lock


Num Lock

Recipient :

Fax No. :

Cancel

OK



4. Press the [OK] button.


⇒ The contact is added to the fax number list.

6.5.3 Editing a Contact in the Fax Number List

Fax contact numbers edited in the list are accessible to all users.

1. Open the "Fax Number List" screen.



To access the "Fax Number List" screen, on the "Send Fax" screen, press . Or on the "Main Menu" screen, press the [Maintenance] button, then on the "Maintenance" screen, press the [Edit Fax Numbers] button. For details, refer to ["6.12 Maintenance" \(page 348\)](#).

2. Select the fax contact that is to be edited.

3. Press the [Edit] button.
⇒ The "Edit Fax Number" screen appears.

4. Edit the contact information.

Recipients may be up to 64 characters long.

Fax numbers may be up to 64 digits long. Numbers and the following symbols can also be used.

-*#

Edit Fax Number

Caps Lock Num Lock

Recipient :

abcdefg

Fax No. :

123456789

Cancel

OK

5. Press the [OK] button.


⇒ The edited fax number list contact is saved.

6.5.4 Deleting a Contact from the Fax Number List

Fax contact numbers deleted from the list are no longer accessible to any user.

1. Open the "Fax Number List" screen.



To access the "Fax Number List" screen, on the "Send Fax" screen, press . Or on the "Main Menu" screen, press the [Maintenance] button, then on the "Maintenance" screen, press the [Edit Fax Numbers] button. For details, refer to ["6.12 Maintenance" \(page 348\)](#).

2. Select the fax contact that is to be deleted.
3. Press the [Delete] button.
⇒ The "Delete Fax Number" confirmation screen appears.
4. Check the contact that is set to be deleted is the correct one and press the [OK] button.

Delete Fax Number

OK to delete the following data?

Recipient : abcdefg

Fax No. : 123456789



 Cancel

 OK

⇒ The contact is deleted from the fax number list.

6.6 Printing the Scanned Data

1. On the "Main Menu" screen, press the [Print] button.

⇒ The "Print" screen appears.

Network printer preferences are saved for each user, and will be shown each time that user logs in.



The scan information can be changed by pressing the [Scan Settings] button.

For more details, refer to ["6.8 Setting the Scan Options" \(page 304\)](#).

2. To change the printer, press the [Select] button.

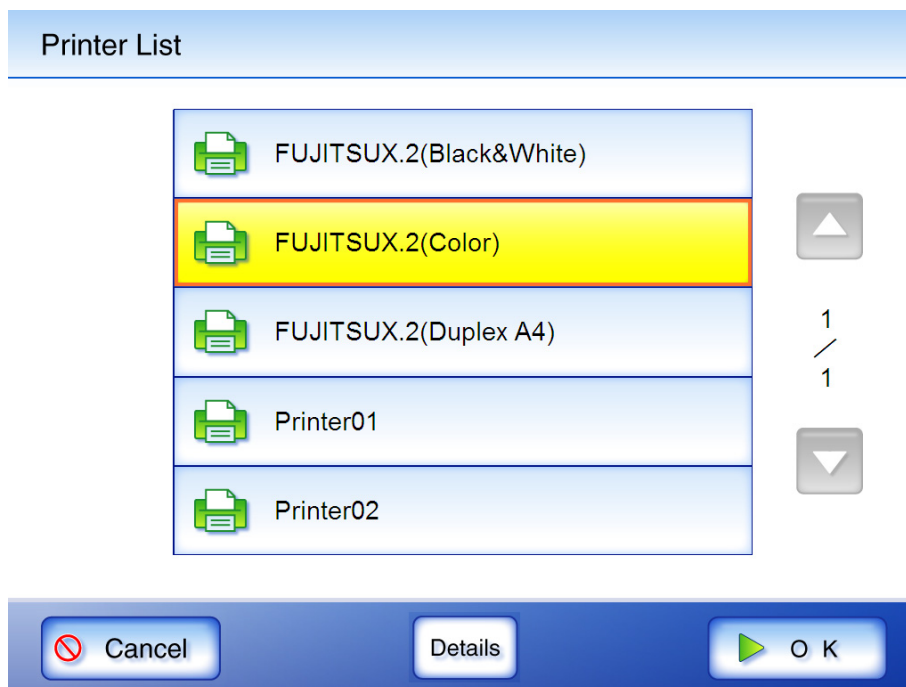
At the first login, the network printer registered by the administrator in "Printer" is displayed. After the first login, each time a user logs in, the name of the last network printer used is displayed.

⇒ The "Printer List" screen appears.

3. Select a printer.

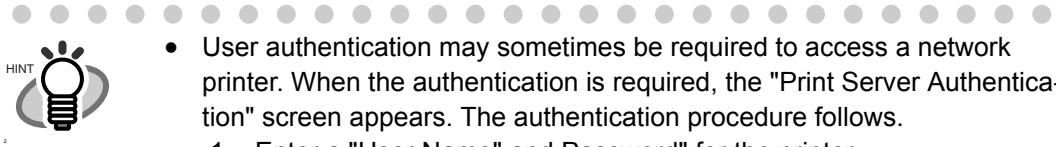


- Pressing the [Details] button on the "Printer List" screen, displays information about the selected network printer.
- Only the administrator may add printers to the list, or edit the details of printers already on the list. For more details about adding printers, refer to ["4.7.13 Setting the Network Printers" \(page 102\)](#).



4. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ This returns you to the "Print" screen.

4. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ This returns you to the "Print" screen.



- User authentication may sometimes be required to access a network printer. When the authentication is required, the "Print Server Authentication" screen appears. The authentication procedure follows.
 1. Enter a "User Name" and Password" for the printer.

Print Server Authentication

Caps LockNum Lock

User Name :

Password :

Cancel

OK

- 2. Press the [OK] button.
- Current user printing privileges for the specified printer are checked before printing. When printing privileges are being checked, data may be spooled temporarily.

5. Make any required print setting changes.

[Scaling], [Positioning], and [Simplex/Duplex] settings can be changed. For more details refer to "6.6.1 Scaling" (page 291), "6.6.2 Positioning" (page 296), and "6.6.3 Simplex/Duplex" (page 298).

To return to the print setting to the factory settings, press the [Default] button.

According to the printer, settings from the printers properties screen may be used instead.

6. Enter a number in "No. of Copies" field.

The default number is 1. Numbers from 1 to 99 can be used.

According to the printer, settings from the printers properties screen may be used instead.

7. Press the [Scan] button.

When [Scan Viewer] is Off, this will be a [Scan&Print] button.

⇒ Scanning starts.

Each page is briefly shown on the screen as it is scanned.

The maximum number of pages that can be scanned is 100.

However, more pages can be scanned if blank pages are skipped, up to the maximum number of pages allowed.

When the scan has completed, the "Scan Viewer" screen opens.

For more details about the "Scan Viewer" screen, refer to ["6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer" \(page 343\)](#).



- The default setting of [Scan Viewer] is "On".
- When the [Scan&Print] button is pressed (when [Scan Viewer] is "Off"), after the last page is displayed on the "Scanning" screen, the scan data is printed, and the touch panel screen returns to the "Main Menu". For details, refer to ["6.9 Enabling/Disabling the Scan Viewer" \(page 340\)](#).
- Current user printing privileges for the specified printer are checked before printing. When printing privileges are being checked, data may be spooled temporarily.

8. Check the scanned data.

For more details about the "Scan Viewer" screen, refer to ["6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer" \(page 343\)](#).

-
9. On the "Scan Viewer" screen, press the [Print] button.

⇒ The scanned data is printed.

The document name for the scanned data to be printed is the name of the scanner.



Printing scan data on FUJITSUX.2(Color)



The printing status is displayed in the user log until printing has finished.
The network printer printing result is not displayed. For more details
about the user log, refer to ["6.11 Checking the User Log" \(page 346\)](#).



If the printing fails, an error message with the following title is sent by e-mail from the scanner, to the e-mail address registered in the LDAP server for the currently logged-in user.

Network Scanner (XXXX) Error

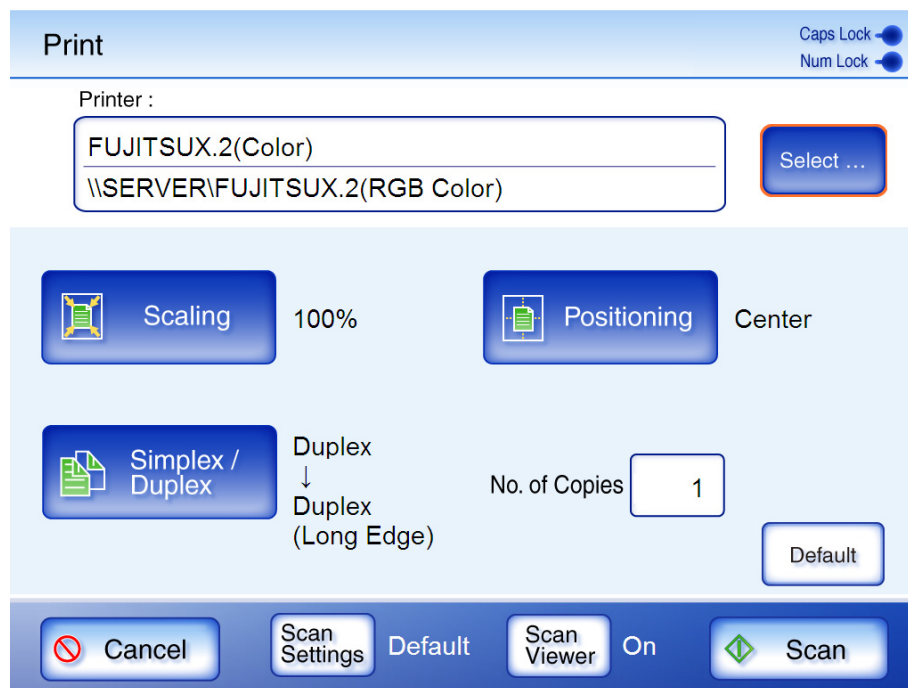


6.6.1 Scaling

Set the print size for the scanned data.

The setting selected here will be used every time the user prints a document.

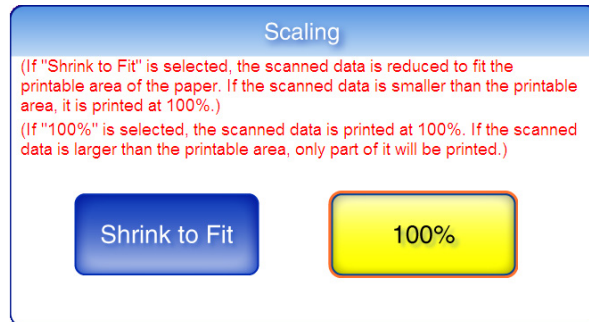
1. Press the [Scaling] button.



⇒ The "Scaling" screen appears.

2. Select the print scale of the data.

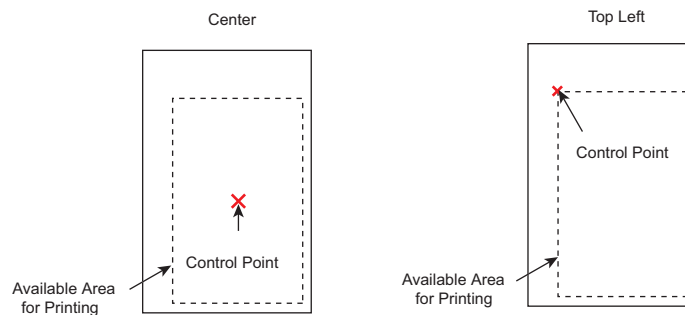
By default, this is "100%".



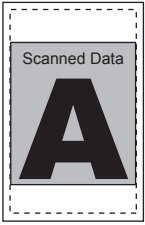





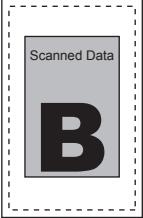
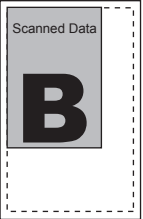



- **Shrink to Fit**

The image is reduced so that the entire image fits into the area available for printing (area inside the dotted line). Further enlargement is not possible.

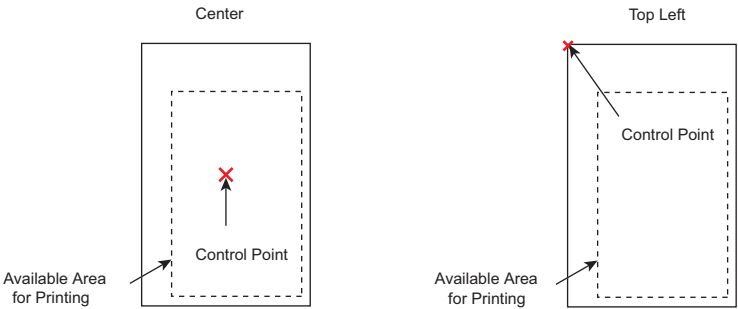
If the positioning setting is "Center", the control point for printing is the center point of the area available for printing. If the positioning setting is "Top Left", the control point for printing is the top left corner of the area available for printing. For more details on the positioning setting, refer to ["6.6.2 Positioning" \(page 296\)](#).






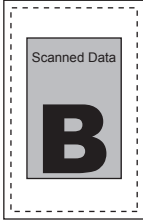
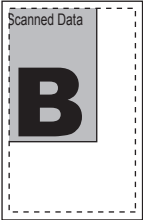





Print Sheet	Scanned Data	Positioning	Result
Small 	Large 	Center	
		Top Left	

Print Sheet	Scanned Data	Positioning	Result
Large 	Small 	Center	
		Top Left	
Same 	Same 	Center	
		Top Left	

- 100%
 The image is printed at full scale, regardless of the paper size.
 If the positioning setting is "Center", the control point for printing is the center point of the print sheet. If the positioning setting is "Top Left", the control point for printing is the top left corner of the print sheet. For more details on the positioning setting, refer to ["6.6.2 Positioning"](#) (page 296).



Print Sheet	Scanned Data	Positioning	Result
Small 	Large 	Center	
		Top Left	
Large 	Small 	Center	
		Top Left	

Print Sheet	Scanned Data	Positioning	Result
<div>Same</div> <div></div>	<div>Same</div> <div></div>	Center	<div></div>
		Top Left	

⇒ This returns to the "Print" screen. The selected scaling setting is displayed to the right of the [Scaling] button.



- Nothing is printed in the margin set in the printer settings.
If edge cropping has been set, the width of the edge cropping setting may be larger than the margin set in the printer settings. For more details, refer to ["6.8.18 Edge Cropping" \(page 338\)](#).
- If "Shrink to Fit" is set, the edge cropping area is not included in the print data.
If "100%" is set, the edge cropping area is included in the print data.
- When "Shrink to Fit" is set, the printing result may differ from the original document since the starting position or available area of printing depends on each individual printer.



6.6.2 Positioning

Set the print position of the scanned data.

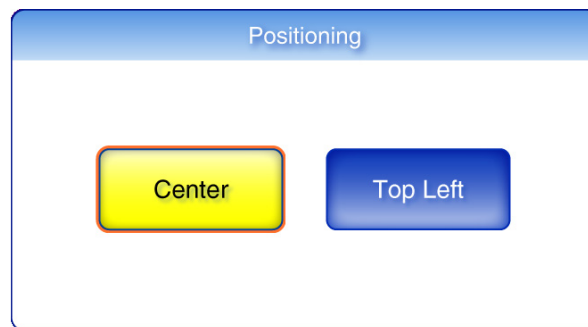
The setting selected here will be used every time the user prints a document.

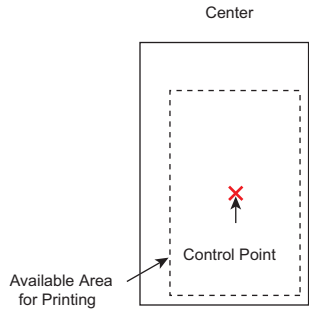
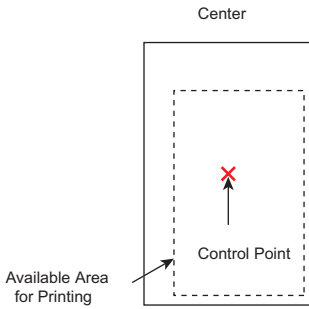
1. Press the [Positioning] button.

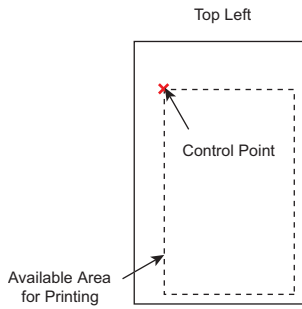
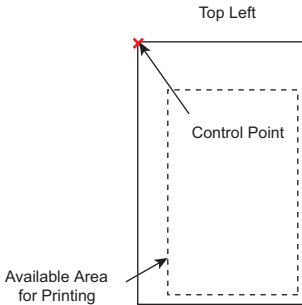
⇒ The "Positioning" screen appears.

2. Select the print positioning of the data.

By default, this is "Center".



Button	Scaling	Control Point
Center	Shrink to Fit	<p>Uses the center point of the area available for printing as a control point.</p> 
	100%	<p>Uses the center point of the sheet as a control point.</p> 

Button	Scaling	Control Point
Top Left	Shrink to Fit	<p>Uses the top left corner of the area available for printing as a control point.</p> 
	100%	<p>Uses the top left corner of the print sheet as a control point.</p> 

For more details on the print scaling setting, refer to ["6.6.1 Scaling" \(page 291\)](#).

⇒ This returns to the "Print" screen. The selected positioning setting is displayed to the right of the [Positioning] button.

6.6.3 Simplex/Duplex

Set whether to print on one side (simplex mode) or both sides (duplex mode).

1. Press the [Simplex/Duplex] button.

⇒ The "Simplex/Duplex" screen appears.

2. Select a print mode.

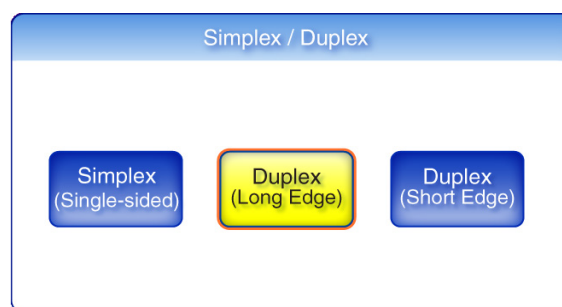
Initially, this setting is "Duplex (Long Edge)".

"Long Edge" means that sheets are flipped vertically for printing.

"Short Edge" means that sheets are flipped horizontally for printing.



According to the printer, settings from the printers properties screen may be used instead.



⇒ This returns you to the "Print" screen.

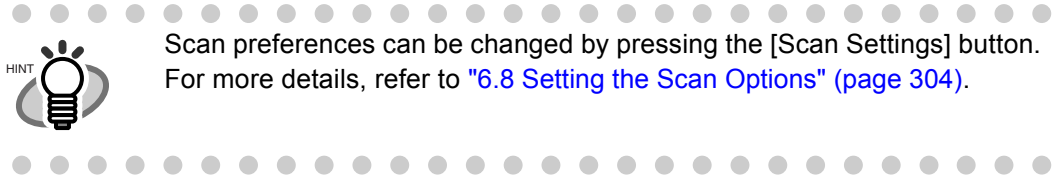
The selected mode is displayed to the right of the [Simplex/Duplex] button.

6.7 Saving the Scanned Data to a Network Folder

1. On the "Main Menu" screen, press the [Save] button.

⇒ The "Save" screen appears.

Network folder preferences are saved for each user, and will be shown each time that user logs in.



2. Press the [Select] button.



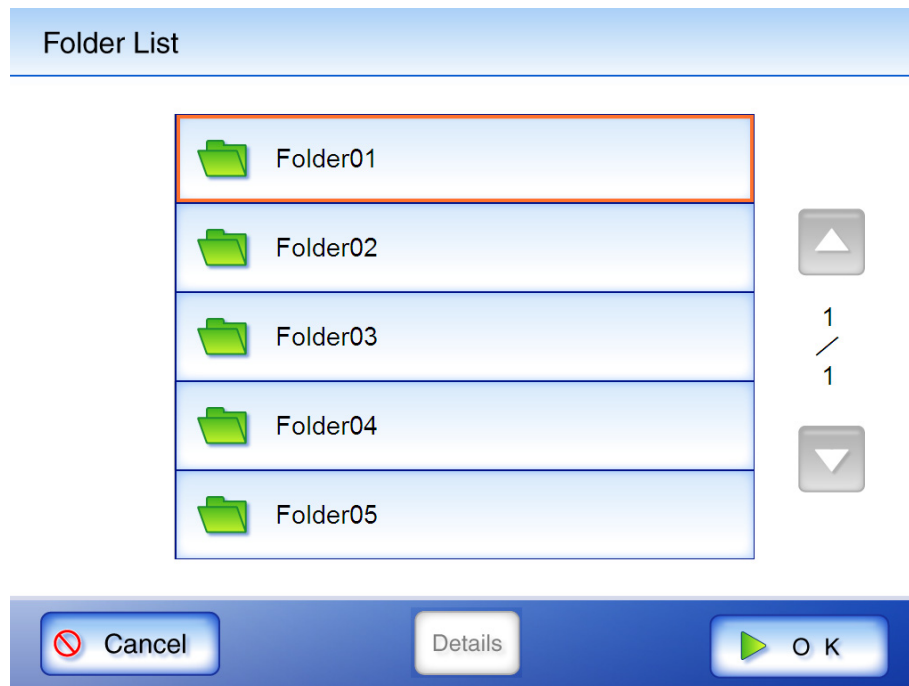
⇒ "The "Folder List" screen appears.

3. Select a network folder.



- On the "Folder List" screen, select a folder and press the [Details] button to view the details of the selected network folder. If a folder path is too long for one line, the path will be automatically split into subsequent lines.
- Only network folders which are in the list may be selected. Only the administrator may add folders to the list, or edit the details of folders already on the list.

For more details about adding network folders, refer to ["4.7.14 Setting the Network Folders" \(page 115\)](#).



4. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ This returns you to the "Save" screen.



User authentication may sometimes be required to access the file server. If authentication is required, the "File Server Authentication" screen appears. The authentication procedure is as follows.

1. Enter a "User Name" and "Password" for the file server.

2. Press the [OK] button.

5. In the "Save as:" field, enter a file name for the scanned data to be saved.

File names may be up to 128 characters long, excluding the following symbols. \ and / are used as folder separator characters.

: * ? " < > |

The default setting is the file name set on the administrator "File Names" screen.

For more details, refer to ["4.6.9 Setting a File Name Format" \(page 67\)](#).



- The following file names cannot be used:
 - CON
 - PRN
 - AUX
 - CLOCK\$
 - NUL
 - COM0 to COM9
 - LPT0 to LPT9
- If the file format is changed in "Scan Settings", the file name set on the "File Names" screen is reset in the "Save As" field.



6. Select if existing files with the same name are to be overwritten.

The default setting is [No].

If a file name already exists on the network, the existing file will not be overwritten and the scanned data will be lost. Whether or not the file was successfully saved can be checked in the user log.

For more details about accessing the user log, refer to ["6.11 Checking the User Log" \(page 346\)](#).

7. Press the [Scan] button.

When [Scan Viewer] is Off, this will be a [Scan&Save] button.

⇒ Scanning starts.

Each page is briefly shown on the screen as it is scanned.

When the scan has completed, the "Scan Viewer" screen opens.

For more details about the "Scan Viewer" screen, refer to ["6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer" \(page 343\)](#).



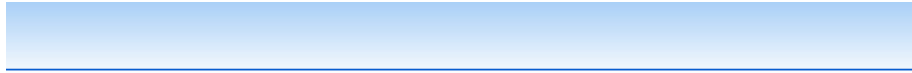
- "Scan Viewer" is initially "On".
 - When the [Scan&Save] button is pressed (when [Scan Viewer] is "Off"), after the last page is displayed on the "Scanning" screen, the scan data is saved, and the touch panel screen returns to the "Main Menu".
- For more details, refer to ["6.9 Enabling/Disabling the Scan Viewer" \(page 340\)](#).

8. Check the scanned data.

For more details about the "Scan Viewer" screen, refer to ["6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer" \(page 343\)](#).

9. On the "Scan Viewer" screen, press the [Save] button.

⇒ The specified file name is used to save the scanned data in the selected network folder.



Saving scan data in Folder01



⇒ The "Main Menu" screen is shown again.

HINT

If the saving to the network folder fails, an error message with the following title is sent by e-mail from the scanner to the e-mail address registered in the LDAP server for the currently logged-in user.

Network Scanner (XXXX) Error

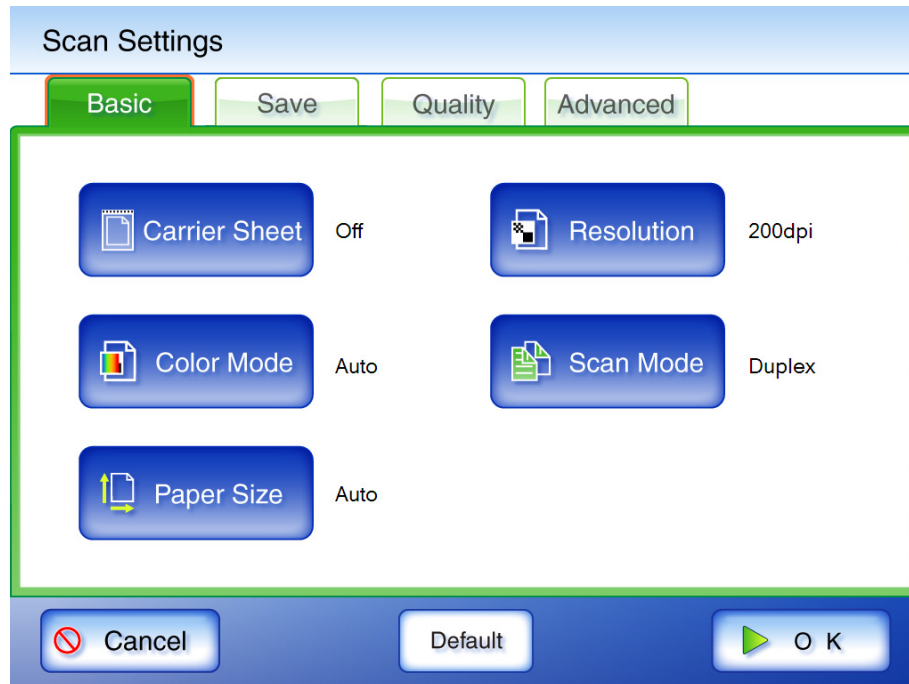
6.8 Setting the Scan Options

On the following screens, press the [Scan Settings] button to access the "Scan Settings" screens.

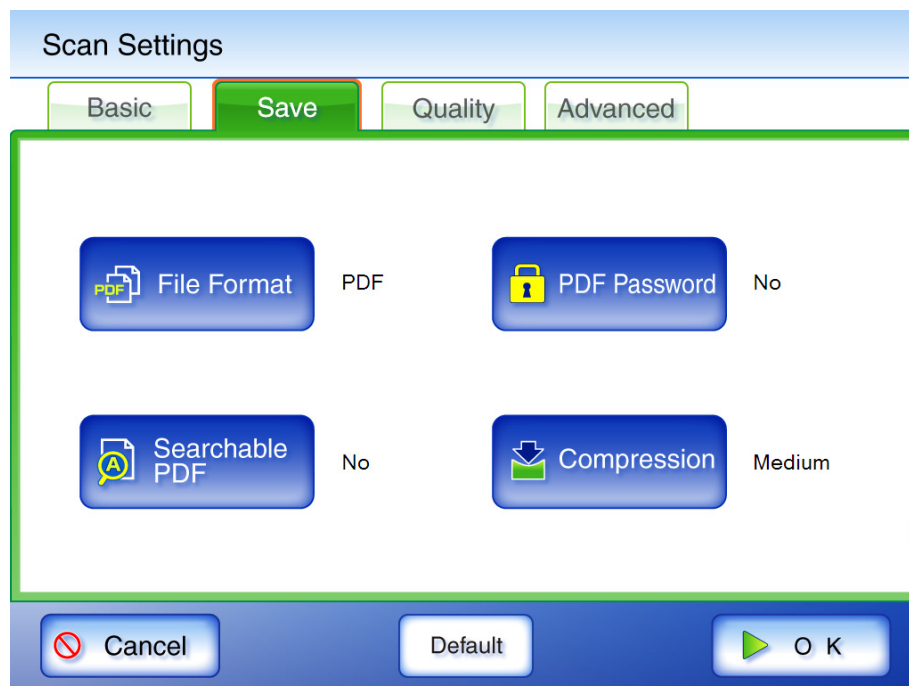
- "Send e-Mail" screen
- "Send Fax" screen
- "Print" screen
- "Save" screen

The "Scan Settings" screen contains the following items.

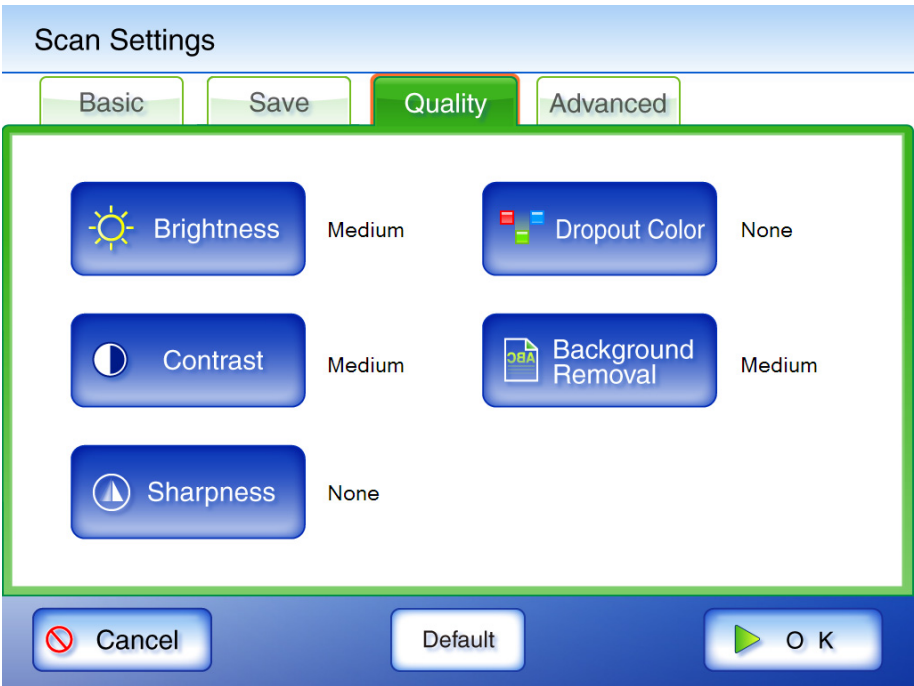
- [Basic] tab



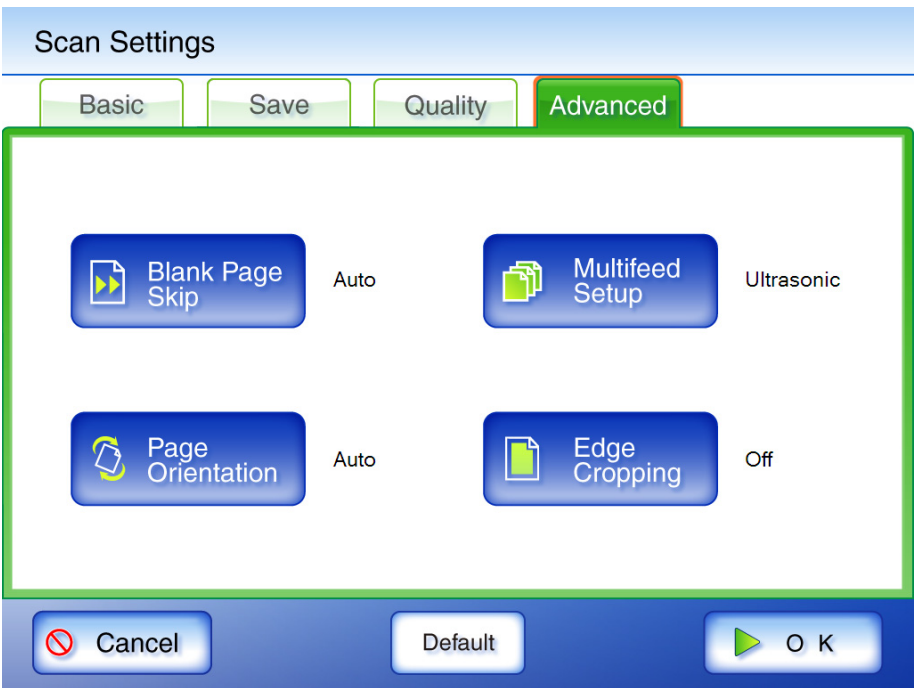
- [Save] tab



- [Quality] tab



- [Advanced] tab



The following two classes of setting options are available.

- **Default**
These are the factory settings. To put a high priority on the scan speed, press the [Default] button.
- **Custom**
This is shown when the user has customized any scanning preferences from the "Default" option.
Press each scan option button to set it as desired.
Function settings (for e-Mail, Fax, Print, Save) are saved for each user, and will be used each time that user logs in.
For details, refer to the sections from ["6.8.1 Carrier Sheet" \(page 310\)](#) onward.

The following scan option settings are used if the Default settings are selected.

Tab	Option	Default				When Custom, see...
		e-Mail	Fax	Print	Save	
Basic	Carrier Sheet	Off	Off	Off	Off	page 310
	Color Mode	Auto	Black & White	Auto	Auto	page 311
	Paper Size	Auto	Auto	Auto	Auto	page 312
	Resolution	200dpi	200dpi	200dpi	200dpi	page 316
	Scan Mode	Duplex	Duplex	Duplex	Duplex	page 317
Save	File Format	PDF	TIFF(*)	JPEG(*)	PDF	page 318
	Searchable PDF	No	No(*)	No(*)	No	page 320
	PDF Password	No	No(*)	No(*)	No	page 323
	Compression	Medium	Medium(*)	Low(*)	Medium	page 325
Quality	Brightness	Medium	Medium	Medium	Medium	page 328
	Contrast	Medium	Medium	Medium	Medium	page 329
	Sharpness	None	None	None	None	page 330
	Dropout Color	None	None	None	None	page 331
	Background Removal	Medium	Medium	Medium	Medium	page 332
Advanced	Blank Page Skip	Auto	Auto	Off	Auto	page 333
	Page Orientation	Auto	Off	Off(*)	Auto	page 334
	Multifeed Setup	Ultrasonic	Ultrasonic	Ultrasonic	Ultrasonic	page 337
	Edge Cropping	Off	Off	Off	Off	page 338

(*): Fixed value. Cannot be changed.



- The selected setting is displayed to the right of each button.
- Settings changed before the previous logout are shown by red characters for each regular user.
- When the "Scan Settings" screen is opened from the "Send Fax" or "Print" screen, the [Save] tab is not displayed.

Setting these scan options may influence other scan settings items.

- Setting an option may cause other option settings to become invalid.
- Other option settings may cause these option settings to become invalid.

Scan option settings may be influenced in the following ways.

Tab	Option		Setting which become invalid	Conditions of setting which become invalid
Basic	Carrier Sheet		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paper Size • Resolution, "600dpi" • Scan Mode • Brightness • Contrast • Dropout Color • Background Removal • Blank Page Skip • Page Orientation, other than "Auto" • Multifeed Setup 	—
	Color Mode	Auto	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paper Size, long page mode • JPEG file format • Dropout Color 	—
		RGB Color	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dropout Color 	—
		Grayscale	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dropout Color, "None" (when Resolution is "600dpi") • High Compression for Color PDF 	—
		Black & White	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • JPEG file format • Compression 	—

Tab	Option		Setting which become invalid	Conditions of setting which become invalid
Basic	Paper Size	Auto	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Resolution, "600dpi" 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet
		Long Page Mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Resolution, "600dpi" Searchable PDF Blank Page Skip Page Orientation Multifeed Setup 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet Color Mode, "Auto"
		Other than Auto and Long Page Mode	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet
	Resolution	600dpi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Searchable PDF, "All Pages" and "Pages" High Compression for Color PDF Dropout Color, "None" (when Color Mode is "Grayscale") Page Orientation, other than "Auto" 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet Paper Size, "Auto" and long page mode
		Other than 600dpi	—	—
	Scan Mode		—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet
Save	File Format	PDF	—	—
		JPEG	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Searchable PDF PDF Password lock 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Color Mode, "Auto" or "Black & White"
		TIFF MTIFF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compression, "High Compression for Color PDF" 	—
	Searchable PDF	First Page	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Paper Size, long page mode Other than PDF output file format
		All Pages Pages	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Paper Size, long page mode Other than PDF output file format Resolution, "600dpi"
	Require PDF Password		—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Other than PDF output file format

Tab	Option		Setting which become invalid	Conditions of setting which become invalid
Save	Compression	High Compression for Color PDF	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Color Mode, "Grayscale" or "Black & White" Other than PDF output file format Resolution, "600dpi"
		Other than High Compression for Color PDF	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Color Mode, "Black & White"
Quality	Brightness		—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet
	Contrast		—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet
	Sharpness		—	—
	Dropout Color	None	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet Color Mode, "Auto" or "RGB Color" Resolution, "600dpi" (when Color Mode is "Grayscale")
		Other than None	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet Color Mode, "Auto" or "RGB Color"
	Background Removal		—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet
Advanced	Blank Page Skip		—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet Paper Size, long page mode
	Page Orientation	Auto	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Paper Size, long page mode
		Other than Auto	—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet Paper Size, long page mode Resolution, "600dpi"
	Multifeed Setup		—	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Carrier Sheet Paper Size, long page mode
	Edge Cropping		—	—

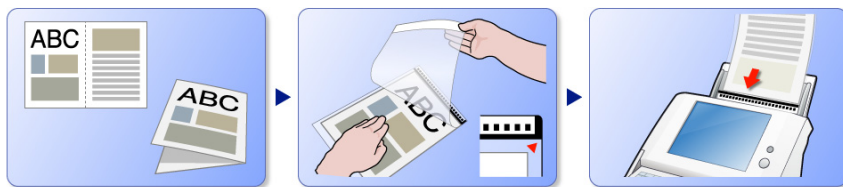
6.8.1 Carrier Sheet

Set whether or not to use a Carrier Sheet. If a Carrier Sheet is to be used, set the output size of the scanned image.

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Basic] tab.
2. Press the [Carrier Sheet] button.
⇒ The "Carrier Sheet Output Image Size" screen appears.
3. If a Carrier Sheet is to be used, select the output size for the scanned image.

Carrier Sheet Output Image Size

When this option is used, the front and back scans are stitched together into a single image.



Fold the oversize document being scanned, and fully insert it into the carrier sheet, with the fold against the edge with the thick line.



Carrier Sheet Setup	Status
Off	Scan without using a Carrier Sheet
A3	Scan with a Carrier Sheet, and output as A3 size (297mm x 420mm)
B4	Scan with a Carrier Sheet, and output as B4 size (257mm x 364mm)
11" × 17"	Scan with a Carrier Sheet, and output as a "11 x 17 inch" size (279.4mm × 431.8mm)

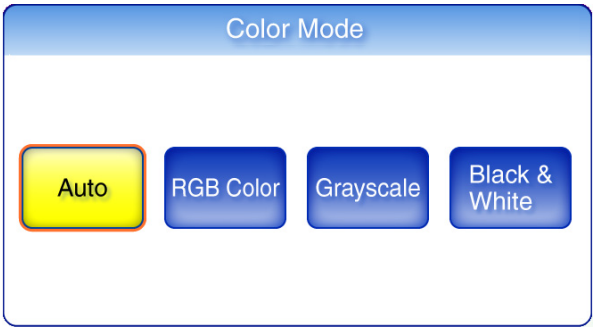
*: All paper sizes are of portrait orientation.

⇒ This returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected setting is displayed to the right of the [Carrier Sheet] button.

6.8.2 Color Mode

Set whether the document is scanned in "color" or "black and white".

- 1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Basic] tab.
- 2. Press the [Color Mode] button.
⇒ The "Color Mode" screen appears.
- 3. Select the color mode.



Color Mode	Description
Auto	Automatically decides whether to scan in color or in black and white based on document contents.
RGB Color	Scans documents in color.
Grayscale	Scans documents in grayscale.
Black & White	Scans documents in black and white.

⇒ Selecting a color mode returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen.
The selected mode is displayed to the right of the [Color Mode] button.

HINT

Usually, the color mode should be set as [Auto].
If this setting is specified, there is no need to change the color mode each time you scan a document.
Note that black and white mode may be automatically selected for the following kinds of documents:

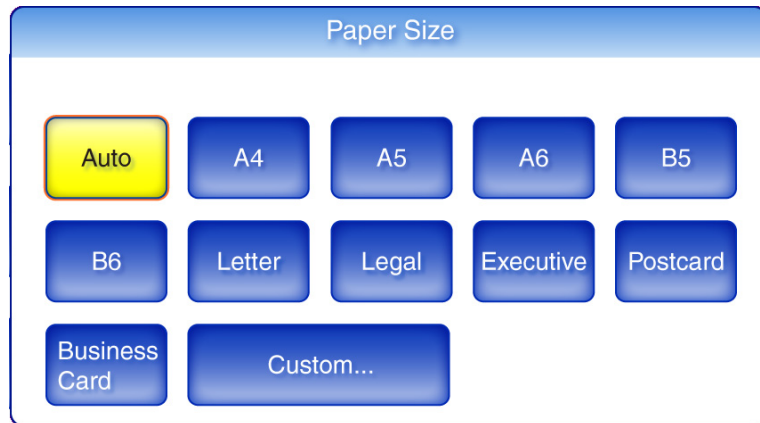
- Faintly toned nonwhite papers
- Documents with only a minor amount of color
- Documents printed in gray or other close-to-black colors.

To ensure such documents are scanned in color mode, press the [RGB Color] button on the "Color Mode" screen.

6.8.3 Paper Size

Set a paper size for the scan data.

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Basic] tab.
2. Press the [Paper Size] button.
⇒ The "Paper Size" screen appears.
3. Select a paper size for the scan data.



Button	Paper size (mm)	Button	Paper size (mm)
A4	210 × 297	Letter	215.9 × 279.4
A5	148 × 210	Legal	215.9 × 355.6
A6	105 × 148	Executive	184.2 × 266.7
B5	182 × 257	Postcard	100 × 148
B6	128 × 182	Business Card	51 × 89

*: All paper sizes are of portrait orientation.

⇒ Selecting a paper size returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected size is displayed to the right of the [Paper Size] button.



When the [Auto] setting is used, the paper size is set to the same size (Maximum: 215.9mm × 355.6mm) as the actual document being scanned. However, if using any of the following types of documents, the automatic paper size detection may not function correctly:

- Paper of weight less than 52g/m² (14lb)
- Documents that are not rectangular
- Documents with margins that are filled with dark colors





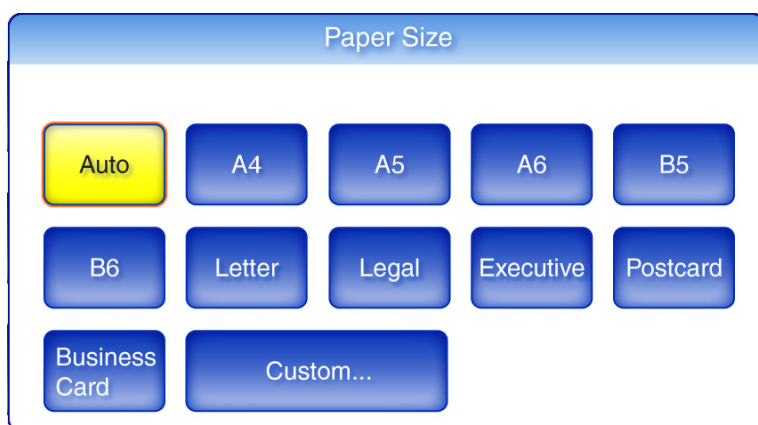
- If a paper size other than [Auto] is selected and only one side of the documents is scanned, artwork on the reverse side of the paper may bleed through onto the front side scan. If this happens, blank pages may not be recognized as such, and thus may not be skipped by the "Skip Blank Page" function. For more details, refer to ["6.8.15 Blank Page Skip" \(page 333\)](#).
- When [Custom] settings are used, any paper size for the scan data can be specified.
 1. Press the [Custom] button.
⇒The "Custom Paper Size" screen appears.
 2. Enter the paper size for the scan data.
The size ranges that can be set are:
Width: 2in to 8.5in (50.8mm to 216mm)
Height: 2.91in to 14in (74mm to 355.6mm)
If the height is 14in or longer, the paper size setting must be set to allow long pages. For more details, refer to ["Long Page Mode" \(page 314\)](#).

3. Press the [OK] button.
⇒The custom paper size is set.

■ Long Page Mode

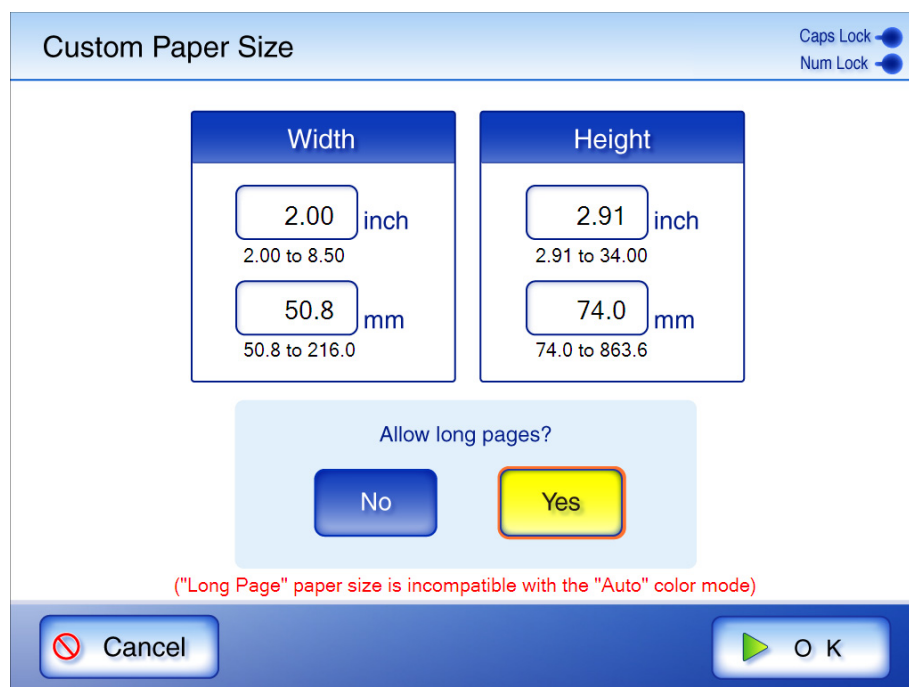
When scanning pages which are longer than standard documents, the "Allow long pages" setting must be specified.

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Basic] tab.
2. Press the [Paper Size] button.
⇒ The "Paper Size" screen appears.
3. Press the [Custom] button.



⇒ The "Custom Paper Size" screen appears.

4. For "Allow long pages?", press the [Yes] button.



5. Enter the paper size for the scan data.

The size ranges that can be set are:

Width: 2in to 8.5in (50.8mm to 216mm)

Height: 2.91in to 34in (74mm to 863.6mm).

6. Press the [OK] button.

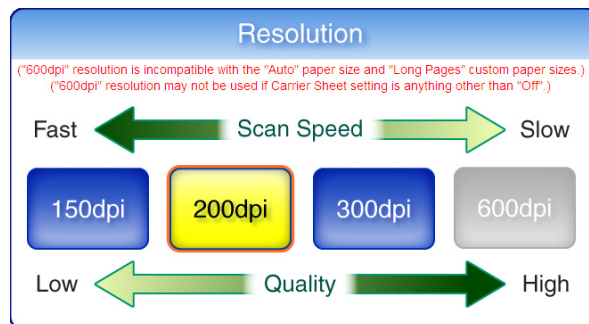
⇒ This returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. "Custom" is displayed to the right of the [Paper Size] button.

6.8.4 Resolution

Changing the resolution level affects the scan data in the following ways.

	High resolution	Low resolution
Scan speed	Slow	Fast
Scan quality	High	Low
File size	Large	Small

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Basic] tab.
2. Press the [Resolution] button.
⇒ The "Resolution" screen appears.
3. Select a resolution level.

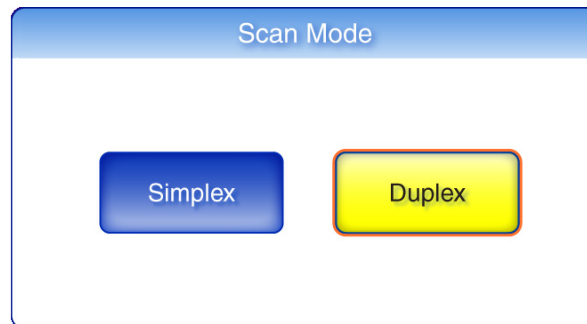


⇒ Selecting a resolution level returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected level is displayed to the right of the [Resolution] button.

6.8.5 Scan Mode

Set whether one side or both sides of documents are scanned.

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Basic] tab.
2. Press the [Scan Mode] button.
⇒ The "Scan Mode" screen appears.
3. Select [Simplex] if only the front sides of the documents are to be scanned. Select [Duplex] if both front and reverse sides are to be scanned.



⇒ Selecting a scan mode returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected mode is displayed to the right of the [Scan Mode] button.

6.8.6 File Format

Set the file format for the scan data.

For some scan settings, it may not be possible to select certain file formats.

Option	PDF	JPEG	TIFF	MTIFF
Searchable PDF	A	—	—	—
PDF Password	A	—	—	—
Compression	A (*1)	A	A (*1)	A (*1)

A: Format can be used, —: Format cannot be used

(*1): Can only be used if the "Color Mode" is [Auto] or [RGB Color]

Compression also differs for certain file formats as follows:

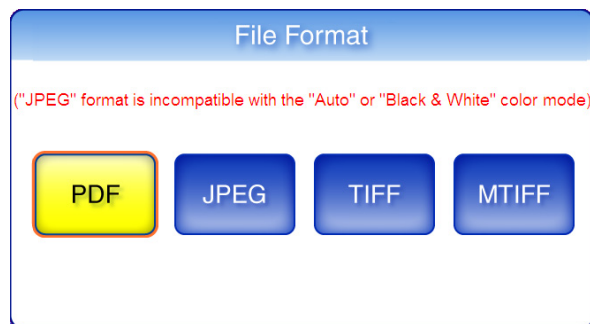
Color Mode	Document	File Format		
		PDF	JPEG	TIFF/MTIFF
Auto	Color	JPEG High Compression for Color PDF	JPEG	JPEG
	Black & White (*)	MMR	(NA)	MMR
RGB Color	Color or Black & White	JPEG High Compression for Color PDF	JPEG	JPEG
Grayscale	Color or Black & White	JPEG	JPEG	JPEG
Black & White	Color or Black & White	MMR	(NA)	MMR

(NA): Not available



- When PDF format is selected, select whether or not to use "High Compression for Color PDF" mode. When "High Compression for Color PDF" is selected, characters and backgrounds on the document are compressed separately. In order to do this, the file size of the document that mostly consists of text characters becomes smaller while keeping the quality of the characters as they are. However, this mode is not appropriate for scanning photographs or pictures since these graphical materials are recognized as background and compressed as such, causing degradation in the scanned image. If this setting is specified, the contrast of the image may become higher.
- If PDF format is selected, Adobe® Acrobat® Reader 4.0 or later is required to view the created PDF.

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Save] tab.
2. Press the [File Format] button.
⇒ The "File Format" screen appears.
3. Select a file format.



⇒ Selecting a file format returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected format is displayed to the right of the [File Format] button.

6.8.7 Searchable PDF

When the file format is PDF, the scanned data can be converted to a searchable PDF.



The scanner may fail to correctly recognize the following kinds of documents (characters) as text. However, by changing color mode and/or improving image quality for scanning, such a document may be successfully recognized.

- Handwritten documents
- Documents including smaller characters and scanned in low quality
- Skewed documents
- Documents written in languages other than English
- Documents including texts written in italic characters
- Superscript/subscript letters and complex mathematical formulas
- Characters are written against an unevenly-colored or patterned background
 - Characters to which effects (Shadow, Outline, and the like) are applied
 - Shaded characters
- Documents of complex layout as well as documents including unreadable characters due to print-through and smudges
(For such documents, the recognition time may be long)



Creating a searchable PDF will take some additional time.



1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Save] tab.
2. Press the [Searchable PDF] button.
⇒ The "Searchable PDF" screen appears.

3. Select which pages are to be made searchable in the PDF.

Searchable PDF

(Creating a Searchable PDF can take a long time)
("All Pages" and "Pages..." may not be used with "600dpi" resolution)

No

First Page

All Pages

Pages...

Text Recognition Language

English

Cancel

OK

Searchable PDF	Description
No	A searchable PDF is not created.
First Page	Only the first page of the PDF is made searchable.
All Pages	All pages of the PDF are made searchable.
Pages...	Only the specified range of pages in the PDF is made searchable.



- When the resolution is [600dpi], the [All Pages] and [Pages...] options cannot be selected.
- The page numbers set here correspond to those shown on the Preview and "Scan Viewer" windows.
- After pressing the [Pages] button, the "Searchable PDF for Pages" screen appears. Multiple ranges of pages cannot be set.
 1. Press the [Pages] button.
⇒The "Searchable PDF for Pages" screen appears.
 2. Enter a start page and end page.
Values between 1 and 999 may be entered.

Searchable PDF for Pages

Caps Lock
Num Lock

First Searchable Page : Last Searchable Page :
 ~
1 ≤ First Page ≤ Last Page ≤ 999

These numbers are the same as those in the Preview and Scan Viewer.

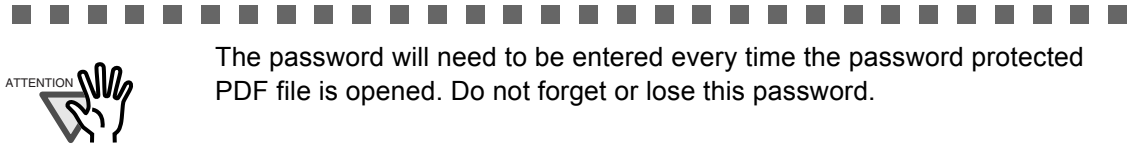
Cancel

OK

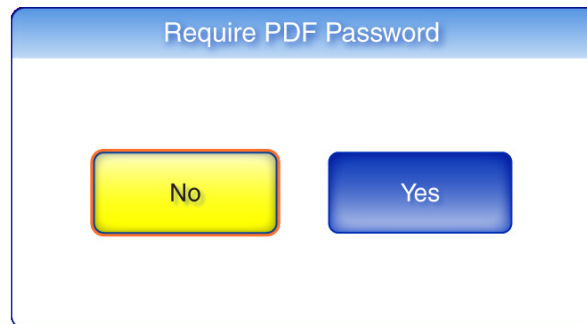
3. Press the [OK] button.
- If [First Page], [All Pages], or [Pages] is selected, [Text Recognition Language] can also be selected.
 1. Press the [Text Recognition Language] button.
⇒The "Text Recognition Language" screen appears.
 2. Select the searchable language for the PDF.
 3. Press the [OK] button.
⇒This returns you back to the "Searchable PDF" screen. The selected range is displayed to the right of the [Text Recognition Language] button.
4. Press the [OK] button.
⇒ This returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected range is displayed to the right of the [Searchable PDF] button.

6.8.8 PDF Password

PDF files can be locked with a user-specified password.



1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Save] tab.
2. Press the [PDF Password] button.
⇒ The "Require PDF Password" screen appears.
3. Select whether or not a password is required.



⇒ When [Yes] is selected, the "PDF Password" screen appears.

4. Enter a password and confirm password.

Passwords may be up to 16 characters long.

In addition to alphanumeric characters, spaces and the following symbols can be used:

! " # \$ % & ' () * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ ` { | } ~


PDF Password	Caps Lock  Num Lock 
--------------	---

Password :

Confirm Password :




 Cancel	 OK
---	---

- HINT 
- The "Caps Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Caps Lock is set.
 - The "Num Lock" indicator is on if the keyboard's Num Lock is set.

5. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The PDF will be created with password protection.

- HINT 
- On the "Require PDF Password" screen, pressing the [No] button cancels the set password.
The next time a password is set, pressing the [Yes] button enters the previously set password by default.

6.8.9 Compression

When [Auto], [RGB Color], or [Grayscale] is selected for the "6.8.2 Color Mode" (page 311), it is also possible to set the compression level.

Setting a compression level (1 to 5) reduces the file size when scanning documents such as photographs or figures.

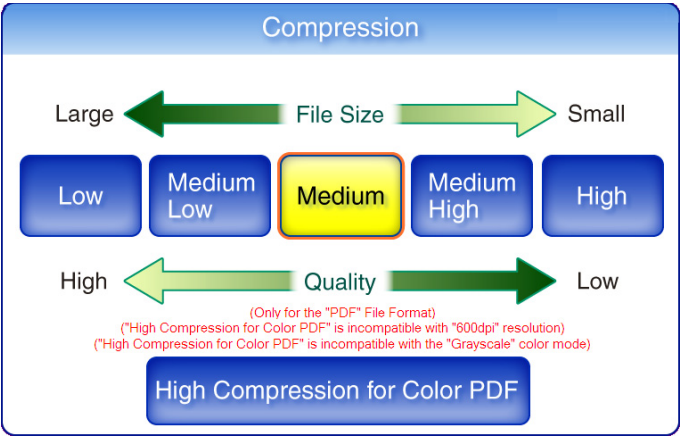
Changing the compression level affects the scanned data in the following ways.

	High compression	Low compression
Quality	Low	High
File size	Small	Large

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Save] tab.

2. Press the [Compression] button.
⇒ The "Compression" screen appears.

3. Select a compression level.
The lower the selected compression level is, the higher the quality of the resulting scan will be, but at the expense of a larger file.
When PDF format is selected in "6.8.6 File Format" (page 318), "High Compression for Color PDF" can be used.



⇒ Selecting a compression level returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected rate is displayed to the right of the [Compression] button.



- When "High Compression for Color PDF" is selected, characters and backgrounds on the document are compressed separately. In order to do this, the file size of the document that mostly consists of text characters becomes smaller while keeping the quality of the characters as they are. However, this mode is not appropriate for scanning photographs or pictures since these graphical materials are recognized as background and compressed as such, causing degradation in the scanned image. If this setting is specified, the contrast of the image may become higher.
- If "High Compression for Color PDF" is selected, according to the type of document, the file size may be larger than if a standard compression level is used.
 - Documents with many photographs or figures and only a few characters
 - Complex layout documents with multiple columns
 - Documents which have a background pattern behind characters
- For documents with many characters scanned at 300dpi resolution, a smaller file size than that of High Compression for Color PDF is possible.
- When one color page is scanned, the file size criteria are shown as follows. These numbers are for reference, other documents may vary in size.

Actual paper size: A4 size (general catalog)

File format: PDF

Scanner paper size setting: A4

- File size (KB) for color files

Resolution	Low	Medium Low	Medium	Medium High	High	High Compression for Color PDF
150dpi	406	232	197	153	94	158
200dpi	647	358	302	238	149	140
300dpi	1319	693	580	448	272	115
600dpi	3827	2034	1736	1377	854	—

- File size (KB) for grayscale files

Resolution	Low	Medium Low	Medium	Medium High	High	High Compression for Color PDF
150dpi	380	233	186	153	85	—
200dpi	618	373	293	239	133	—
300dpi	1422	825	606	494	245	—
600dpi	3416	2147	1827	1338	720	—

- File size (KB) for black & white files

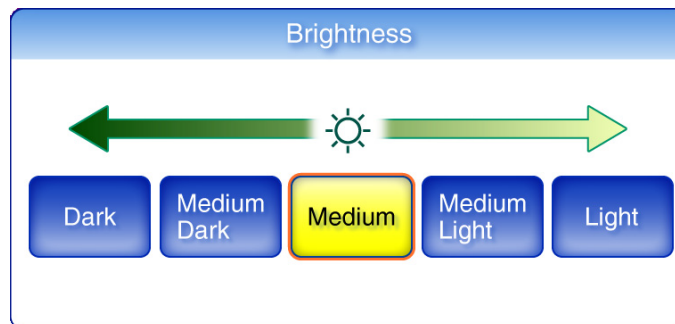
Resolution	Compression level cannot be selected
150dpi	104
200dpi	176
300dpi	382
600dpi	1430



6.8.10 Brightness

The brightness setting can be adjusted to improve the visual appearance of the scanned data.

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Quality] tab.
2. Press the [Brightness] button.
⇒ The "Brightness" screen appears.
3. Select a brightness level.

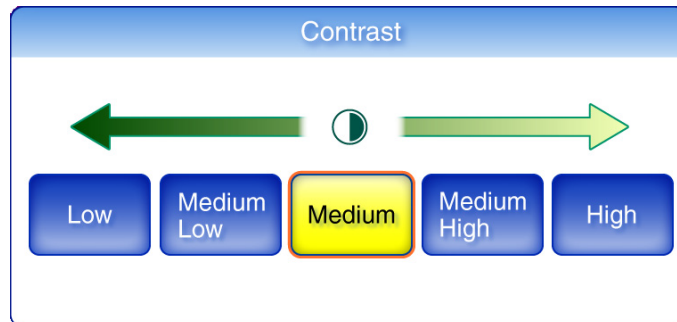


⇒ Selecting a brightness level returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected level is displayed to the right of the [Brightness] button.

6.8.11 Contrast

The color contrast setting can be adjusted to improve the visual appearance of the scan.

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Quality] tab.
2. Press the [Contrast] button.
⇒ The "Contrast" screen appears.
3. Select a contrast level.

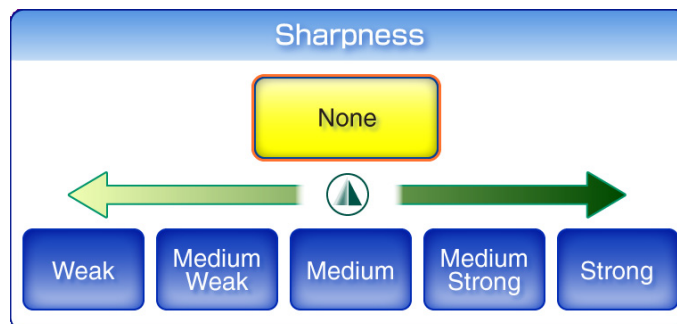


⇒ Selecting a contrast level returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected level is displayed to the right of the [Contrast] button.

6.8.12 Sharpness

The sharpness setting adjusts the sharpness of characters on an image to improve the visual appearance of the scanned data. When using the sharpness setting, the sharpness level can be adjusted with this setting.

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Quality] tab.
2. Press the [Sharpness] button.
⇒ The "Sharpness" screen appears.
3. If the sharpness setting is to be used, select a sharpness level.



Sharpness	Status
None	Characters are not sharpened.
Weak	Sharpens characters at a weak level
Medium Weak	Sharpens characters at a medium weak level
Medium	Sharpens characters at a medium level
Medium Strong	Sharpens characters at a medium strong level
Strong	Sharpens characters at a strong level


⇒ Selecting a sharpness level returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected level is displayed to the right of the [Sharpness] button.

6.8.13 Dropout Color

Selecting either green, red, or blue (primary colors), removes the details of the selected color from a scanned image.

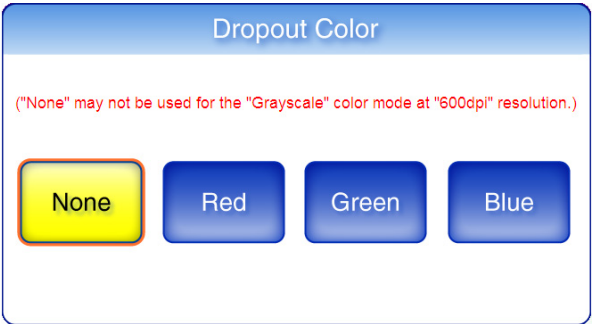
For example, if a document with black characters and a green border is scanned, only the black characters will appear on the scanned image if [Green] is selected at the dropout color.

When using the dropout color setting, the color details to be removed can be selected with this setting.

ATTENTION

This setting may not remove colors that are of dark density.

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Quality] tab.
2. Press the [Dropout Color] button.
⇒ The "Dropout Color" screen appears.
3. If color details are to be removed, select a color to be used as the dropout color.



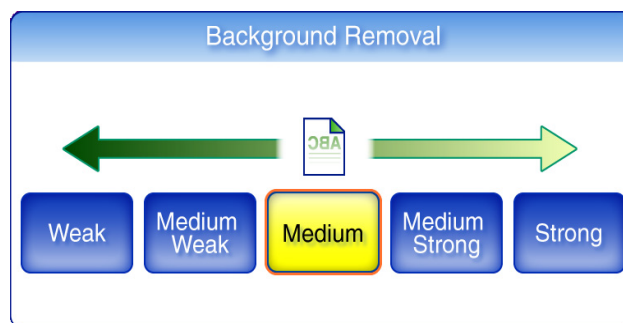
Dropout Color	Status
None	Scan without removing any color details.
Red	Scan and remove all red details.
Green	Scan and remove all green details.
Blue	Scan and remove all blue details.

⇒ Selecting a dropout color returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected setting is displayed to the right of the [Dropout Color] button.

6.8.14 Background Removal

The background of a scanned image can be removed to make image clearer. The level of background removal can be adjusted.

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Quality] tab.
2. Press the [Background Removal] button.
⇒ The "Background Removal" screen appears.
3. Select a background removal level.



⇒ Selecting a background removal level returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected level is displayed to the right of the [Background Removal] button.

6.8.15 Blank Page Skip

The scan process can be set to skip any blank pages in the scanned document.

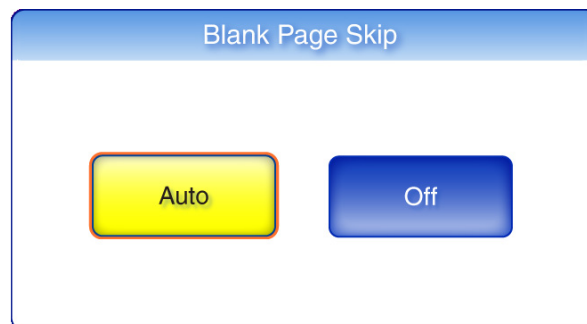
For example, when a stack of documents containing both two-sided and one-sided documents is scanned in duplex scan mode, this feature removes only the reverse side (i.e. blank page) of one-sided documents from the scanned data.



- If the Brightness setting (see ["6.8.10 Brightness" \(page 328\)](#)) is set to [Dark] or [Medium Dark], blank pages may not be recognized as such by the scanner.
- No scanned data is produced if all of the sheets in the document stack are recognized as blank pages.
- The following types of documents may be accidentally recognized as blank pages.
Before discarding the scanned documents, check for pages accidentally removed from the scanned data. If any pages have been removed, the document may need to be re-scanned.
 - Almost blank pages containing only a few characters
 - Page of only one color (including black), without any patterns, lines, or characters.



1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Advanced] tab.
2. Press the [Blank Page Skip] button.
⇒ The "Blank Page Skip" screen appears.
3. Select whether or not blank pages are to be skipped.



⇒ This returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected setting is displayed to the right of the [Blank Page Skip] button.

6.8.16 Page Orientation

Automatically rotates each scanned data page that contains text through 0°, 90°, 180°, or 270°, so the text is upright.



This function determines a document orientation based on Roman characters printed on the document. Therefore, it may not work properly for the following kinds of documents: When scanning such documents, do not set automatic page orientation.

- Documents with many extremely large/small characters
- Documents on which the pitch of lines or characters is extremely narrow, or characters overlap
- Documents with many characters that contact underlines or ruled lines
- Documents with many photographs or figures and only a few characters
- Documents which have a background pattern behind characters
- Documents with characters printed in various direction (e.g. plans)
- Documents written in languages other than English
- Documents with only capital letters
- Handwritten documents
- Unclear or smeared characters


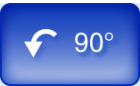
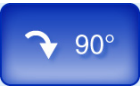


1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Advanced] tab.
2. Press the [Page Orientation] button.
⇒ The "Page Orientation" screen appears.
3. Select whether or not automatic page orientation is required.


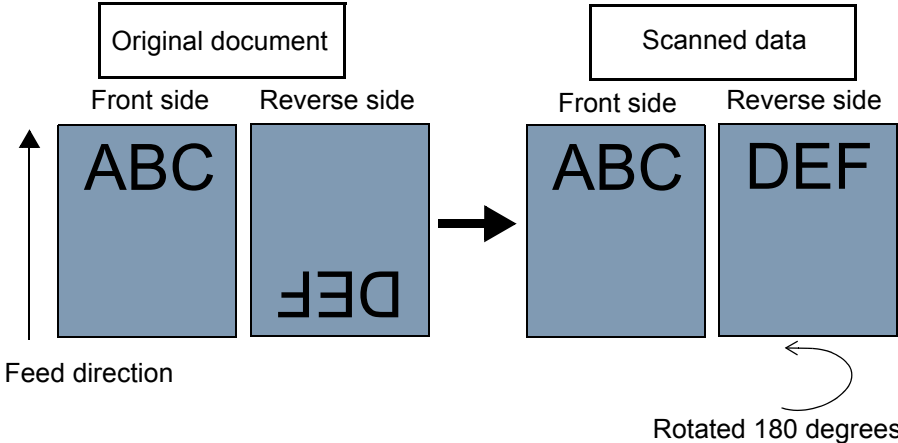
Page Orientation

Should page orientation be used?

If every page is to be rotated in the same direction, set the angle.
(Only "Top-feed" is allowed if Carrier Sheet setting is anything other than "Off")

What is the bind direction?

Page Orientation	Status
Off	Scanned page is not automatically rotated.
Auto	Automatically rotates scanned page.
Top-feed 	Scanned page is not rotated.
Left-feed 	Rotates scanned page 90 degrees left.
Right-feed 	Rotates scanned page 90 degrees right.
Bottom-feed 	Rotates scanned page 180 degrees.
Long Edge 	<p>This setting can only be used if the [Top-feed], [Left-feed], [Right-feed], or [Bottom-feed] button is selected.</p> <p>Select this setting when scanning a document with opposing left and right pages.</p> <p>The scanned data is output with the same orientation as the original document.</p> <div><div><div>Original document</div><div>Front side ABC</div><div>Reverse side DEF</div></div><div>→</div><div><div>Scanned data</div><div>Front side ABC</div><div>Reverse side DEF</div></div></div> <p>↑ Feed direction</p>

Page Orientation	Status
Short Edge 	<p>This setting can only be used if the [Top-feed], [Left-feed], [Right-feed], or [Bottom-feed] is selected.</p> <p>Select this setting when scanning a document with opposing top and bottom pages.</p> <p>The front side of the document is output with the same orientation as the original data, whereas the data on the reverse side is rotated 180 degrees.</p> 

⇒ This returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected setting is displayed to the right of the [Page Orientation] button.

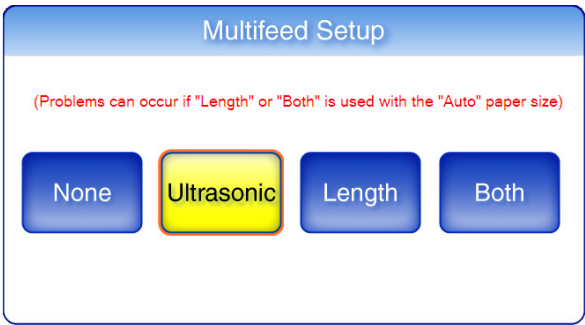


Irrespective of what page orientation is decided, pages may still be manually rotated as desired in the "Scan Viewer" screen. For more details about the "Scan Viewer" screen, refer to ["6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer" \(page 343\)](#).

6.8.17 Multifeed Detection (Layer and Length)

"Multifeed" is an error that occurs when two or more sheets are fed simultaneously into the scanner by the ADF. The scanner can be set to detect multifeeds and stop the scan with an error message. Multifeeds are to be detected by layer and length. The following explains how to set whether or not multifeeds are to be detected, and setup multifeed detection method. For multifeed requirements, refer to "A.5 Multifeed Detection Conditions" (page 416).

- 1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Advanced] tab.
- 2. Press the [Multifeed Setup] button.
⇒ The "Multifeed Setup" screen appears.
- 3. If multifeeds are to be detected, select which detection method is to be used.



Multifeed Setup	Status
None	Multifeeds are not detected. If scanning plastic cards, select [None]. For more details about scanning plastic cards, refer to "A.2 Paper Requirements" (page 411).
Ultrasonic	Multifeeds are detected by layer.
Length	Multifeeds are detected by length.
Both	Multifeeds are detected by both layer and length.

An error will occur if the [Length] or [Both] multifeed setting is used with the [Auto] paper size, and the document bundle being scanned contains different size pages.

⇒ This returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected setting is displayed to the right of the [Multifeed Setup] button.

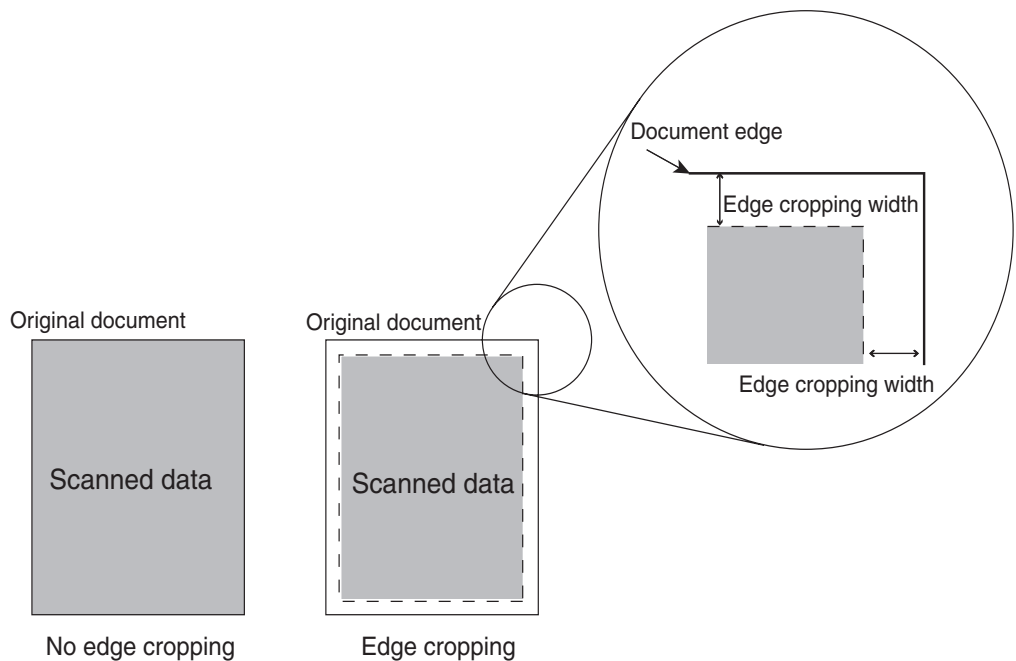
6.8.18 Edge Cropping

For scanned data, the width of the area for edge cropping can be adjusted, so that unwanted sections are not scanned.

If using edge cropping, the width of the edges to be cropped can be adjusted with this setting.

1. On the "Scan Settings" screen, select the [Advanced] tab.
2. Press the [Edge Cropping] button.
⇒ The "Edge Cropping" screen appears.
3. If edge cropping is to be used, enter the width of the edges to be cropped.

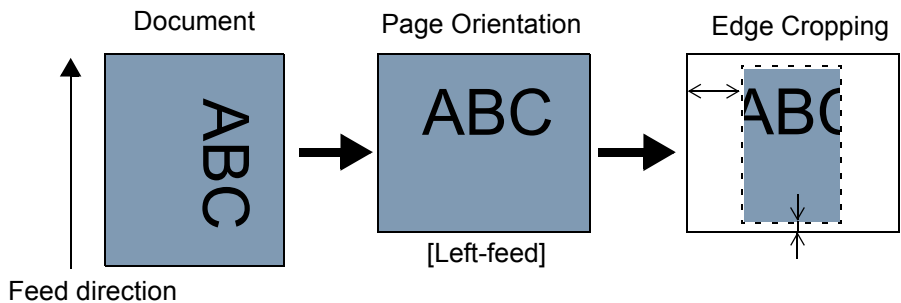
Edge Cropping Setup	Status
Off	Scan without cropping edges.
On	Scan and crop edges. Enter a value for Top/Bottom and Left/Right from 0 to 50. Enter values in units of 1mm.



4. Press the [OK] button.
- ⇒ This returns you to the "Scan Settings" screen. The selected setting is displayed to the right of the [Edge Cropping] button.



- If the edge cropping width (top to bottom/left to right edge cropping width total) is larger than the document, the edge cropping setting is not applied.
- If page orientation is set, edge cropping is performed after the document orientation is corrected. In the following example, [Left-feed] is selected for page orientation.



6.9 Enabling/Disabling the Scan Viewer

The "Scan Viewer" screen can be set to appear before the scanned data is processed.

The scanned data can be checked and edited on the "Scan Viewer" screen. For details, refer to ["6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer" \(page 343\)](#).

If desired, in the following screens, the "Scan Viewer" screen can be set to be appear before the scanned data is finally processed.

- "Send e-Mail" screen
- "Send Fax" screen
- "Print" screen
- "Save" screen
- "Job Menu" screen

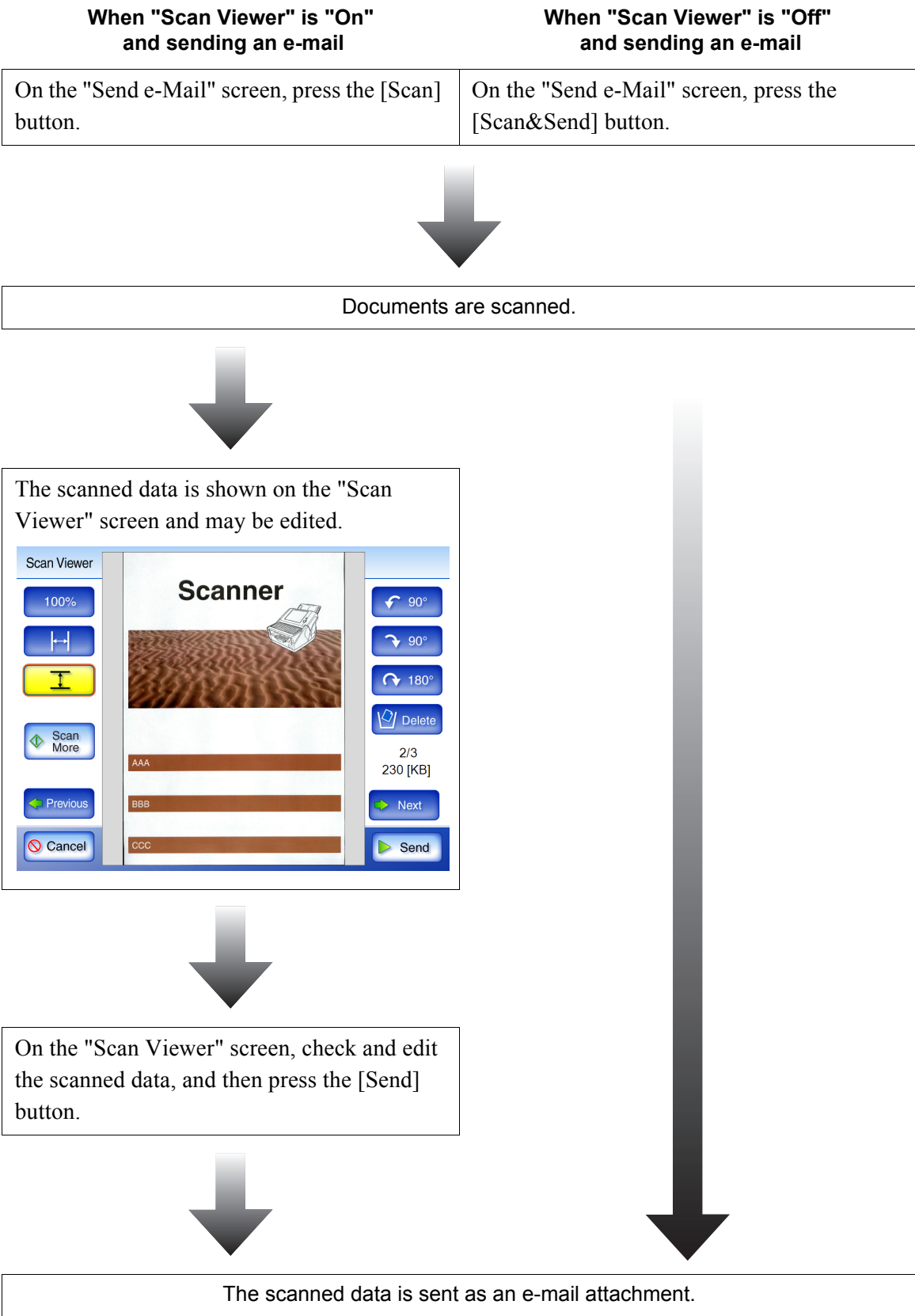
The following explains how to enable or disable the "Scan Viewer" using the "Send e-Mail" screen.

1. On the "Send e-Mail" screen, press the [Scan Viewer] button.

⇒ Pressing the [Scan Viewer] button will toggle the setting back and forth between "On" and "Off".

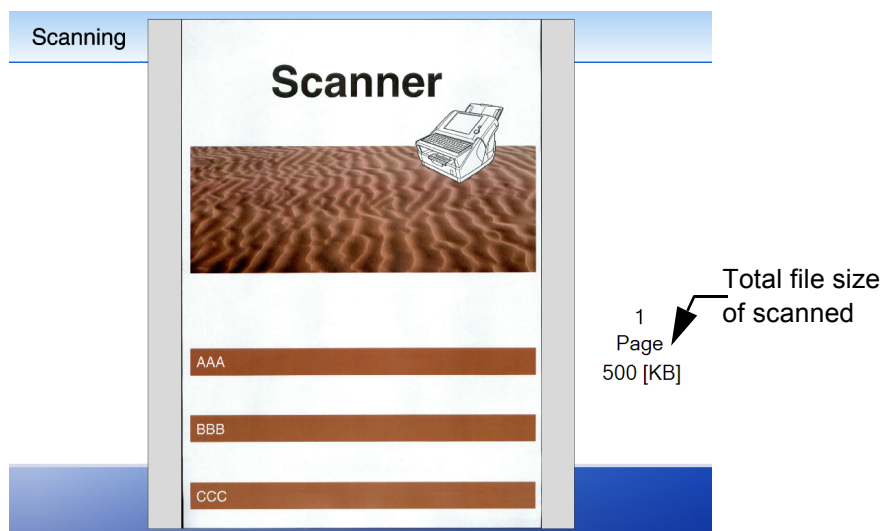
The screenshot shows the "Send e-Mail" screen. At the top right, there are indicators for "Caps Lock" and "Num Lock", both of which are turned on. The screen contains several input fields for email details: "To :", "Cc :", "Bcc :", "File Name :", "From :", "Subject :", and "Body :". Each of the "To :", "Cc :", and "Bcc :" fields is preceded by an envelope icon. The "File Name :" field contains the text "F1-00000000000000000000000000000000". At the bottom of the screen, there is a row of buttons: a "Cancel" button with a red circle and slash icon, a "Scan Settings" button, a "Default" button, a "Scan Viewer" button, and an "On" button. To the right of these buttons is a "Scan" button with a green diamond icon. The "Scan Viewer" button is highlighted, indicating it is the current focus.

Operations after scanning vary according to whether the "Scan Viewer" is set to "On" or "Off".
If sending an e-mail, scan operation proceeds as follows:

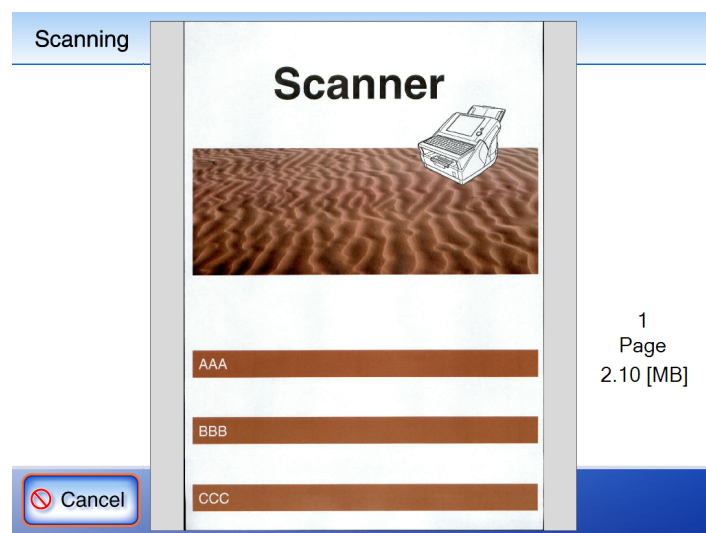




- During the scan, the following screen is shown.
The file size is shown in units of 10KB on the right of the screen.
If "High Compression for Color PDF" has been selected, the pre-compression file size is shown.
Note that because the final output file has not been created yet, the actual file size may differ from the estimated value shown.
Also note that skipped blank pages are not included in the total file size page count.



- When the "Scan Viewer" is set to "Off", after the last page has been scanned, the [Cancel] button is displayed for five seconds.

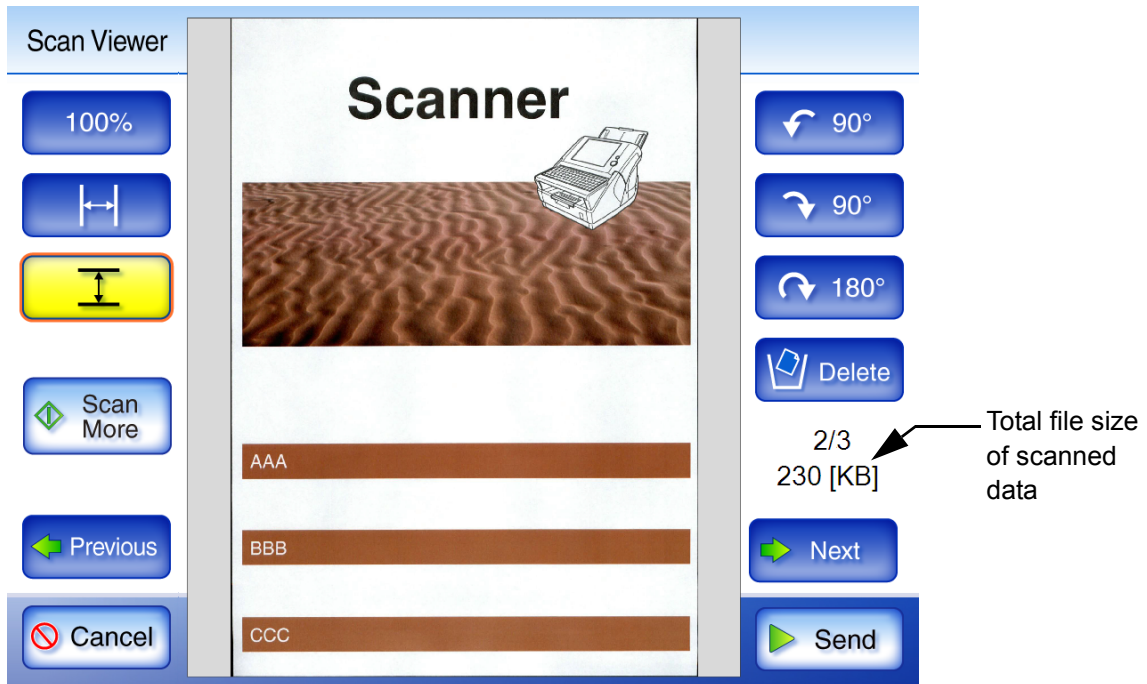


If the [Cancel] button is pressed, a confirmation message appears. When the [OK] button is pressed, the scanned data is deleted and the screen returns to one of the following:

- Send e-Mail
- Send Fax
- Print
- Save
- Job Menu

6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer


Scanned data can be checked and edited in the "Scan Viewer".





6.10.1 Viewing a Scanned Page

The scanned data shown in the "Scan Viewer" screen can be displayed as actual or reduced size. The scanned data can be moved by dragging it across the screen.

1. On the "Scan Viewer" screen, press the [Previous] or [Next] button to scroll through the pages of scanned data.
2. Check the contents of the page shown.

When  is pressed, the scanned data will be shown without any magnification or reduction.

If  is pressed, the width of the scanned data will be scaled to fit the "Scan Viewer" screen.


If  is pressed, the height of the scanned data will be scaled to fit the "Scan Viewer" screen.


6.10.2 Rotating a Scanned Page


The scanned data showed on the "Scan Viewer" screen can be rotated 90 degrees right or left, or 180 degrees.

If the scanned data is rotated 90 degrees, the edited scanned data, in its rotated condition, can be sent as an e-mail attachment, by fax, print, or saved to a network folder.

1. On the "Scan Viewer" screen, press the [Previous] or [Next] button to display the page you wish to rotate.
2. Press either [90°] or the [180°] button.

If  is pressed, the page is rotated 90 degrees to the left.

If  is pressed, the page is rotated 90 degrees to the right.

If  is pressed, the page is rotated 180 degrees.



The actual scanned data is updated to include the rotated page as soon as the button is pressed.

If the [Cancel] button is pressed, all the scanned data is deleted and the screen returns to one of the following.

- Send e-Mail
- Send Fax
- Print
- Save
- Job Menu

6.10.3 Adding a Scanned Page

On the "Scan Viewer" screen, an additional page can be scanned.

1. Load the documents into the ADF paper chute.
2. On the "Scan Viewer" screen, press the [Scan More] button.

⇒ Scanning starts.

Each page is briefly shown on the screen as it is scanned.

Any additionally scanned pages are added after the current scanned data. The page numbers of additional pages will follow on from the last page of the current scanned data.

The maximum number of pages that can be scanned is 100 for a print operation, and 999 for other operations.

However, more pages can be scanned if blank pages are skipped, up to the maximum number of pages allowed.

When the scan has completed, the "Scan Viewer" screen opens and shows any additionally scanned pages.




6.11 Checking the User Log

The latest 100 user operation logs are shown for the current user.

Even if the [Region/Timezone] or [Date/Time] settings are changed, the order of the log entries will not be changed.

1. On the "Main Menu" screen, press the [User Log] button.

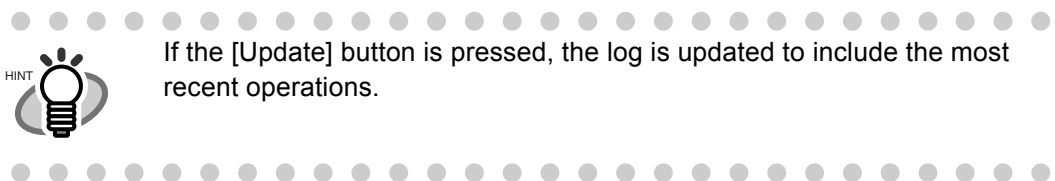
⇒ The "User Log" screen appears.

User Log						Update
Result	Code	Date	Time	Operation	Pages	
OK	00000000	08-18-2007	00:29:53	Print	2	 1 / 3 
Error	12010001	08-18-2007	00:29:29	e-Mail	4	
Error	12010001	08-18-2007	00:28:15	e-Mail	4	
OK	00000000	08-17-2007	23:39:46	Save	18	
OK	00000000	08-17-2007	23:37:59	Save	12	
OK	00000000	08-17-2007	23:36:30	Save	6	
 O K						

2. Select the log you wish to view.

⇒ The details of the selected log are displayed.

Pressing the [OK] button returns to the "User Log" screen.



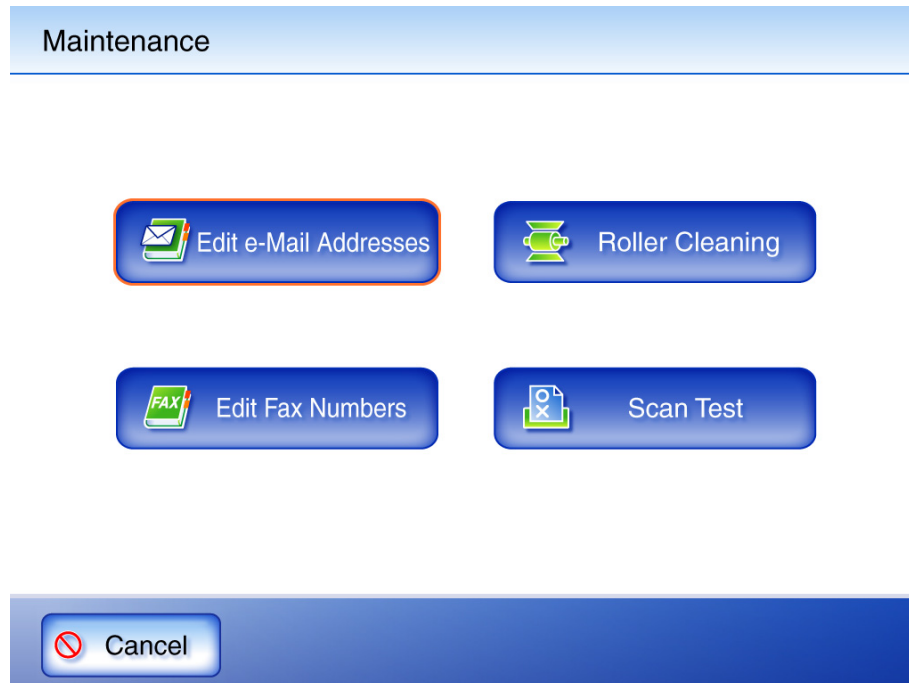
The following information is shown.

Info	Info options	Description
Result	In Progress	Currently processing a scan operation.
	OK	Operation completed successfully.
	Error	Operation failed to complete successfully.
Code	xxxxxxxx	Shows a code for each operation. For details, refer to "E.2 Regular User Messages" (page 457).
Date	MM/dd/yyyy dd/MM/yyyy yyyy/MM/dd	Shows the date of each operation (format specified on the Date/Time screen is used). For details, refer to "4.6.5 Setting the Date/Time" (page 59).
Time	hh:mm:ss	Shows the time of each operation.
Operation	e-Mail	The scanned data is sent as an e-mail attachment.
	Fax	The scanned data is sent as a fax.
	Print	The scanned data is sent to the print server, and the sending status is shown in the "Result" column until the scanned data is completely sent to the print server.
	Save	Scanned data is saved in a network folder.
Pages	xxx	Shows the number of pages scanned.
Description	xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx	Shows the status and description of the operation.

6.12 Maintenance

1. On the "Main Menu" screen, press the [Maintenance] button.

⇒ The "Maintenance" screen appears.



- Pressing the [Edit e-Mail Addresses] button opens the "e-Mail Address Book" screen. e-Mail addresses can be added, edited, or deleted on the "e-Mail Address Book" screen. For details, refer to ["6.4.2 Adding a Contact to the e-Mail Address Book" \(page 273\)](#), ["6.4.3 Editing a Contact in the e-Mail Address Book" \(page 275\)](#), or ["6.4.4 Deleting a Contact from the e-Mail Address Book" \(page 276\)](#).
- Pressing the [Edit Fax Numbers] button opens the "Fax Number List" screen. Fax numbers can be added, edited, or deleted on the "Fax Number List" screen. For details, refer to ["6.5.2 Adding a Contact to the Fax Number List" \(page 282\)](#), ["6.5.3 Editing a Contact in the Fax Number List" \(page 284\)](#), or ["6.5.4 Deleting a Contact from the Fax Number List" \(page 285\)](#).
- Pressing the [Roller Cleaning] button opens the "Roller Cleaning" screen. The "Roller Cleaning" screen allows the feed rollers to be step rotated for cleaning. For details, refer to ["Feed rollers" \(page 361\)](#).
- Pressing the [Scan Test] button starts scan test. Scanned data can be checked on the "Scan Viewer" screen. Use this to check that the scanner scans normally. For more details about the "Scan Viewer" screen, refer to ["7.8 Performing a Scan Test" \(page 378\)](#).

6.13 Processing a Job

This section uses an example where buttons from [Job1] to [Job6] have been set.

1. On the "Job Menu" screen, press the [Job] button.



⇒ The "Message Screen" appears.



- If the both title and message are not set in [Message Screen] on the "Job Details" screen, even if the [Message Screen] button is set to [On], the "Message Screen" will not be shown. For more details, refer to [Step 5 of "4.11.2 Setting a Job Sequence" \(page 163\)](#).
- If "Off" is selected for the [Message Screen] button, scanning is started without showing the "Message Screen", and the job is processed. For more details, refer to ["6.13.1 Enabling/Disabling the Message Screen" \(page 352\)](#).

2. Press the [Scan] button on the "Message Screen".

⇒ Scanning starts.

Each page is briefly shown on the screen as it is scanned.

When the scan has completed, the "Scan Viewer" screen opens.

For more details about the "Scan Viewer" screen, refer to ["6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer" \(page 343\)](#).



[Scan Viewer] is initially "On".

3. Check the scanned data.

For more details about the "Scan Viewer" screen, refer to ["6.10 Editing the Scanned Data in the Scan Viewer" \(page 343\)](#).

4. Press the [OK] button on the "Scan Viewer".

⇒ The data is processed according to the specified job.

While the job is being processed, the process is shown in real time on the "Job Progress" screen.

Job Progress



Job Report

Icon				Used to...
e-Mail	Fax	Print	Save	
				Show the current item in process (big icon).
				Show items waiting to be processed.
				Show items which have completed successfully.
				Show items which have not completed successfully.
				Show items which have been canceled.



- To view the job report, press the [Job Report] button on the "Job Progress" screen.

Job Report

Operation	Status
1 : e-Mail	Error 12010100
2 : Fax	OK
3 : Print	OK
4 : Save	OK
5 : e-Mail	OK
6 : Fax	Error 12020100

Details Icon View OK

- To view detailed information for the job report, select a function name on the "Job Report" screen and press the [Details] button.

Job Detail Information

Result	Error
Code	12010100
Date	
Time	07:14:53
Operation	e-Mail
Pages	1
Description	Error: e-mail could not be sent.

Report To Administrator OK

- If the status is shown as "Error", the [Report To Administrator] button is shown on the "Job Report Details" screen. Press the [Report To Administrator] button to send detailed information of the job report to an administrator by e-mail. (The e-mail address is the "Notification e-Mail Address" set on the Administrator "Alert Notification" screen.)

⇒ If the job sequence is processed successfully, the touch panel screen returns to the "Job Menu".

If an error occurs during the job process, press the [OK] button on the "Job Progress" or "Job Report" screen. Pressing the [OK] button returns to the "Job Menu".

6.13.1 Enabling/Disabling the Message Screen

You can set whether or not to show the "Message Screen" for checking the contents of a job. This section uses an example where buttons from [Job1] to [Job6] have been set.

1. On the "Job Menu" screen, press the [Message Screen] button.

⇒ If the [Message Screen] button is set to "Off", pressing the button will change it to "On", and vice-versa.



Operations differ according to whether the [Message Screen] button is "Off" or "On".

- If a job sequence is processed when the [Message Screen] button is set to "On"
The contents of the job sequence are shown on the "Message Screen".



Processing Job1.

1.e-Mail
2.Fax
3.Print
4.Save
5.e-Mail
6.Fax
7.Print
8.Save
9.e-Mail
10.Fax



- If a job sequence is processed when the [Message Screen] button is set to "Off"
Scanning starts and the job is processed without showing the "Message Screen".

Chapter 7

Scanner Care

Admin

User

This chapter describes how to clean the scanner and replace parts in order to maintain the scanner in optimum scanning condition.



The glass scanner windows inside the ADF can become hot when the scanner is used.

Before cleaning inside the scanner or replacing any parts, turn off the power, unplug the AC adapter from the outlet, and wait for at least 15 minutes.

The power does not need to be turned off when cleaning the feed rollers.



Do not use any aerosol sprays or alcohol based sprays to clean the scanner.

Dust blown up by strong air from the spray may enter the inside of the scanner. This may cause the scanner to fail or malfunction.


Sparks, caused by static electricity, generated when blowing off dust and dirt from the outside of the scanner may cause a fire.

7.1 Cleaning	356
7.2 Cleaning the ADF	358
7.3 Cleaning the LCD Touch Panel	364
7.4 Cleaning the Keyboard/Keyboard Cover	365
7.5 Cleaning the Carrier Sheet	366
7.6 Replacing Parts	367
7.7 Replacing the Keyboard Cover	376
7.8 Performing a Scan Test	378

7.1 Cleaning

7.1.1 Cleaning Materials

The following table shows the cleaning materials to be used with this scanner.

Item	Part No.	Remarks
Cleaner F1 	PA03950-0352	1 bottle (100 ml) Used to moisten the cloths before wiping parts clean.
Cleaning Paper	CA99501-0012	1 pack (10 sheets) For use with Cleaner F1.
Cleaning Wipe	PA03950-0419	1 pack (24 sheets) Pre-moistened with Cleaner F1, Cleaning Wipes are used instead of moistened cloths.
Soft, dry cloth	Any commercially available lint-free product	

Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider to obtain these products.

7.1.2 Which Parts and When

Clean all parts after every 1,000 sheets scanned.

- Pad assembly
- Feed rollers
- Pick roller
- Idler rollers
- Glass scanner windows
- Ultrasonic sensor



The scanner must be cleaned more frequently when the following types of documents are used:

- Coated paper
- Documents with large areas of printing
- Chemically treated paper such as carbonless paper
- Paper containing large amounts of calcium carbonate filler
- Documents written in pencil
- Documents with insufficiently fused toner



7.2 Cleaning the ADF

The ADF should be cleaned after approximately every 1,000 scanned sheets. However, this criteria varies according to the type of documents scanned. For example, it may be necessary to clean the ADF more frequently when documents with insufficiently fused toner are scanned.



The glass scanner windows inside the ADF can become hot when the scanner is used.

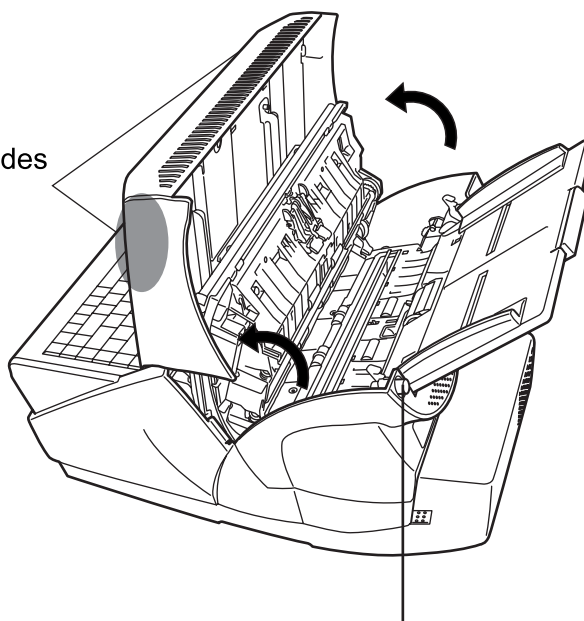
Before cleaning inside the scanner or replacing any parts, turn off the power, unplug the AC adapter from the outlet, and wait for at least 15 minutes.

The power does not need to be turned off when cleaning the feed rollers.

7.2.1 Cleaning the ADF

1. Push the ADF release button, then hold both sides of the top cover and lift it open.

Hold both sides
to open

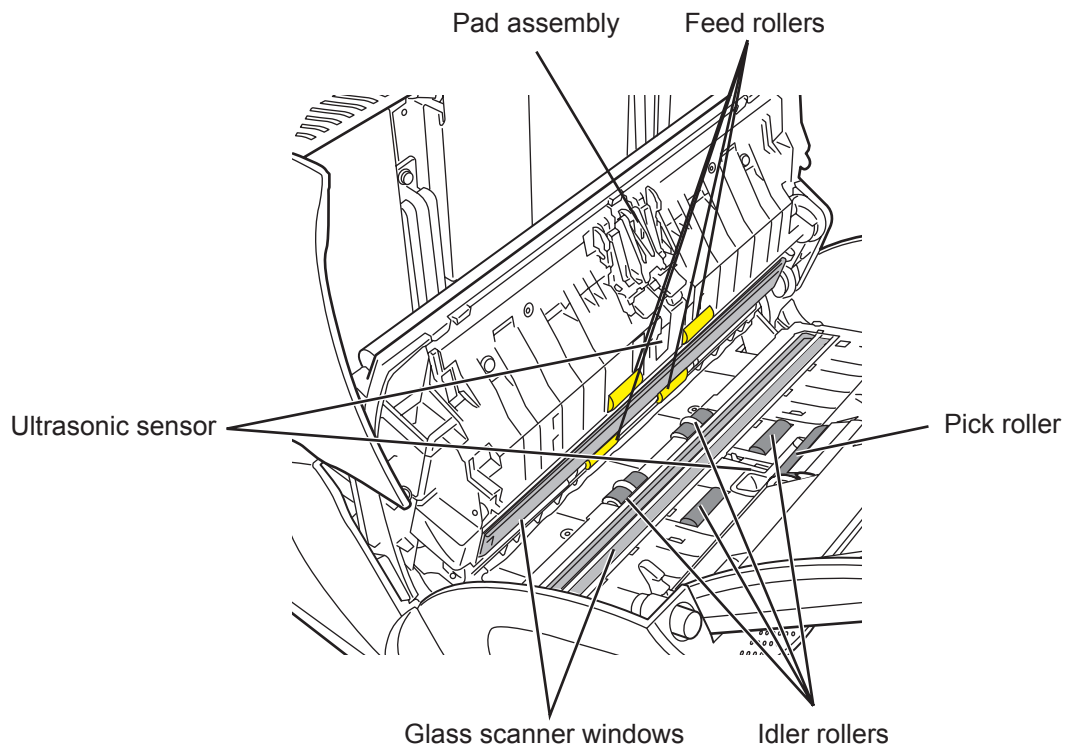


Push the ADF release button to open



Be careful that the top cover does not shut on your fingers.

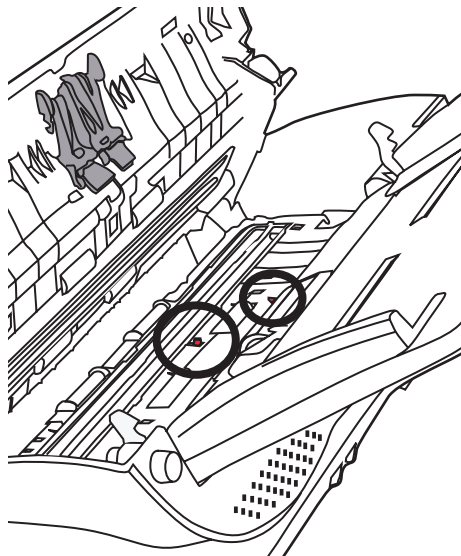
2. Clean the following parts with a soft cloth moistened with cleaner F1.



No.	Part name	Cleaning method
1	Pad assembly	Refer to "Pad assembly" (page 360).
2	Feed rollers (× 4)	Refer to "Feed rollers" (page 361).
3	Pick roller (× 1)	Refer to "Pick roller" (page 362).
4	Idler rollers (× 4)	Refer to "Idler rollers" (page 362).
5	Glass scanner windows (× 2)	Refer to "Glass scanner windows" (page 362).
6	Ultrasonic sensor (× 2)	Refer to "Ultrasonic sensor" (page 362).

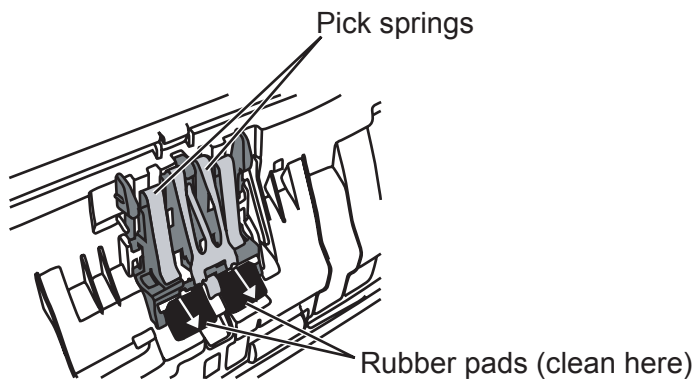


When cleaning inside the ADF, take care that the cloth does not get snagged by the document sensors and damage them.



- Pad assembly

Clean the rubber pads by gently wiping downwards in the direction of the arrows. Take care not to snag and bend the pick springs.



- Feed rollers

Use the following procedure when cleaning the feed rollers.

- 1) On the "Main Menu" screen, press the [Maintenance] button.
⇒ The "Maintenance" screen appears.
- 2) Press the [Roller Cleaning] button.

Maintenance



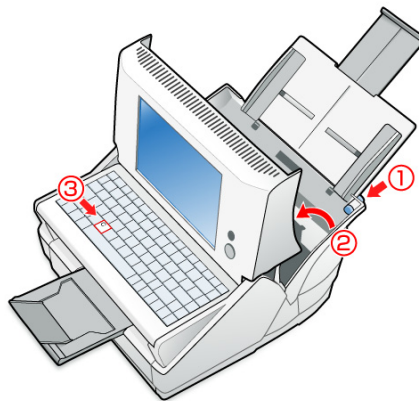
 Cancel

⇒ The "Roller Cleaning" screen appears.

Roller Cleaning

Press the keyboard [C] key to step the feed rollers forward.

Press the [OK] button after the feed rollers have been cleaned.



 OK

- 3) Open the top cover.
- 4) Lightly press a soft cloth moistened with Cleaner F1 against the surface of the feed rollers.

5) Press the [c] key on the keyboard.

⇒ The feed rollers will advance one step each time the [c] key is pressed.

Lightly press a soft cloth moistened with cleaning fluid against the surface of the rotating rollers to clean them. Pressing the [c] key seven times will turn the roller one complete revolution. The feed rollers should be cleaned carefully and thoroughly, as dirty pick rollers can adversely affect the paper pickup performance.

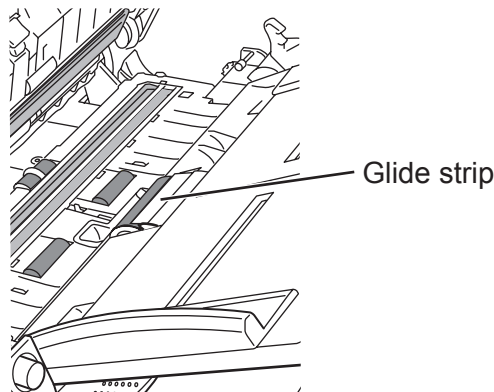


In [Step 5](#), all four feed rollers will turn at the same time.

When cleaning the feed rollers, be careful not to touch the rollers with your fingers while they are rotating.

- Pick roller

Gently rotate the pick roller as you wipe its surface clean, taking care not to damage the soft rubber. The pick roller should be cleaned carefully and thoroughly, as dirty pick rollers can adversely affect the paper pickup performance. When cleaning the pick roller, also be careful not to damage the black plastic glide strip.



- Idler rollers

Gently rotate the idler rollers as you wipe them clean, taking care not to scratch or ding them, or tear the sponge wheels. The idler rollers should be cleaned carefully and thoroughly, as dirty idler rollers can adversely affect the paper pickup performance.

- Glass scanner windows

Clean lightly with a soft cloth moistened with cleaner F1.



A vertical black line on the scanned data may indicate the glass scanner windows are dirty.

- Ultrasonic sensor

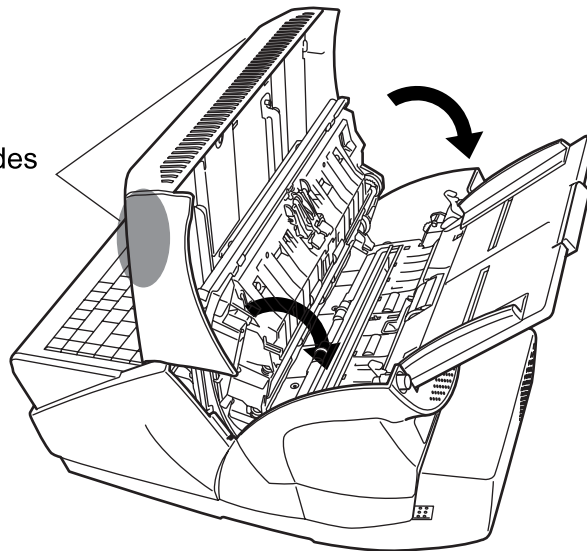
Clean lightly with a soft cloth moistened with cleaner F1.

3. Holding both sides of the top cover, return it to its original position.
You should hear a click.



- Make sure that the top cover is completely closed. If not completely closed, document jams and feeding errors may occur.
- When closing the top cover, do not slam it shut by pushing the touch panel as this may damage it.

Hold both sides
to close



7.3 Cleaning the LCD Touch Panel

To prevent the touch panel screen from becoming dirty, it should be regularly cleaned with a soft, dry cloth.

Take care when cleaning the touch panel. It can be easily damaged, and should never be scratched or banged with hard objects.



Always use a dry (not damp) cloth to clean the screen.

If dust is allowed to collect and compact around the frame of the screen, it can cause the touch panel to malfunction.



7.4 Cleaning the Keyboard/Keyboard Cover

To prevent the keyboard and / or keyboard cover from becoming dirty, it should also be regularly cleaned with a soft, dry cloth.



Always use a dry (not damp) cloth to clean the keyboard (with or without cover). Do not apply Cleaner F1.

Replace the keyboard cover if stains cannot be removed by cleaning.

For more details, refer to ["7.7 Replacing the Keyboard Cover" \(page 376\)](#).



To obtain a keyboard cover, contact your FUJITSU dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

Part name	Part No.	Remarks
Keyboard cover	PA03544-K608	1 cover GBR: English (UK)

7.5 Cleaning the Carrier Sheet

If the surface or interior of the Carrier Sheet becomes dirty or dusty, use a soft dry cloth slightly moistened with Cleaner F1 (sold separately) or a mild detergent, to lightly wipe off the dirt and dust.



- Never use paint thinner or other organic solvents.
- Do not rub too hard, as the Carrier Sheet may become scratched or deformed.
- After cleaning the interior of the Carrier Sheet, wait until it has completely dried before closing it.
- As a guideline, it is recommended to replace the Carrier Sheet every 500 scans. For details about purchasing a Carrier Sheet, refer to ["7.6.5 Purchasing the Carrier Sheet" \(page 375\)](#).

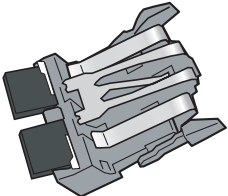
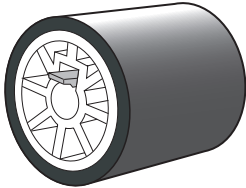


7.6 Replacing Parts

7.6.1 Part Numbers and Replacement Cycles

■ Part numbers and replacement cycle for consumable parts

The following table specifies the replacement part numbers, the standard replacement cycles, and the color of the [Consumable Alert] button.

Part name	Part No.	Replacement cycle	Consumable alert status
Pad assembly (Pad ASSY) 	PA03289-0111	After every 50,000 sheets scanned or once a year (when using 64 g/m ² (17lb) A4/Letter wood-free or wood containing paper)	Green until the number of documents scanned reaches 45,000 sheets. Orange after 45,000 sheets. Red after 50,000 sheets. For more details about how to check the consumable alert status, refer to "7.6.2 Checking the Consumable Alert Status" (page 369).
Pick roller 	PA03289-0001	After every 100,000 sheets scanned or once a year (when using 64 g/m ² (17lb) A4/Letter wood-free or wood containing paper)	Green until the number of documents scanned reaches 95,000 sheets. Orange after 95,000 sheets. Red after 100,000 sheets. For more details about how to check the consumable alert status, refer to "7.6.2 Checking the Consumable Alert Status" (page 369).

These replacement cycles are rough guidelines. They may vary according to the type of documents scanned, scanner usage, and cleaning frequency.



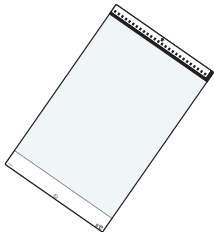
- When the consumable alert status is orange or red, contact your scanner administrator to replace the necessary part.
- Use only the PFU LIMITED parts specified. Do not use consumable parts made by other manufacturers.



To obtain these parts, contact your FUJITSU dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

■ Part numbers and replacement cycle for Carrier Sheet

The following table specifies the replacement part numbers and the standard replacement cycles.

Part name	No. of items	Part No.	Replacement cycle	Remarks
Carrier Sheet 	5	PA03360-0013	After used for 500 scans	For details about purchasing a Carrier Sheet, refer to "7.6.5 Purchasing the Carrier Sheet" (page 375) .

This replacement cycle is a rough guideline. This may vary according to the type of documents scanned, scanner usage, and cleaning frequency. If parts become noticeably dirty, replace them accordingly.



Use only the PFU LIMITED parts specified. Do not use parts made by other manufacturers.



To obtain these parts, contact your FUJITSU dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

7.6.2 Checking the Consumable Alert Status

1. On the Main Menu, press the [Consumable Alert] button.

⇒ The "Consumable Alert" screen appears.



2. Check which part needs to be replaced and press the [OK] button.

Parts whose "Usage Counter" value is bigger than the "Replace at" value should be replaced.

The value of the "Usage Counter" is in units of 500 sheets scanned.

For details on how to check the status of consumable parts on the administrator screen, refer to ["4.8.2 Viewing the Usage Status" \(page 134\)](#).

Consumable Alert

Part	Usage Counter	Replace At	Current Status
Pad Assembly 	60.500	50.000	Replace Now
Pick Roller 	60.500	100.000	

▶ OK

3. Replace the part.

Part replacement procedures are detailed in the following sections, ["7.6.3 Replacing the Pad Assembly" \(page 370\)](#), ["7.6.4 Replacing the Pick Roller" \(page 371\)](#).

7.6.3 Replacing the Pad Assembly

1. Remove any documents from the ADF paper chute.
2. Push the ADF release button, then hold both sides of the top cover and lift it open.

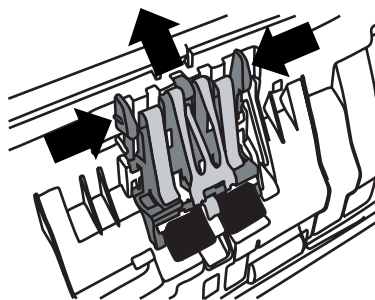


Be careful that the top cover does not shut on your fingers.



3. Remove the pad assembly from the scanner.
Squeeze the prongs on either side of the pad assembly together and pull it upwards and to the front, taking care not to snag the pick springs.

Squeeze prongs together and pull up



4. Insert the new pad assembly.
Holding the new pad assembly by its sides, insert into the pad assembly socket, taking care not to snag the pick springs.



Make sure that the pad assembly is firmly and fully inserted. If it is not correctly attached, document jams and other feeding errors may occur.



5. Close the top cover.

You should hear a click when it is returned to its original position.



Be careful that the top cover does not shut on your fingers.



6. Reset the pad assembly usage counter.

The usage counter must be reset by an administrator. For details, refer to ["Resetting the Usage Counter" \(page 135\)](#).

7.6.4 Replacing the Pick Roller

1. Remove any documents from the ADF paper chute.
2. Remove the ADF paper chute.
3. Push the ADF release button, then hold both sides of the top cover and lift it open.

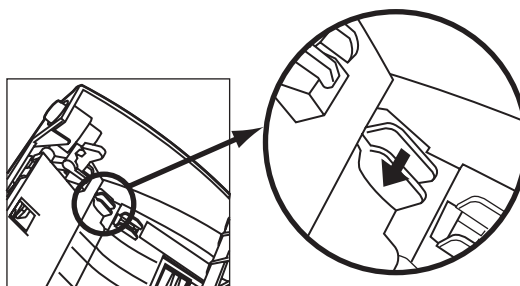


Be careful that the top cover does not shut on your fingers.

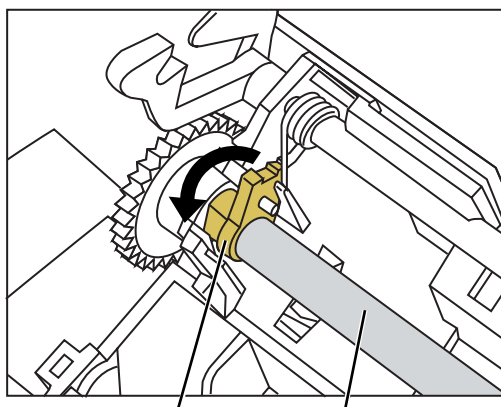


4. Remove the pick roller and its shaft from the scanner.

1. Squeeze the tabs of the sheet guide release catch together with your fingers, and lift the sheet guide plate up and away.



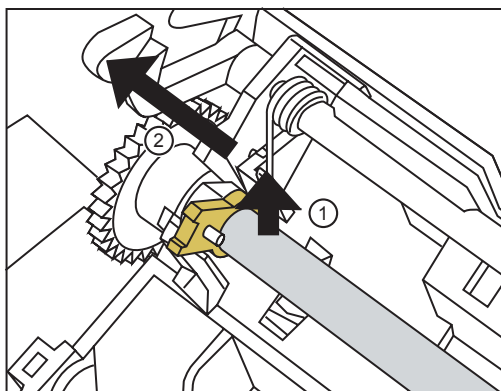
2. Rotate the left side pick roller bushing in the direction indicated by the arrow.



Pick roller bushing

Pick roller shaft

3. Gently lift and slide the pick roller shaft out of the left side of the ADF in the direction of the arrow. Be careful as it is easy to bind the shaft in the right side bushing.



The pick roller bearing may be hard to rotate. Do not try to turn it with your fingernail. Use a paper clip to turn the roller bearing if you can not rotate it with your fingertip.

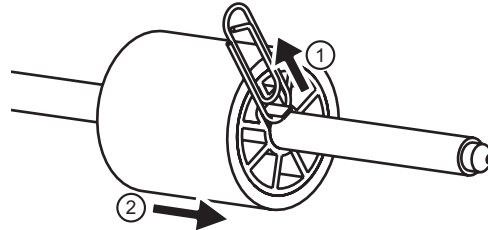


5. Remove the pick roller from the shaft.

Lift up the lock tab and slide the pick roller off the shaft.

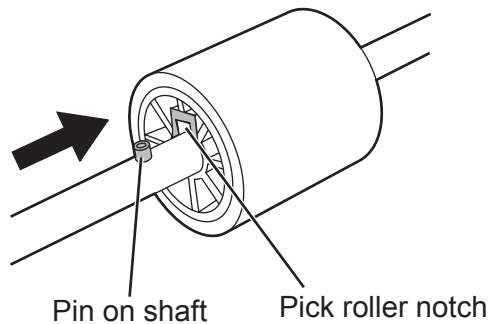


Take care if lifting the pick roller lock tab with your fingernail as it may get chipped or broken. If worried, try lifting the tab using a paper clip as shown in the following diagram.

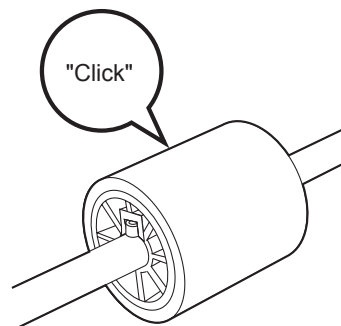


6. Attach the new pick roller.

Insert the shaft into the new pick roller, aligning the protruding pin on the shaft with the matching notch in the pick roller.



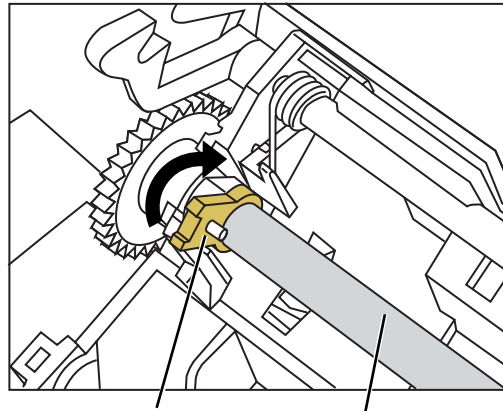
Make sure that the pick roller shaft is fully inserted. If it is not correctly attached, document jams and other feeding errors may occur. You should hear a "click" when the pick roller shaft is inserted correctly. Make sure you hear this noise when inserting the shaft into the pick roller.



7. Insert the pick roller and shaft back in the scanner.

To attach the pick roller to the scanner, follow the pick roller and shaft removal procedure in reverse.

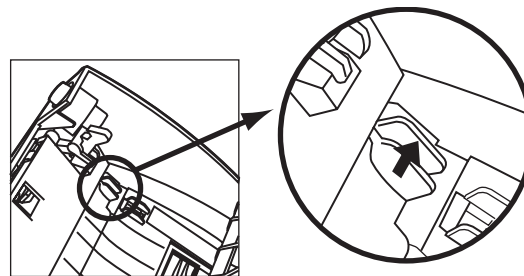
1. Rotate the left side pick roller bushing in the direction indicated by the arrow.



Pick roller bushing

Pick roller shaft

2. Open the tabs of the sheet guide release catch in the direction indicated by the arrow to lock the sheet guide in place.



8. Close the top cover.

You should hear a click when it is returned to its original position.



Be careful that the top cover does not shut on your fingers.



9. Attach the ADF paper chute.

10. Reset the pick roller usage counter.

The usage counter must be reset by an administrator. For details, refer to "[Resetting the Usage Counter](#)" (page 135).

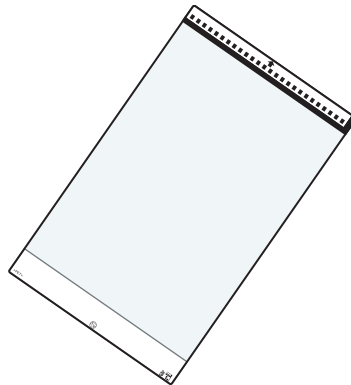
7.6.5 Purchasing the Carrier Sheet

If the "Carrier Sheet" provided with the scanner can no longer be used for scanning due to damage or wear-and-tear, you can purchase a new Carrier Sheet separately.

As a guideline, it is recommended to replace the Carrier Sheet every 500 scans.

However, the number of times of use differs according to usage. Replace the Carrier Sheet when it becomes scratched or dirty.

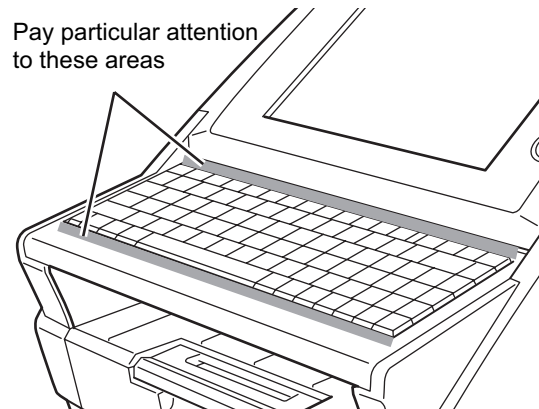
The Carrier Sheet is as shown below:



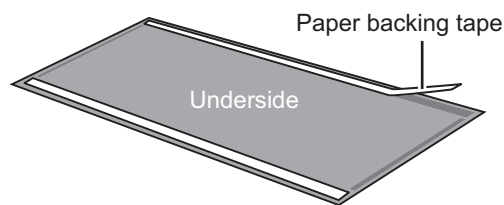
To obtain the Carrier Sheet, contact your FUJITSU dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

7.7 Replacing the Keyboard Cover

1. Remove the keyboard cover from the scanner.
2. Remove any remaining adhesive tape.

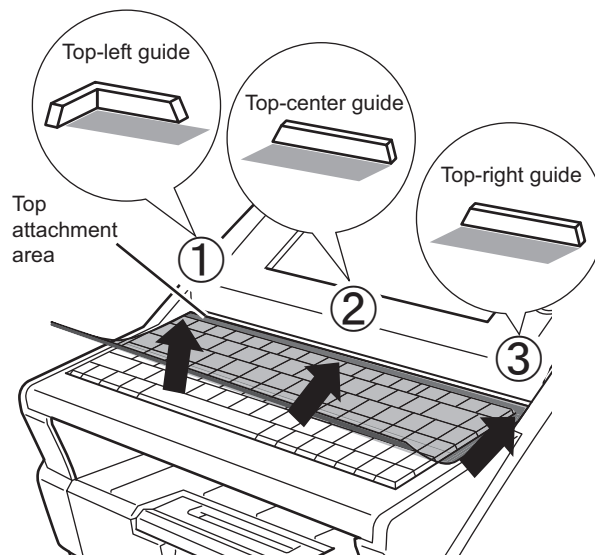


3. Turn the keyboard cover over and remove the paper backing from the top strip of double-sided tape.

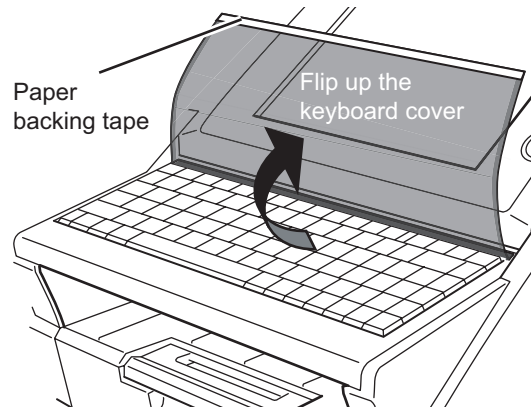


4. Align the top edge of the keyboard cover with the protruding guides, and firmly smooth the double-sided tape down.

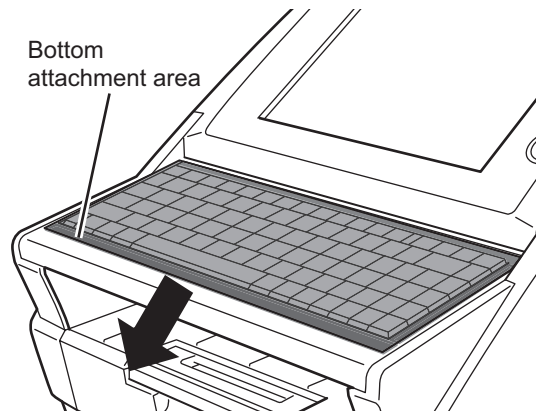
Align and attach the top-left corner first, then the center, and last the top-right corner.



5. Flip up the keyboard cover and remove the paper backing tape from the bottom strip of double-sided tape.



6. Gently stretch the keyboard cover forward and smooth the double-sided tape down.



7.8 Performing a Scan Test

After scanner cleaning or replacement of consumable parts, perform a scan test.

1. On the "Main Menu" screen, press the [Maintenance] button.

⇒ The "Maintenance" screen appears.

2. Press the [Scan Test] button.

A light blue rectangular header bar with the word "Maintenance" in black text.

Maintenance



Edit e-Mail Addresses



Roller Cleaning



Edit Fax Numbers



Scan Test

A blue rectangular button with a white border, containing a red circle with a diagonal slash and the word "Cancel".

Cancel

⇒ The "Scan Test" screen appears.















3. Load the document into the ADF paper chute for the scan test.


4. Press the [Scan] button.


Scan Test

Load a test page and press the [Scan] button.

■ Scan Settings Used ■

Option	Setting	Option	Setting
 Color Mode	Auto	 Sharpness	Off
 Paper Size	Auto	 Dropout Color	Off
 Resolution	200dpi	 Background Removal	Medium
 Scan Mode	Duplex	 Page Orientation	Off
 Compression	Medium	 Blank Page Skip	Off
 Brightness	Medium	 Multifeed Setup	Ultrasonic
 Contrast	Medium	 Edge Cropping	Off

 Cancel

 Scan

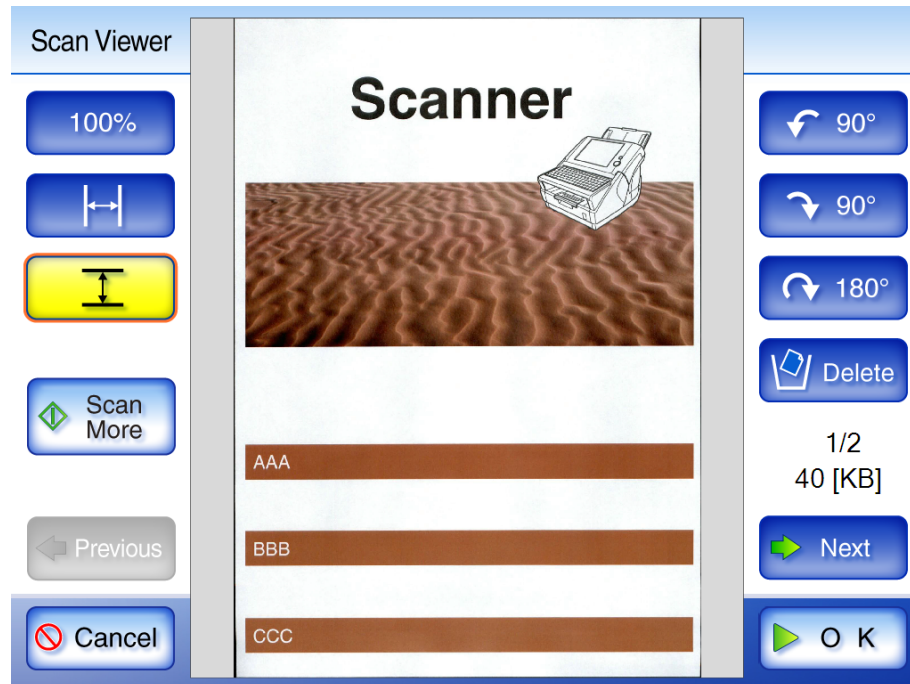
⇒ The scan test starts.

When the scan test has completed, the "Scan Viewer" screen appears.

If the scanner fails to scan correctly, an error message is displayed. For more details about how to deal with error messages, refer to ["E.2 Regular User Messages" \(page 457\)](#).

5. Check the scanned data.

For more details about "Scan Viewer", refer to ["6.10.1 Viewing a Scanned Page"](#) (page 343) or ["6.10.2 Rotating a Scanned Page"](#) (page 344).



6. Press the [OK] button.

⇒ The "Maintenance" screen is shown again.

Chapter 8

Troubleshooting

Admin

User

This chapter provides information on dealing with scanner operation problems such as paper jams, points to check before contacting your FUJITSU scanner dealer, and help on how to check device labels.

For details of error messages which may appear during administrator setting procedures, refer to ["E.1.1 Administrator Screen Messages" \(page 435\)](#).

For details of error messages which may appear during scanner operations or cleaning, refer to ["E.2 Regular User Messages" \(page 457\)](#).

For details of messages which might appear when acquiring log information in ["4.9 Using the Operation Logs Menus" \(page 137\)](#), refer to ["E.1.2 System Log Messages" \(page 449\)](#).

For details of device status messages, refer to ["E.1.3 Alert Monitor System Log Messages" \(page 453\)](#).

8.1 Removing Jammed Documents.....	382
8.2 Dealing with Detached Keycaps	386
8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting.....	388
8.4 Other Troubleshooting	400
8.5 Points to Check before Contacting Your FUJITSU Scanner Dealer.....	404
8.6 Checking the Scanner Labels	407
8.7 Pre-Maintenance Preparations	408

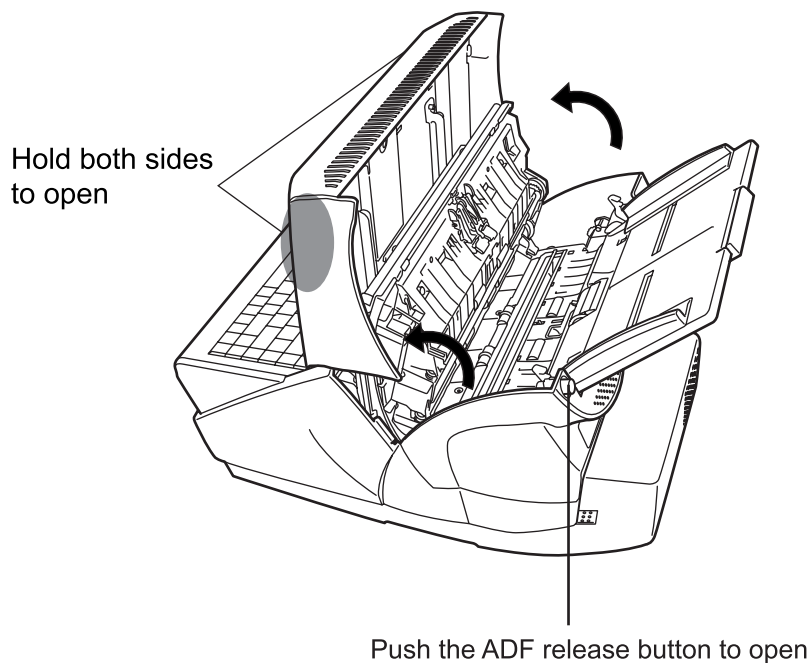
8.1 Removing Jammed Documents

If a document jam occurs, follow the procedure below to remove the jammed documents.



- When removing jammed documents, take care with dangling neckties, necklaces, etc. as they may easily become entangled in the scanner.
- The glass scanner windows inside the ADF can become hot when the scanner is used. Take care not burn your hands.

1. Remove all documents from the ADF paper chute.
2. Push the ADF release button, then hold both sides of the top cover and lift it open.



Be careful that the top cover does not slam shut on your fingers.

3. Remove the jammed document.



- Staples, paper clips, etc. can cause document jams. Check the document and feed path, and remove any such objects that may have come loose.
Any staples, clips, etc. should be removed from the document before starting a scan.
- Take care not to snag the pick springs when removing jammed documents.

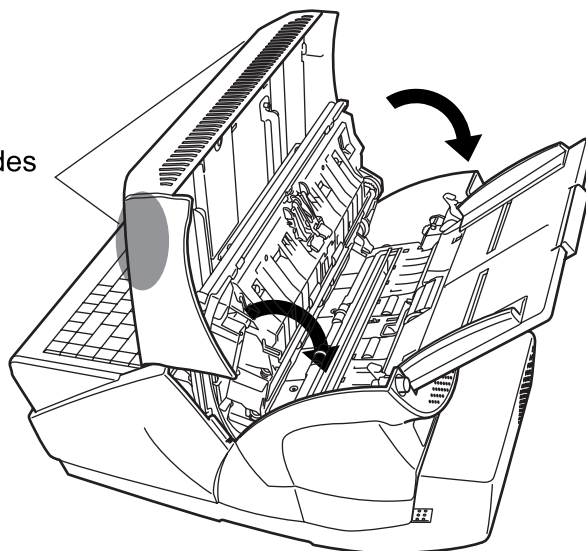
4. Holding both sides of the top cover, return it to its original position.

You should hear a click.



- Be careful that the top cover does not shut on your fingers.
- Make sure that the top cover is completely closed. If not completely closed, document jams and feeding errors may occur.
- When closing the top cover, do not slam it shut by pushing the touch panel as this may damage it.

Hold both sides
to close



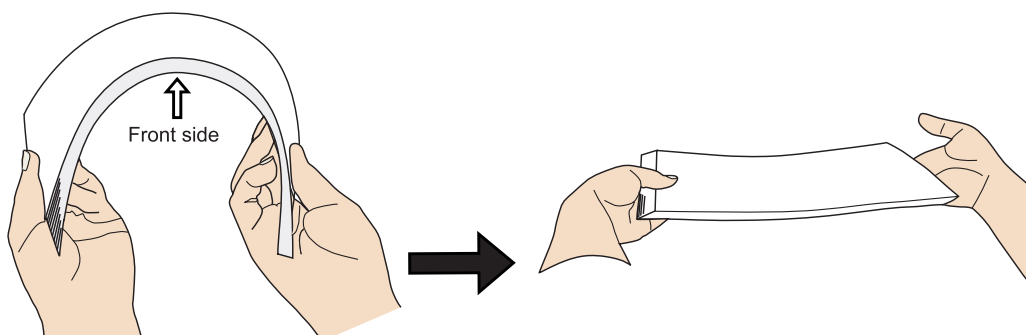


- Although no error message is displayed, document pages may remain in the ADF even after scanning is completed or canceled. Follow the procedure below to remove any such pages from the ADF.
 1. Remove all documents from the ADF paper chute.
 2. Push the ADF release button, then hold both sides of the top cover and lift it open.
 3. Remove the remaining documents.
 4. Close the top cover.
- If document pages become blocked while scanning, check the scanned data. Document pages which could not be scanned correctly may be shown in the "Scan Viewer". In this case, delete all pages not correctly scanned using the [Delete] button.

For more details about the "Scan Viewer" screen, refer to ["6.10.4 Deleting a Scanned Page" \(page 345\)](#).

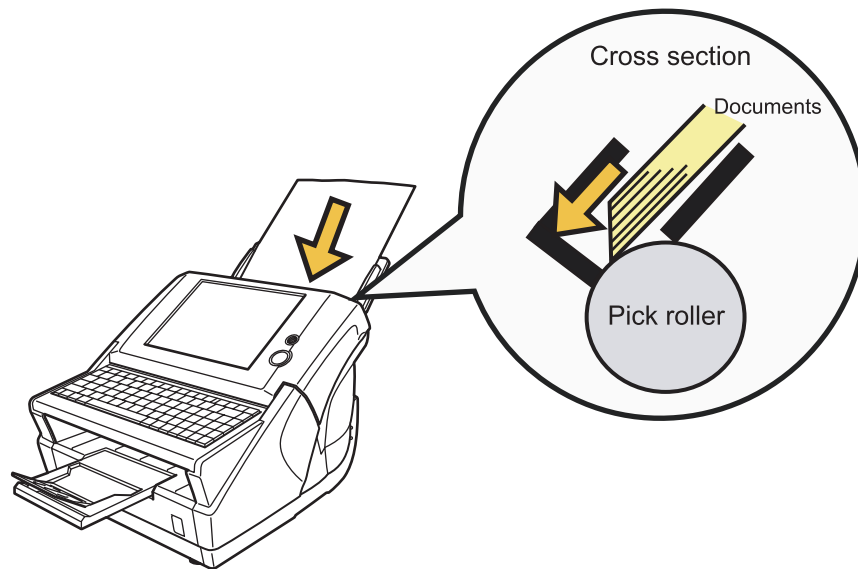
If document jams or multifeed errors occur frequently, try the following procedures.

1. Align the edges of the document sheets.
2. Lightly grip the ends of the document stack in both hands and flex it back forth, as shown below.



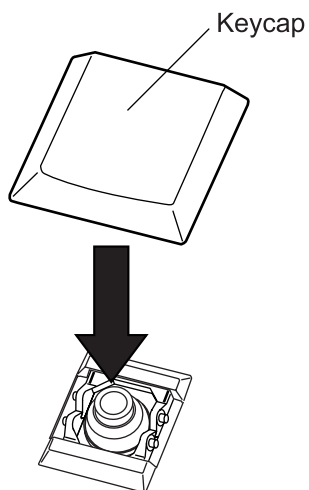
⇒ The edge of the document stack that will be loaded into the ADF paper chute should be skewed.

3. Load the documents into the ADF paper chute, as shown in the following diagram.



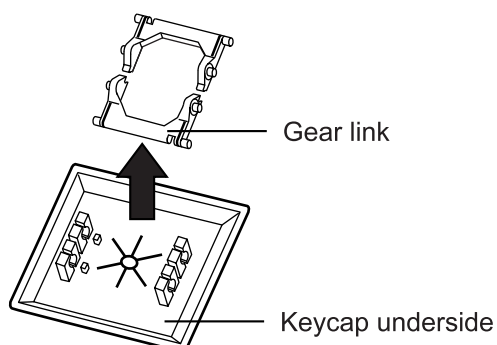
8.2 Dealing with Detached Keycaps

If a keycap comes loose from the keyboard, fit it back onto its original location and push it down until it clicks into place.

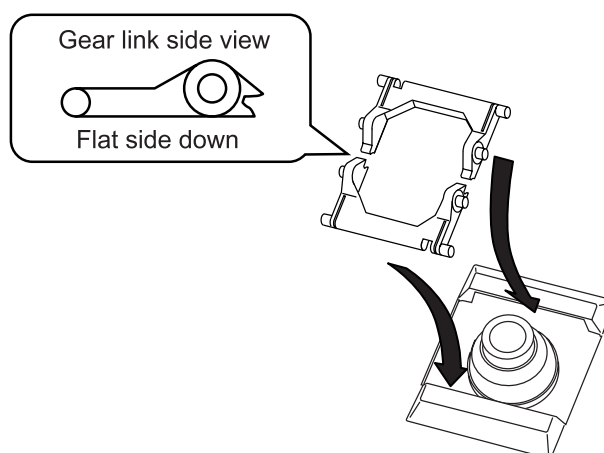


If a keycap and key switch become loose, they should be reattached as follows.

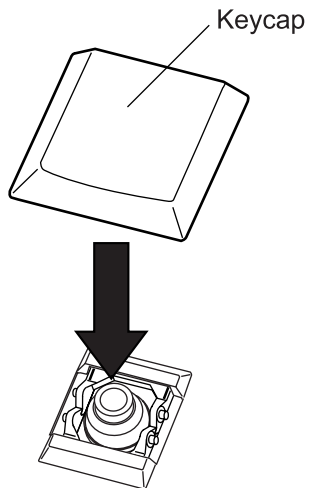
1. Remove the key switch from the keycap.



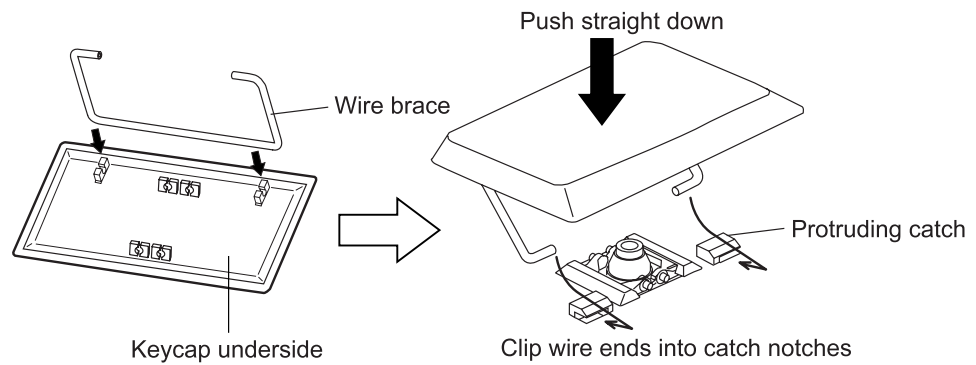
2. With the flat part of the key switch facing downwards, reattach it to the keyboard.



3. Fit the keycap back onto its original location and push it down until it clicks into place.



If the detached keycap has a wire brace, reattach the wire to the keyboard, align the keycap over the middle of the wire, and push the keycap down until it clicks into place.



8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting

If a network connection is not possible, first check the scanner status and system settings.

The following section provides information about general troubles that may occur when connecting to a network.

If the cause of the problem is unknown or the problem persists, check the items in ["8.5 Points to Check before Contacting Your FUJITSU Scanner Dealer"](#) (page 404) and contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

8.3.1 Basic Network Operation Tests

The following network operation tests are available on the administrator screen, and should be performed after the network has been setup.

- Checking basic network operation with a Ping test
- Checking the network operating status
- Checking the NTP server settings by synchronizing the system time (if using an NTP server)
- Checking the mail server by sending a test mail (if scanned data is to be sent as an e-mail, by fax, or when requesting alert notifications by e-mail)

■ Checking basic network operation with a Ping test

Check the network connection status of the following personal computers and servers associated with the network.

For details about the pinging procedure, refer to ["4.7.16 Checking the Network Connection with a Ping Test"](#) (page 129).

- Personal computer with Admin Tool installed
- Personal computer with Central Admin Console installed
- Personal computer with Central Admin Server software installed
- DNS server
- WINS server
- NTP server
- LDAP server
- SMTP server
- File server
- FTP server
- Print server
- Domain controller



Depending on the server setting, there may be no response from a ping test.

When checking the network connection status of a server by its IP address, the following results are possible.

Result	Action
"Ping statistics" shows "Lost=0 (0% loss)"	None
"Ping statistics" shows "Lost=4 (100% loss)"	Check that the ping target IP address is correct.
	If the ping target IP address is correct, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.
"Ping statistics" shows "Lost=N (1 to 99% loss)"	There may be a quality problem with the LAN cable. Replace the LAN cable and try again.
	In "4.7.17 Checking the Network Operating Status" (page 131) , change the [Link Speed/Duplex Mode] from "Auto-Negotiation" to a fixed mode.
"Hardware error"	The LAN cable may have become disconnected during the Ping test. Check the status of the LAN cable and try again.

When checking the network connection status of a server by its host name or FQDN, the following results are possible.

Result	Action
"Ping statistics" shows "Lost=0 (0% loss)"	None
"Ping request could not find host xxxxxxxxxx. Please check the name and try again."	Check that the ping target host name or FQDN is correct.
	Check that the DNS server or WINS server settings are correct.
	If the ping target host name or FQDN is correct, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its host name or FQDN" (page 395) for further solutions.
"Ping statistics" shows "Lost=4 (100% loss)"	Check that the ping target host name or FQDN is correct.
	In "4.7.17 Checking the Network Operating Status" (page 131) , change the [Link Speed/Duplex Mode] from "Auto-Negotiation" to a fixed mode.
"Ping statistics" shows "Lost=N (1 to 99% loss)"	There may be a quality problem with the LAN cable. Replace the LAN cable and try again.
	In "4.7.17 Checking the Network Operating Status" (page 131) , change the [Link Speed/Duplex Mode] from "Auto-Negotiation" to a fixed mode.
"Hardware error"	The LAN cable may have become disconnected during the Ping test. Check the status of the LAN cable and try again.

■ Checking the network operating status

Check the network status.

For details about the checking procedure, refer to ["4.7.17 Checking the Network Operating Status" \(page 131\)](#).

Check the "Network Information" screen, and follow each action described below according to the message that is shown.

Network settings	Action
The information shown is all valid.	None
The information shown is not all valid.	If DHCP is not used: Check that the "IP Address" setting is correct.
	If DHCP is used: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check that physical network connection to the DHCP server is functioning correctly.• Check the DHCP server. The server may not be operating normally, or the DHCP settings (restricted number of leases or MAC address validation) may be causing invalid IP addresses to be assigned.
The information shown is valid, but pinging indicates that the network connection is not functioning normally.	In "4.7.17 Checking the Network Operating Status" (page 131) , change the [Link Speed/Duplex Mode] from "Auto-Negotiation" to a fixed mode. If the problem persists, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.

■ Checking the NTP server settings by synchronizing the system time

On the "NTP Server" screen, press the [Sync Time] button to check if the system time can be synchronized.

After pressing the [Sync Time] button, follow each action described below according to the message that is shown.

Message	Action
System time has been successfully synchronized.	None
System time synchronization failed.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the specified NTP server IP address, host name, or FQDN for mistakes, and correct them. • Check the network path between to the NTP server for problems. • The NTP server may be busy. Wait a short time before trying again to synchronize the system time. If that does not work, the specified server may not be an NTP server, so try a different NTP server. • The specified NTP server cannot provide a trusted date and time. It attempted to acquire the date and time from a higher level NTP server, but failed. Try a different NTP server or have the network administrator investigate. • Check that the time is correct. If the time is incorrect, adjust the date/time, and try again. • Refer to "4.6.5 Setting the Date/Time" (page 59), adjust the date/time, and try again.

■ Checking the mail server by sending a test mail

On the "Alert Notification" screen, press the [Test] button to check if an e-mail can be sent to the specified destination.

After pressing the [Test] button, follow each action described below according to the message that is shown.

Message	Action
Sending...	<p>If no error message appears and the "sending" indicator disappears, the test mail was sent successfully to the mail server.</p> <p>Check that the alert notification e-mail has arrived at the specified destination. If the alert notification e-mail has not arrived at the expected destination, check that the part of the e-mail address before the "@" has been entered correctly.</p>
Test e-mail could not be sent.	Check that the computer connected to the SMTP server is running properly.
	Check if an e-mail can be sent to the address from other personal computers in the network.
	Ping the SMTP server to check that it and its network connection are working properly.
	<p>If there is a negative response to the SMTP server ping test, check that the system network is functioning normally by pinging the SMTP server from another machine in the network.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If only the scanner's network connection is not operating correctly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.• If the problem seems to be with the SMTP server cannot connect to its network, request the network administrator to check that the SMTP server and the network connection to the server are functioning normally.

8.3.2 Other Network Connection Troubleshooting

There are many reasons why a network connection may not be possible.

The following section provides information about general troubles that may occur when connecting to a network.

If the cause of the problem is unknown or the problem persists, check the items in ["8.5 Points to Check before Contacting Your FUJITSU Scanner Dealer" \(page 404\)](#) and contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

■ Failure to connect to a server using its IP address

If a server cannot be connected to by using its IP address, and does not respond to a ping test, try the following steps:

No.	Problem	Action
1	Connection error between a server and the scanner, or problem with the LAN cable.	<p>Check that the LAN cable has been attached to both the scanner and server correctly.</p> <p>If the server is connected using a LAN cable (straight type), in case auto-mdi (automatic selection) is not supported, a LAN cable (crossover type), switch, or router is required between the scanner and server.</p> <p>If this is not the case, the LAN cable may be faulty. Find a LAN cable that functions normally and try again.</p>
2	IP address or subnet mask is invalid.	<p>On the "IP Address" screen, check that the IP address or subnet mask settings are correct.</p> <p>For more details about the "IP Address" screen, refer to "4.7.1 Giving the Scanner an IP Address" (page 76).</p>

No.	Problem	Action
3	When using DHCP, the DHCP server does not operate normally, or there is a problem with the DHCP server settings.	<p>If using DHCP, on the "Network Status" screen, check that IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway settings are all correct.</p> <p>If these settings are not correct, the DHCP server may not operate normally, or the DHCP server may not assign valid IP addresses because of restricted number of leases or MAC address validation.</p> <p>Check the DHCP server connection status and the details of the server settings.</p> <p>For more details about the "Network Status" screen, refer to "4.7.17 Checking the Network Operating Status" (page 131).</p>
4	Another host or communication device is connected using the same IP address as the scanner.	<p>If the same IP address has already been used by another host or communication device, then even if the other device has been given a different IP address the server may not recognize the scanner's "duplicate" IP address until it is rebooted. Restart the server.</p> <p>If a duplicate IP address connection from another host or communication device exists on a LAN, both it will be unusable. If a duplicate IP address connection from another host or communication device exists, pull out its LAN cable and restart the server.</p>
5	Access is denied due to the establishment of a firewall between the server and the scanner.	<p>If a firewall has been established between the server and the scanner, check that it has not been set to deny access to the network.</p>

No.	Problem	Action
6	The network link speed/duplex mode for the scanner and server are different, or Auto-Negotiation is not supported by the server.	<p>For this scanner, the default [Link Speed/Duplex Mode] setting is "Auto-Negotiation".</p> <p>On the "Network Status" screen, match the scanner and server's network link speed/duplex mode settings.</p> <p>If the problem persists in spite of having set both the scanner and server's network link speed/duplex settings to "Auto-Negotiation", select something other than "Auto-Negotiation" and check again.</p> <p>For more details about the "Network Status" screen, refer to "4.7.17 Checking the Network Operating Status" (page 131).</p>

■ Failure to connect to a server using its host name or FQDN

If a server cannot be connected to by using its host name or FQDN, and does not respond to a ping test, try the following steps:

No.	Problem	Action
1	Same as in "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393).	Check if a network connection is possible by trying the same solution for "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393).
2	The scanner's DNS server or WINS server settings are invalid.	Check that the DNS and WINS server settings are correct.
3	The DNS server or WINS server is not functioning normally, or there is an error with the DNS or WINS server network connection.	<p>Ping the DNS and WINS servers to check they are functioning normally.</p> <p>If the DNS or WINS server is not functioning, request the network administrator to check its status.</p>

■ Failure to add a network printer

If adding a network printer to/from the scanner is not possible, try the following steps. Also, refer to how to set printer settings, how to add a network printer, and the printer manual before hand.

No.	Problem	Action
1	The Windows® XP printer driver has not been installed on the print server.	Install the Windows® XP printer driver on the print server. Check that the Windows® XP printer driver has been correctly installed on the print server. For more details, refer to "4.7.13 Setting the Network Printers" (page 102).
2	Network printer shared name has been changed.	Check the shared name on the print server.
3	The specified network printer path is invalid.	Check that the specified network printer path is correct.

■ Failure to print on a network printer

If printing on a network printer which has been set in the scanner is not possible, try the following steps. Also, refer to how to set the printer settings, how to add a network printer, or the printer manual before hand.

No.	Problem	Action
1	Printer is not usable, due to an out of paper error, paper jam, or similar problem.	Check whether or not the printer is ready for printing, deal with the cause of the error, and try again.
2	Same as in "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393).	Check if a network connection is possible by trying the same solution for "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393).
3	Not authorized to print on network printer.	Contact the administrator to check if printing is allowed on the network printer.
4	Printing is impossible due to a printer or spooler error.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check that printing is possible from the print server application.• Check that the print server spooling is operating normally.

8.3.3 Failure to Access the Scanner using a Web Browser, Admin Tool, or Central Admin Server

If access is not possible when attempting to connect to the scanner using a Web browser or the Admin Tool, or when attempting to connect to the Central Admin Server from the Central Admin Console, try the following steps:

No.	Problem	Action
1	Same as in "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) .	Check if a network connection is possible by trying the same solution for "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) .
2	The DNS server or WINS server is not functioning normally, or the scanner name has not been registered in the DHCP or WINS server.	Check the connectivity of the specified IP address. If it is possible to connect the scanner using the Admin Tool with a specified IP address, specify the scanner's IP address in the DNS or WINS server. Also, check the DNS or WINS server settings using the Admin Tool or Web browser.
3	A misconfigured firewall between the Admin Tool or Web browser and the scanner is denying access.	If there is a firewall between the computer running the Admin Tool or Web browser and the scanner, check that its settings are not preventing access.
4	The URL of the target scanner is not registered as a trusted site.	Set the scanner URL as a trusted site for Internet Explorer. In Microsoft® Internet Explorer, set the following settings in the "Tools" menu, "Internet Options". In the [Security] tab, select [Trusted sites]. Press the [Sites] button, enter the URL of the scanner in the "Add this website to the zone" field, and press the [Add] button.


No.	Problem	Action
5	In Microsoft® Internet Explorer, in the "Tools" menu, "Internet Options", [Security] tab, the security level for the corresponding zone is set as "High", or in [Custom level], "Scripting", "Active scripting" is set to "Prompt" or "Disable".	<p>When connecting using the scanner name, the connection will be an intranet connection. When connecting using an IP address, it will be an internet connection. If the URL includes a scanner name, the scanner will be connected using an Intranet Zone. If the URL includes an IP address, the scanner will be connected using the Internet Zone.</p> <p>In Microsoft® Internet Explorer, in the "Tools" menu, "Internet Options", try the following settings for the corresponding zone.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To enable "Active scripting", set in one of the following ways: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In the [Security] tab, set the required "Security level for this zone" to "Medium". In the [Security] tab, select the [Custom level] button. Then, set the "Scripting", "Active scripting" to "Enable". If connecting via the Internet zone, on the [Privacy] tab, set the level to below "Medium High". <p>After the above settings have been performed, in "Temporary Internet Files" or "Browsing history", press the [Delete cookies] button to delete all temporary internet files.</p>
6	The scanner is in standby mode.	Press the startup button to start the scanner.
7	A proxy server is being used.	<p>Set the proxy server to not be used.</p> <p>Open the "Internet Options" in the "Tools" menu of Microsoft® Internet Explorer, then press the [LAN settings] button in the [Connections] tab and remove the check from the "Use a proxy server for your LAN (These settings will not apply to dial-up or VPN connections)." option.</p>
8	There is an error with the connection protocol setting.	<p>Check if SSL is enabled on the "Admin Network" screen.</p> <p>For more details, refer to "4.7.2 Setting the Admin Network" (page 78).</p>
9	There is an error with the port number setting.	<p>Check the specified port number on the "Admin Network" screen.</p> <p>For more details, refer to "4.7.2 Setting the Admin Network" (page 78).</p>

No.	Problem	Action
10	In the Microsoft® Internet Explorer, "Tools" menu - "Internet Options" - [Advanced] tab, the [Use SSL 3.0] checkbox under "Settings" - "Security" section is not selected.	Open the "Internet Options" in the "Tools" menu of Microsoft® Internet Explorer, then press the [Advanced] tab, "Settings" - "Security" section, select the "Use SSL 3.0" checkbox.

8.4 Other Troubleshooting

This section describes problems that may occur during scanning and gives information on how to deal with them. Before requesting repair, check the following list of common problems.

If the problem still cannot be solved after consulting the troubleshooting suggestions, check the points in ["8.5 Points to Check before Contacting Your FUJITSU Scanner Dealer"](#) (page 404) and then contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

Problem	Check item	Suggestion
Scanner cannot be turned on.	Has the Startup button been pressed?	Press the Startup button.
	Are the AC cable and AC adapter properly connected to the scanner?	Connect the AC cable and the AC adapter.
		Disconnect the AC cable from the scanner, wait at least ten seconds, then reattach the cable and turn the power back on again. If the problem persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
Scanning does not start.	Has the document been loaded correctly into the ADF paper chute?	Reload the documents into the ADF paper chute.
	Is the ADF completely closed?	Close the top cover completely.
	Does the same problem occur after turning the scanner power off and back on again, and re-logging in?	Disconnect the AC cable from the scanner, wait at least ten seconds, then reattach the cable and turn the power back on again. If the problem persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
Even after pressing the top cover [SCAN] button, scanning does not start.	Is the  button displayed on the touch panel?	The top cover [SCAN] button can only be used on the following screens. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• "Send e-Mail" screen• "Send Fax" screen• "Print" screen• "Save" screen• "Scan Viewer" screen• "Scan Test" screen• "Message Screen"

Problem	Check item	Suggestion
Multifeed errors occur frequently.	Do the documents satisfy the conditions given in "A.2 Paper Requirements" (page 411) ?	Use documents which satisfy the conditions described in "A.2 Paper Requirements" (page 411) .
	Has the document been loaded correctly into the ADF paper chute?	Riffle and realign the document stack, then load it back into the ADF paper chute.
	Is the document stack more than 5mm thick?	Remove sheets from the stack to reduce it to a thickness of 5mm or less.
	Is the pad assembly dirty?	Clean the pad assembly. For more details, refer to "7.2 Cleaning the ADF" (page 358) .
	Is the pad assembly worn out?	Replace the pad assembly. For more details, refer to "7.6 Replacing Parts" (page 367) .
Paper is not fed into the scanner. (Pick errors are frequent or document feed stops midway)	Do the documents satisfy the conditions given in "A.2 Paper Requirements" (page 411) ?	Use documents which satisfy the conditions described in "A.2 Paper Requirements" (page 411) .
	Is the pick roller dirty?	Clean the pick roller. For more details, refer to "7.2 Cleaning the ADF" (page 358) .
	Is the pick roller worn out?	Replace the pick roller. For more details, refer to "7.6 Replacing Parts" (page 367) .
	Is there any foreign matter in the document feed path?	Clean the document feed path.
Scanned data is elongated.	Are the feed rollers dirty?	Clean the feed rollers. For more details, refer to "7.2 Cleaning the ADF" (page 358) .
Shadow on the leading edge of the scanned data.	Are the feed rollers dirty?	Clean the feed rollers. For more details, refer to "7.2 Cleaning the ADF" (page 358) .
Vertical line on the scanned data.	Are the glass scanner windows dirty?	For more details on cleaning the glass scanner windows, refer to "Chapter 7 Scanner Care" (page 355) .
Scanned data appears skewed or distorted.	Has the document been loaded correctly?	Load the document correctly.
Quality of scanned data is poor.	Are the glass scanner windows dirty?	Clean the glass scanner windows.

Problem	Check item	Suggestion
Cannot login with administrator password.	Was the Caps Lock on when the password was entered?	Turn off the Caps Lock and try logging in again. If the password has been lost or forgotten, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
The "Keyboard error or not keyboard present" message is shown on the screen, the scanner does not startup.	After turning the scanner off, was the power turned back on again immediately?	Disconnect the AC cable from the scanner, wait at least ten seconds, then reattach the cable and turn the power back on again. If the problem persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
Input field entry entered via the keyboard does not appear on the screen.	Has the input field been selected?	Select the input field and try again.
		Press the [Cancel] button and try again.
		To use the touch panel, touch the input field directly and try again.
Saving is not possible after pressing [Save] on the "File Download" dialog box.	Does the length of the "Save As" folder path (folder path plus file name) exceed 259 characters?	Select a "Save As" folder that respects the limit.
Status screen stops at "Printing scan data to...".	Is there enough free space in the drive on which the spool folder for the print server exists?	Make sure that there is enough space in the drive.
No response from pressing tab or enter key after a file download operation has been selected via the network interface or the download process does not start.	Has the [Download], [Get CSV] or [Backup] button been selected?	Try pressing a different tab or button on the screen.
An error occurs when installing an Admin Tool.	Is an Admin Tool of another language already installed?	Uninstall the existing Admin Tool, and try again.

Problem	Check item	Suggestion
The login screen is not displayed when connecting via the network.	Are the SSL settings correct?	Close the screen, correct the settings, and try connecting again.
	Was the [Yes] button selected on the "Security Warning" dialog box when connecting with HTTPS?	Close the screen and try connecting again. Select the [Yes] button on the "Security Warning" dialog box when connecting.

8.5 Points to Check before Contacting Your FUJITSU Scanner Dealer

Before contacting your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider, check the following points.

8.5.1 General Details

Info	Findings
Model	fi-6010N
Serial No.	(Example) 000001 For the serial number, refer to "8.6 Checking the Scanner Labels" (page 407).
Production date	Year Month 2007-08 (August, 2007) For details, refer to "8.6 Checking the Scanner Labels" (page 407).
Date of purchase	Year Month Day
System version	
Symptoms	
Frequency of trouble	
Total throughput	

8.5.2 Error Status

■ Problem when connecting to the scanner via personal computer

Info	Findings
OS (Windows)	
Admin tool version	
Displayed error message	

■ Document feed trouble

Info	Findings
Document type	
Main purpose of use	
Last cleaned on	Year Month Day
Consumables last replaced on	Year Month Day
Error message details	

■ Problem with Central Admin

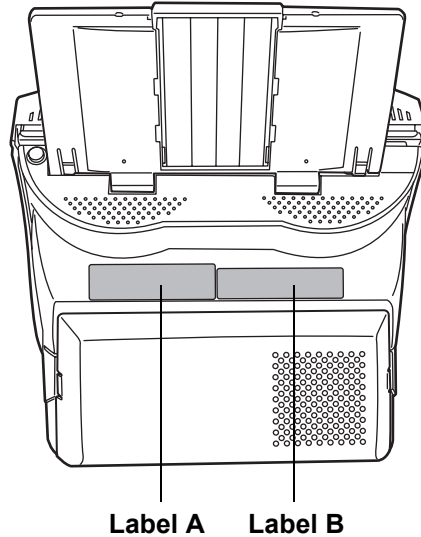
Info	Findings
Type of OS (Windows) for Central Admin Server software	
Type of OS (Windows) for Central Admin Console	
Central Admin Server software version	
Central Admin Console version	
Displayed error message	

■ Other problems

Info	Findings
Can both the original document and scanner image be sent by e-mail or fax?	Circle one: Available Unavailable

8.6 Checking the Scanner Labels

This section provides help on how to check the scanner's two information labels. The following diagrams show where the labels are located on the scanner.



- Label A (example): Contains various scanner information.

MODEL fi-***** **V == ***A **kg
 PART NO. *****-**** DATE 200*-**
 SER. NO. *****

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9

PFU Limited
 a Fujitsu company
 MADE IN *****

- **Label B (example):** Indicates the various standards that the scanner conforms to.



8.7 Pre-Maintenance Preparations

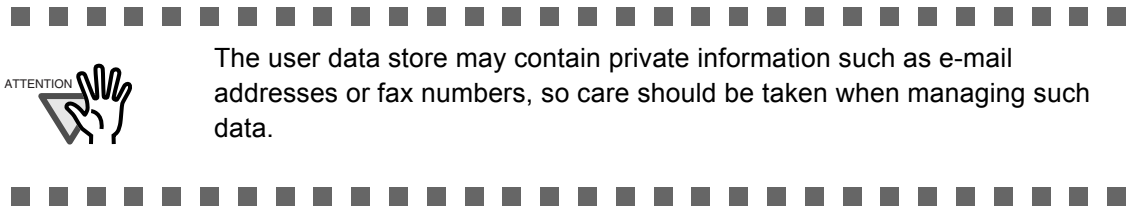
Before sending the scanner for maintenance, the user data store and system settings should be backed up. Refer to the following sections for details:

- "Backing up the User Data Store" from "4.10.1 Maintaining the User Data Store" (page 143)"
- "4.10.2 Maintaining the System Settings" (page 149)

After backing up the user data store and system settings, the original data may be deleted. Refer to the following sections for details:

If the hard disk is replaced, all settings will revert to their factory default values.

- "Clearing the User Data Store" (page 148) from "4.10.1 Maintaining the User Data Store" (page 143)"
- "Clearing the System Log" (page 142) from "4.10.2 Maintaining the System Settings" (page 149)





ADF Paper Specifications

Admin

User

This appendix describes the paper size and quality requirements for ensuring that the ADF operates correctly when scanning documents.

A.1 Paper Size 410

A.2 Paper Requirements..... 411

A.3 Maximum Document Loading Capacity 414

A.4 Area not to be Perforated 415

A.5 Multifeed Detection Conditions..... 416

A.1 Paper Size

The following paper sizes can be scanned with this scanner:

Width: 52mm to 216mm (2.1in to 8.5 in)

Length: 74mm to 356mm(*) (2.9in to 14in)

* When "Custom" paper size setting is used, a page length of up to 863mm (34in) is allowed for document scanning.

A.2 Paper Requirements

A.2.1 Paper Type

The following paper types are recommended for use with the ADF:

- Woodfree paper
- Wood containing paper

When documents of a paper type other than those listed above are used, test-scan a few sheets first to check if the document can be scanned without problem.

A.2.2 Paper Weight

The following paper weights can be used with the ADF:

- For general scanning
 - 52 g/m² to 127 g/m² (14 lb to 34 lb)
 - For A8 and Business Card size, 127 g/m² only
- For scanning with a Carrier Sheet
 - Up to 127 g/m² (Up to 34 lb)
 - Up to 63.5 g/m² (Up to 17 lb) (when scanning half fold paper)

A.2.3 Precautions

The following documents may not scan successfully:

- Documents of non-uniform thickness (e.g. envelopes and documents with attachments)
- Wrinkled or curled documents (See the following HINT)
- Folded or torn documents
- Documents with appended photographs, notes, etc.
- Tracing paper
- Coated paper
- Carbon paper
- Carbonless paper
- Photosensitive paper
- Perforated or punched documents
- Documents that are not square or rectangular
- Exceptionally thin documents (less than 52 g/m²)
- Photographs

Do not attempt to scan the following types of documents:

- Paper-clipped or stapled documents
- Documents on which the ink is still wet
- Documents smaller than A8 Portrait
- Documents wider than Letter size (8.5inches = 216mm, A4 is 210mm wide)
- Non-paper documents (such as fabric, foil, transparent paper)



- Carbonless paper contains chemical substances that may damage the pad assembly or the pick and other rollers when documents are fed. Pay attention to the following:

Cleaning:

If pick errors occur frequently, clean the pad assembly and pick roller.

For details on cleaning the pad assembly and pick roller, refer to "[Chapter 7 Scanner Care](#)" (page 355).

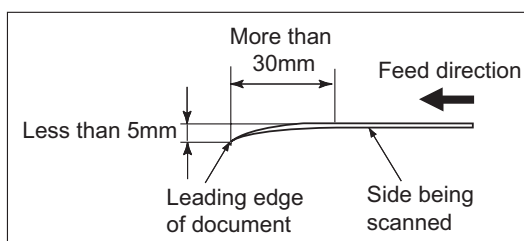
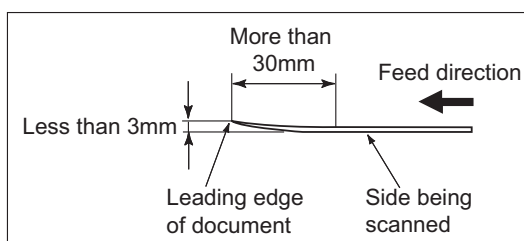
Replacing parts:

The service life of the pad assembly and pick roller may be shortened when compared to scanning only wood containing paper documents.

- When wood containing paper manuscripts are scanned, the life of the pad assembly and pick roller may be shortened compared with the case where woodfree paper manuscripts are scanned.
- When scanning photographs, the face of the photograph may become damaged.



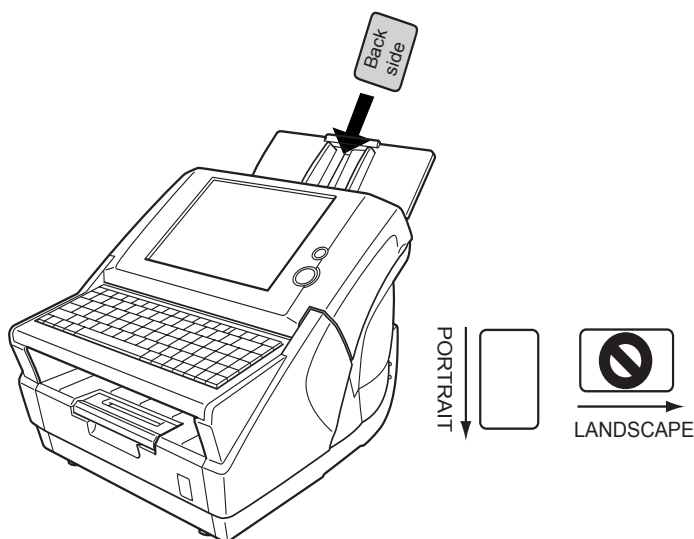
- When scanning semi-transparent documents, set the scan [Brightness] to "Light" to avoid image bleed through.
- To prevent the rollers from becoming dirty, avoid scanning documents containing large areas written or filled in with pencil. If scanning of such documents is unavoidable, clean the rollers frequently.
- To operate correctly, the ADF requires the leading edges of all document sheets be evenly aligned. Make sure that curling of the leading edge is within the following tolerances:



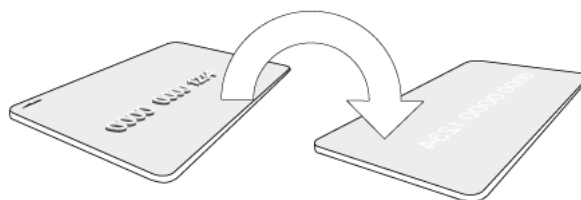


Take the following precautions when scanning plastic cards (for example ID cards).

- In Scan Settings, set the Multifeed Setup to [None]. For more details about Multifeed Setup, refer to ["6.8.17 Multifeed Detection \(Layer and Length\)"](#) (page 337).
- Place one card at a time into the ADF paper chute.
- Cards must be fed through the ADF in portrait mode, as in the following figure.



- Cards should be placed face down in the ADF paper chute.
- Embossed cards should be placed with the raised lettering side down.

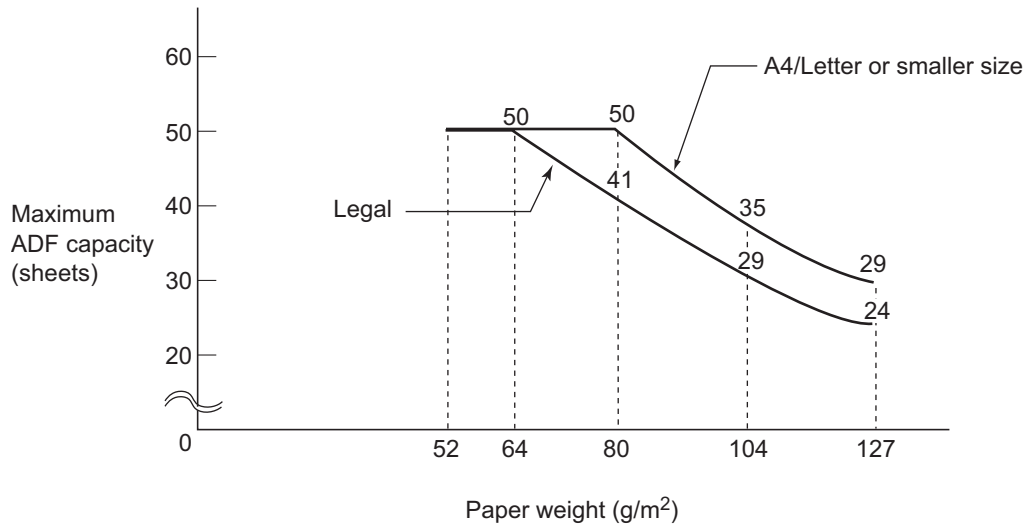


- Cards should be of the following specifications:
 - ISO7810-compliant, Type ID-1 cards
 - Width × Length: 2.1in X 3.4in / 54mm X 86mm
 - Thickness: 0.03 ± 0.003in / 0.76 ± 0.08mm
 - Material: PVC (polyvinyl chloride) or PVCA (polyvinyl chloride acetate)
- Cards that are excessively stiff may not be fed smoothly by the ADF.
- Cards that have become dirty from handling should be wiped clean before scanning.

A.3 Maximum Document Loading Capacity

The maximum number of sheets that can be loaded into the ADF paper chute is determined by the length and weight of the document paper.

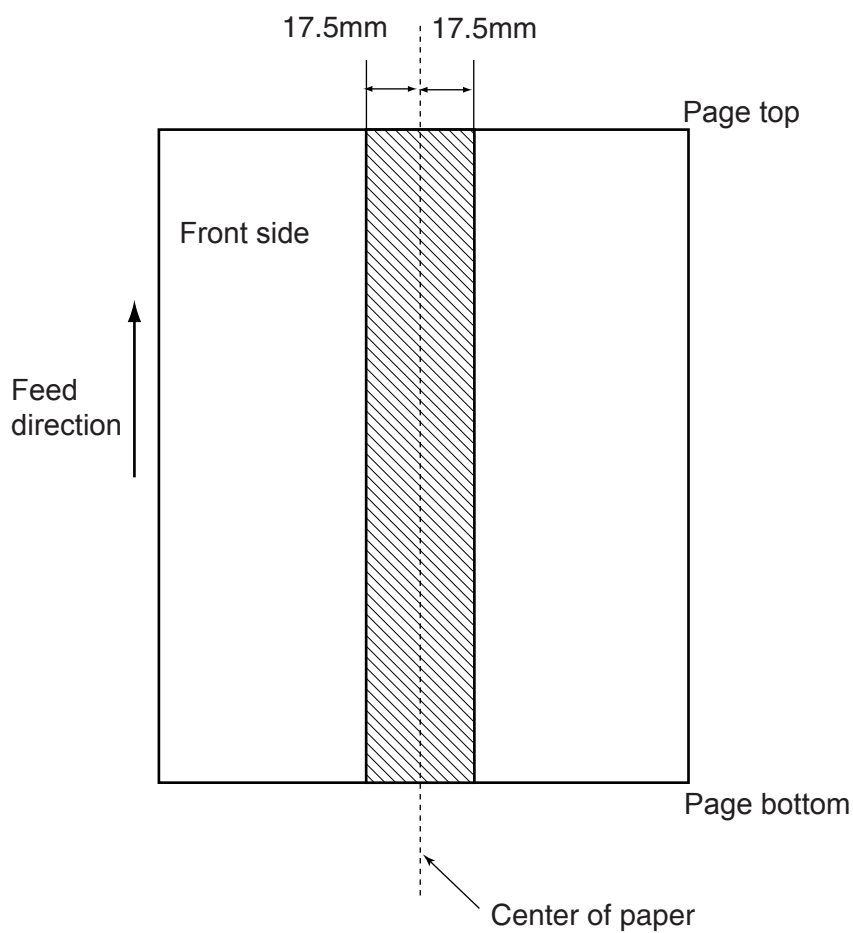
The following graph shows the maximum document loading capacity of ADF according to paper size and weight.



Unit	Standard paper weights						
g/m ²	52	64	75	80	90	104	127
lb	14	17	20	21	24	28	34
kg	45	55	64.5	69	77.5	90	110

A.4 Area not to be Perforated

ADF feed problems can occur while scanning if the document has any holes (punched, etc) in the shaded area shown in the following figure.



A.5 Multifeed Detection Conditions

There are three multifeed detection modes: document layer, document length, and both document layer and length. The following conditions must be satisfied in each of these detection modes. The type of document and document conditions can cause the multifeed detection rate to drop.

A.5.1 Detection by Layer

If [Ultrasonic] is selected in ["6.8.17 Multifeed Detection \(Layer and Length\)" \(page 337\)](#), multifeeds are detected by layer.

In this case, set sheets of the same thickness in the ADF at any one time.

- Document thickness: 0.065 to 0.15mm
- Punched holes are not allowed within 17.5mm (0.7in) either side of the center of paper.
- Do not glue on any other paper within 17.5mm (0.7in) either side of the center of paper.

A.5.2 Detection by Length

If [Length] is selected in ["6.8.17 Multifeed Detection \(Layer and Length\)" \(page 337\)](#), multifeeds are detected by length

In this case, set sheets of the same length in the ADF at any one time.

- Document length deviation: 1% or less
- Punched holes are not allowed within 17.5mm (0.7in) either side of the center of paper.

A.5.3 Detection by both Layer and Length

If [Both] is selected in "6.8.17 Multifeed Detection (Layer and Length)" (page 337), mulifeeds are detected by both layer and length.

In this case, set sheets of the same thickness and length in the ADF at any one time.

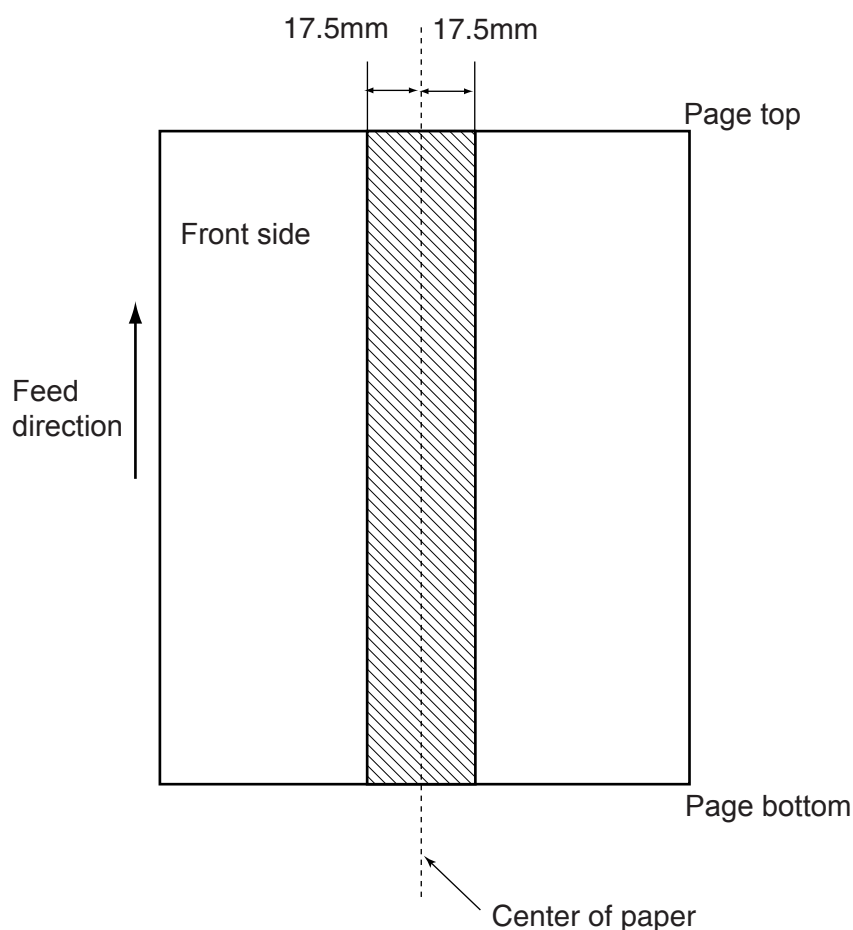
- Document thickness: 0.065 to 0.15mm
- Document length deviation: 1% or less
- Punched holes are not allowed within 17.5mm (0.7in) either side of the center of paper.
- Do not glue on any other paper within 17.5mm (0.7in) either side of the center of paper.



- Multifeed detection by layer will often mis-detect very thick paper or plastic documents. When scanning such documents, select "None" on the "Multi-feed Setup" screen.
- Multifeed may not be detected for the top and bottom 25mm of a document.



Area where multifeed detection is possible



Appendix B

Management Settings and Files

Admin

User

B

This appendix describes the scanner operating environment and management settings and files.

B.1 e-Mail Address Setting Values 420

B.2 Scanner Configuration File Format 421

B.1 e-Mail Address Setting Values

e-Mail addresses may be up to 256 characters long. One of the following e-mail address formats must be used:

- *XXXXXXXX@IP_address*
- *XXXXXXXX@Host_name*
- *XXXXXXXX@Domain_name*

<i>XXXXXXXX</i>	Comprised of alphanumerics and the following symbols. ! # \$ % & ' * + - / = ? ^ _ ` { } ~ . However, periods (.) cannot be used in the following cases. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Using periods (.) as a initial character• Using periods (.) as a last element• Using periods (.) consecutively
<i>IP_address</i>	Comprised of numbers separated by periods (.). IP addresses within the following ranges may be used: 1.0.0.1 - 126.255.255.254 128.0.0.1 - 191.255.255.254 192.0.0.1 - 223.255.255.254
<i>Host_name</i>	Comprised of alphanumerics and hyphens (-) only. Initial character may not be a hyphen.
<i>Domain_name</i>	Name elements comprised of alphanumerics and hyphens (-) are separated by periods (.). Each name element may contain up to 63 characters, and only alphabetic characters may be used for the last element.

B.2 Scanner Configuration File Format

The scanner configuration file format requirements differ for the following two cases.

- For importing
- For exporting

B.2.1 Scanner Configuration File Format (for Importing)

This section describes the scanner configuration file format requirements for importing.

- The file charset should be the same as the value on the Central Admin Console, "Central Admin Server Settings" screen. The default charset is UNICODE (UTF-8).
- The file is in CSV format. The values for each item are as follows.

Item	Value and Format	Remarks
Mac Address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX (X is an alphanumeric character)	Optional
IP Address	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (xxx is a value from 0 to 255)	Optional
Subnet Mask	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (xxx is a value from 0 to 255)	Optional
Scanner Name	Up to 15 alphanumeric characters long (hyphens may also be used)	Required
Port Number	Numerical value from 1 to 65535	Optional
Use HTTPS?	0: Do not use HTTPS (default) 1: Use HTTPS	Optional
Model	Up to 64 characters long	Optional
Settings Group	Up to 32 characters long (*1)	Optional
Add-in Group	Up to 32 arbitrary characters long (*1)	Optional
Comment	Up to 256 characters long	Optional
System Updates	0: Enable (default) 1: Disable	Optional

(*1): The following character strings cannot be used:
(Default) (All) __default__ __all__
"__" is two underbars entered one after another.

B.2.2 Scanner Configuration File Format (for Exporting)

This section describes the scanner configuration file format requirements for exporting.

- The file charset should be the same as the value on the Central Admin Console, "Central Admin Server Settings" screen. The default charset is UNICODE (UTF-8).
- The file is in CSV format. The values for each item are as follows.

Item	Value and Format	Remarks
Mac Address	XX:XX:XX:XX:XX (X is an alphanumeric character)	None
IP Address	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (xxx is a value from 0 to 255)	
Subnet Mask	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx (xxx is a value from 0 to 255)	
Scanner Name	—	
Port Number	Numerical value from 1 to 65535	
Use HTTPS?	0: Do not use HTTPS (default) 1: Use HTTPS	
Model	—	
Add-in Group	Arbitrary character string	
Settings Group	Arbitrary character string	
Comment	Arbitrary character string	
System Updates	0: Enable (default) 1: Disable	
Info Last Modified	YYYYMMDD hh:mm:ss	When the "Include detailed scanner information." checkbox is selected.
iScanner Network	0: # Unknown 1: # Registered	
Software Status	0: NotTarget 1: Finished 2: Pending 3: Error 4: Unknown	
System Version	—	
Add-in Version	—	
Scanner Settings	—	
Info Last Modified	YYYYMMDD hh:mm:ss	

Item	Value and Format	Remarks
Last System Update	YYYYMMDD hh:mm:ss	When the "Include detailed scanner information." checkbox is selected.
Last Add-in Install	YYYYMMDD hh:mm:ss	
Current Scanner Settings Status	YYYYMMDD hh:mm:ss	
Current System Update Status	0: NotTarget 1: Finished 2: Pending 3: Error 4: Unknown	
Current Add-in Install Status	0: NotTarget 1: Finished 2: Pending 3: Error 4: Unknown	
Last Scanner Settings Status	0: NotTarget 1: Finished 2: Pending 3: Error 4: Unknown	
Scanner Version	—	
Pad Assembly	Numerical value	
Pick Roller	Numerical value	
Total Throughput	Numerical value	
Date of Registration	YYYYMMDD hh:mm:ss	
Cumulative On Time	Numerical value	

Appendix C

Root Certification Authority

Admin

User

This appendix provides an explanation of root certification authority.

C

C.1 Root Certification Authority List	426
--	------------

C.1 Root Certification Authority List

The following root certification authorities are registered in the scanner.

Issuer	Valid until... (YYYY/MM/DD)
ABA.ECOM Root CA	2009/7/10
Autoridad Certificadora de la Asociacion Nacional del Notariado Mexicano, A.C.	2009/6/29
Autoridad Certificadora del Colegio Nacional de Correduria Publica Mexicana, A.C.	2009/6/30
Baltimore EZ by DST	2009/7/4
Belgacom E-Trust Primary CA	2010/1/21
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Class A	2009/10/16
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Class B	2009/10/16
C&W HKT SecureNet CA Root	2010/10/16
C&W HKT SecureNet CA SGC Root	2009/10/16
CA 1	2019/3/11
Certiposte Classe A Personne	2018/6/24
Certiposte Serveur	2018/6/24
Certisign - Autoridade Certificadora - AC2	2018/6/27
Certisign - Autoridade Certificadora - AC4	2018/6/27
Certisign Autoridade Certificadora AC1S	2018/6/27
Certisign Autoridade Certificadora AC3S	2018/7/10
Class 1 Primary CA	2020/7/7
Class 2 Primary CA	2019/7/7
Class 3 Primary CA	2019/7/7
Class 3 Public Primary Certification Authority	2028/8/2
Class 3P Primary CA	2019/7/7
Class 3TS Primary CA	2019/7/7
Deutsche Telekom Root CA 1	2019/7/10
Deutsche Telekom Root CA 2	2019/7/10
DST (ANX Network) CA	2018/12/10

Issuer	Valid until... (YYYY/MM/DD)
DST (NRF) RootCA	2008/12/9
DST (UPS) RootCA	2008/12/7
DST RootCA X1	2008/11/29
DST RootCA X2	2008/11/28
DSTCA E1	2018/12/11
DSTCA E2	2018/12/10
DST-Entrust GTI CA	2018/12/9
Entrust.net Secure Server Certification Authority	2019/5/26
Equifax Secure Certificate Authority	2018/8/23
Equifax Secure eBusiness CA-1	2020/6/21
Equifax Secure eBusiness CA-2	2019/6/23
Equifax Secure Global eBusiness CA-1	2020/6/21
EUnet International Root CA	2018/10/3
FESTE, Public Notary Certs	2020/1/2
FESTE, Verified Certs	2020/1/2
First Data Digital Certificates Inc. Certification Authority	2019/7/4
FNMT Clase 2 CA	2019/3/19
GlobalSign Root CA	2014/1/28
GTE CyberTrust Global Root	2018/8/14
http://www.valicert.com/	2019/6/26
IPS SERVIDORES	2009/12/30
Microsoft Root Authority	2020/12/31
Microsoft Root Certificate Authority	2021/5/10
NetLock Expressz (Class C) Tanusitványkiado	2019/2/20
NetLock Kozjegyzoi (Class A) Tanusitványkiado	2019/2/20
NetLock Uzleti (Class B) Tanusitványkiado	2019/2/20
PTT Post Root CA	2019/6/26
Saunalahden Serveri CA	2019/6/26
Secure Server Certification Authority	2010/1/8
SecureNet CA Class A	2009/10/16

Issuer	Valid until... (YYYY/MM/DD)
SecureNet CA Class B	2009/10/16
SecureNet CA Root	2010/10/16
SecureNet CA SGC Root	2009/10/16
SecureSign RootCA1	2020/9/15
SecureSign RootCA2	2020/9/15
SecureSign RootCA3	2020/9/15
SERVICIOS DE CERTIFICACION - A.N.C.	2009/3/10
SIA Secure Client CA	2019/7/9
SIA Secure Server CA	2019/7/9
Swisskey Root CA	2016/1/1
TC TrustCenter Class 1 CA	2011/1/1
TC TrustCenter Class 2 CA	2011/1/1
TC TrustCenter Class 3 CA	2011/1/1
TC TrustCenter Class 4 CA	2011/1/1
Thawte Premium Server CA	2021/1/1
Thawte Server CA	2021/1/1
UTN - DATACorp SGC	2019/6/25
UTN-USERFirst-Hardware	2019/7/10
UTN-USERFirst-Network Applications	2019/7/10
VeriSign Trust Network	2028/8/2
Xcert EZ by DST	2009/7/12

Appendix D

Scanner Specifications

Admin

User

This appendix gives specifications for the scanner as a whole, and for scanner parts.

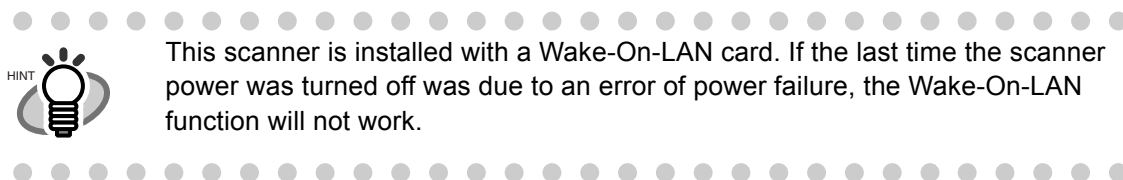


D.1 Device Specifications..... 430

D.2 Scanner Specifications 431

D.1 Device Specifications

Item	Specification
Dimensions (W × D × H)	315mm × 415mm × 281mm
Power consumption (AC)	88W
Weight	13kg
LCD touch panel	8.4-inch XGA TFT LCD monitor Analog resistive touch panel
Keyboard	101 keyboard
Network interface	LAN (10Base-T/100Base-TX)
Input power	AC100-240V± 10% 50/60Hz



D.2 Scanner Specifications

Item		Specification	Note
Scanner type		ADF (Automatic Document Feeder)	
Image sensor		Color CCD × 2	
Light source		White cold cathode fluorescent discharge lamp × 2	
Scannable area		Maximum: Legal (8.5 in x 14 in) Minimum: A8 (portrait) (52 mm x 74 mm) or 2 in x 3 in	When "Custom" paper size setting is used, a page length of up to 863 mm (34 in) is allowed for document scanning.
Paper weight		52 g/m ² to 127 g/m ² (14 lb to 34 lb)	
Scanning speed (A4/Letter, portrait) (*1)	Color	Simplex: 30 sheets/min. Duplex: 60 pages/min.	150 dpi
	Grayscale		
	Black & White		
	Color	Simplex: 25 sheets/min. Duplex: 50 pages/min.	200 dpi
	Grayscale		
	Black & White		
ADF paper chute capacity		50 sheets (Letter/A4, 80g/m ² (20 lb))	
Optical resolution		600 dpi	
Output resolution		150 dpi, 200 dpi, 300 dpi, 600 dpi	
Grayscale level (internal/external)		1024/256 levels	

(*1): The maximum hardware limitation. Actual scanning time includes software processing time such as data transfer time.

Appendix E

Operation Messages

Admin

User

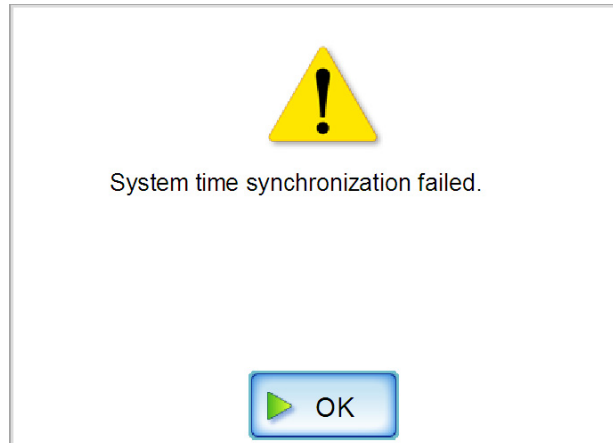
This appendix provides information about messages which may appear during scanner operations, and how to deal with them.







E.1 Administrator Messages	434
E.2 Regular User Messages	457
E.3 Central Admin Messages	502

E.1 Administrator Messages

The following messages may appear during administrator operation.
Messages are displayed in the form of a dialog box as follows.



The following table describes the types of marks which may appear in a message dialog box.

Marks	Description
	Warning message. Displayed if invalid values have been entered for a setting. Check the message and press the [OK] button.
	Error message. Check the message and press the [OK] button.
	Information message. Check the message and press the [OK] button. No action required.
	Inquiry message. Check the message, select and press a button.

E.1.1 Administrator Screen Messages

Screen	Message	Action
Import Scanner Settings	Specified scanner settings file could not be found or could not be uploaded.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check the scanner settings to be imported.• Try importing again.• Check that a network error did not occur while processing the import, and that the status of the network is "transmitting".
	Scanner settings could not be imported. Specified file contains unsupported data.	The version of the program used to acquire the scanner settings, and the version of the import destination device do not match. Upgrade the version of the import destination device. "4.10.3 Updating the Scanner's System Software" (page 153)
	Scanner settings could not be imported. The language of the scanner settings file must be the same as the current language setting.	Change the language setting back to the language at the time of backup, and try restoring the user data again.

E

Screen	Message	Action
Scanner Name	Scanner name contains invalid characters.	Re-enter the scanner name using only specified valid characters. Do not enter a blank space before or after the scanner name. Do not use control characters or any of the following symbols: " / \ [] : < > + = ; , ?
	Workgroup or domain name contains invalid characters.	Workgroup or domain name contains invalid characters. Workgroup names may be up to 15 alphanumeric characters long. Domain names may be up to 255 alphanumeric characters long, and ".-_" can also be used.
	Domain login failed.	Check the specified user name and password.
	Specified domain cannot be found.	Could not connect to domain. Check that the specified domain is correct, and that it is connected to the network.
	Workgroup or domain name has not been entered.	Group or domain name contains invalid characters. Group names may be up to 15 alphanumeric characters long. Domain names may be up to 255 alphanumeric characters long, and ".-_" can also be used.
Date/Time	Date/time setting is invalid.	Re-enter the date/time using only valid numbers.
	Time adjustment has caused the session to timeout. Logging out now.	No action required.
Login Settings	Invalid user name.	Enter a valid user name, and try again.
	User name contains invalid characters.	Re-enter the user name using only specified valid characters.
Admin Password	New password contains invalid characters.	Enter a valid new password. Alphanumeric characters (case sensitive) and symbols may be entered.

Screen	Message	Action
File Names	"Save as:" filename contains invalid characters (:*?"<>), or is set to a reserved string (CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, ..., COM9, LPT0, ..., LPT9). Re-enter the file-name and try again.	Do not use the following symbols or reserved strings: : * ? " < > CON PRN AUX CLOCK\$ NUL COM0 - COM9 LPT0 - LPT9 Re-enter the file name using only the specified valid characters.
IP Address	IP address could not be set. Try again.	Try again. If that does not work, restart the scanner and try again.
Admin Network	Invalid combination of settings has been specified.	The following settings combinations are not possible. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Port Number "80" and SSL "On" Port Number "443" and SSL "Off" Enter a valid settings combination for Port Number and SSL.
Central Admin Server	Scanner details could not be registered with the iScanner Central Admin server.	Check the Central Admin Server connection environment.
	Invalid address has been specified.	Enter a valid address, and try again.
DNS Server	DNS suffix contains invalid characters.	Re-enter the DNS suffix using only specified valid characters.

Screen	Message	Action
NTP Server	System time synchronization failed.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the NTP server IP address, host name, and FQDN settings. • Check the network path between to the NTP server for problems. • The NTP server may be busy. Wait a short time before trying again to synchronize the system time. If that does not work, the specified server may not be an NTP server, so try a different NTP server. • The specified NTP server cannot provide a trusted date and time. It attempted to acquire the date and time from a higher level NTP server, but failed. Try a different NTP server or have the network administrator investigate. • Check that the time is correct. If the time is incorrect, adjust the date/time, and try again. • Refer to "4.6.5 Setting the Date/Time" (page 59), adjust the date/time, and try again.
	Time synchronization has caused the session to timeout. Logging out now.	No action required.

Screen	Message	Action
Network Printer	Access was refused. Login is not possible at this time.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try again when login is possible. • Contact a network administrator to have the time setting changed.
	Access was refused. The specified account is currently locked out.	Contact a network administrator.
	Access was refused.	Contact a server administrator to find out if an access permit has been set.
	Operation not possible. Network path is not working.	Contact a server administrator.
	Not connected to the network.	Check that the system network is functioning normally by performing a ping test from another machine in the network, other than the server with network printer. If the system network is not operating properly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.
	Number of network path connections has reached the maximum allowed. No more may be specified.	Close unneeded network connections, then try specifying the desired network path again.
	Length of specified network printer path exceeds the maximum selectable path length. This printer may not be selected.	Select a different network printer and try again.
	Cannot acquire network information.	Contact an administrator for the specified server.
	Specified user is no longer able to login to this network printer.	The specified user account has expired. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated.

Screen	Message	Action
Network Printer	Specified password is no longer valid for this network printer.	Specified password was expired. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password validated again.
	Specified user needs to renew their password for this network printer.	Change the password before logging in to the network printer for the first time. Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password changed.
	Cannot add printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the specified network printer path. • Check that the printer settings and access privileges for the network printer have been set correctly. • Check that the shared printer settings have been set correctly on the print server. • By performing a ping test, check if the network connection to the printer is working properly. If there is no response from the ping test, check that the system network is functioning normally by performing a ping test from another machine in the network. • Check that the primary DNS suffix of the print server has been set correctly.
	Network printer tree information is not available.	Check whether the Central Admin Server "Computer Browser" service is stopped. If stopped, start the service.

Screen	Message	Action
Network Folder	Access was refused. Login is not possible at this time.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try again when login is possible. • Contact a network administrator to have the time setting changed.
	Access was refused. The specified account is currently locked out.	Contact a network administrator.
	Specified network folder alias is already being used. Try a different alias.	Rename the network folder whose alias is already being used, and try adding the folder again.
	Access was refused.	Contact a server administrator to find out if an access permit has been set.
	Cannot find the network folder path.	Contact a server administrator.
	Operation not possible. Network path is not working.	Contact a server administrator.
	Not connected to the network.	Check that the system network is functioning normally by performing a ping test from another machine in the network, other than the server with network folder. If the system network is not operating properly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.
	Number of network path connections has reached the maximum allowed. No more may be specified.	Close unneeded network connections, then try specifying the desired network path again.
	Length of specified network folder path exceeds the maximum selectable path length. This folder may not be selected.	Select a different network folder and try again.
	Cannot acquire network information.	Contact an administrator for the specified server.

Screen	Message	Action
Network Folder	Specified user is no longer able to login to this network folder.	<p>The specified user account has expired.</p> <p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated.
	Specified password is no longer valid for this network folder.	<p>Specified password was expired.</p> <p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password validated again.
	Specified user needs to renew their password for this network folder.	<p>Change the password before logging in to the network folder for the first time.</p> <p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password changed.
	Cannot connect to FTP path.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the FTP path is correct. • Check the user name and password. • Check the protocol settings. • Check the port number. • Check the passive mode settings. • Check the encryption settings. • Check proxy settings.
	Network folder tree information is not available.	<p>Check whether the the Central Admin Server "Computer Browser" service is stopped. If stopped, start the service.</p>

Screen	Message	Action
Alert Notification	Test e-mail could not be sent.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check if the computer connected to the SMTP server is running properly.• Check if an e-mail can be sent to the address from another personal computer in the network.• By performing a ping test, check if the SMTP server or the network connection to the SMTP server is working properly. If there is no response from the SMTP server ping test, check that the system network is functioning normally by performing an SMTP server ping test from another machine in the network.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the system network is not operating properly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.• If the only the SMTP server cannot connect to the network, request the network administrator to check that the SMTP server and the network connection to the server are functioning normally.

Screen	Message	Action
System Status	Cannot read data from a scanner unit.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the scanner does not restart automatically, press the [Shut-down] button on the "Login" screen to turn the power off, and turn the power back on again to restart the scanner. • If the error status persists after the scanner is restarted, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen, disconnect the AC cable from the scanner to turn the power off, wait for at least ten seconds, then reconnect the AC cable and try turning the power back on again. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
Usage Status	Cannot read data from a scanner unit.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the scanner does not restart automatically, press the [Shut-down] button on the "Login" screen to turn the power off, and turn the power back on again to restart the scanner. • If the error status persists after the scanner is restarted, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen, disconnect the AC cable from the scanner to turn the power off, wait for at least ten seconds, then reconnect the AC cable and try turning the power back on again. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

Screen	Message	Action
User Data Store	Specified backup file could not be uploaded, or is not a valid user data store.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the specified backup file is correct. • Try restoring the file again. • Specified backup file may not be uploaded because of network error. Check the network status.
	Restoring from the specified backup file will cause the maximum number of user data stores to be exceeded. Clear the existing user data stores, and try again.	Up to 1,000 users can be registered. Clear the existing user data stores, and try again. "Clearing the User Data Store" (page 148)
	User data could not be restored. Specified file contains unsupported data.	Versions do not match between the backup device and restoring device. Update the restoring device. "4.10.3 Updating the Scanner's System Software" (page 153)
	User data could not be restored. The language of the backup file must be the same as the current language setting.	Change the language setting back to the language at the time of backup, and try restoring the user data again.

E

Screen	Message	Action
System Settings File	Specified backup file could not be found or could not be uploaded.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the specified backup file is correct. • Try restoring the file again. • Specified backup file may not be uploaded because of network error. Check the network status.
	Backup data could not be restored. Specified file contains unsupported data.	Versions do not match between the backup device and restoring device. Update the restoring device. "4.10.3 Updating the Scanner's System Software" (page 153)
	Backup data could not be restored. The language of the backup file must be the same as the current language setting.	Change the language setting back to the language at the time of backup, and try restoring the backup data again.
	System settings were successfully restored. The scanner will be restarted.	No action required.
System Updates	Specified update file cannot be applied to this system.	Check the applicable system for the update file.
	Specified update file could not be uploaded, or is not a valid system update.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the specified update file is correct, and try again. • Specified update file may not be uploaded because of network error. Check the network status.
Common	Error: problem with XXXXXX. Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider. Error code=xxxxxxx Result code=xxxxxxx (XXXXXX: Function Name)	Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
	Error: problem with XXXXXX. Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider. (XXXXXX: Function Name)	Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

Screen	Message	Action
Add-in Manager	Specified Add-in data contents are invalid.	Check the contents of the specified Add-in module.
	Specified Add-in file cannot be applied to this system.	Check the system version, prepare the correct version of the update file, and try again.
	Specified Add-in could not be uploaded.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the specified update file is correct, and try again. • Specified update file may not be uploaded because of a network error. Check the network status.
	System version xx or later is required to install the specified Add-in.	Update the system, and then install the Add-in module.
Admin Tool	Connection error.	For more details about the process, refer to "8.3.3 Failure to Access the Scanner using a Web Browser, Admin Tool, or Central Admin Server" (page 397).
	Cannot connect to this system version.	Install the Admin Tool from the scanner, and try again.
Job Settings	Session has timed out. Click the "Close" button in the toolbar to close the edit settings window.	Close the edit settings window, and try again.
	A fatal error has occurred. Close the Job Settings session, then try again. If the problem persists, the administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help.	Close the Job Settings session, and try again.
	Insufficient memory to continue. Close the Job Settings session, then try again.	Ensure that there is enough memory capacity available, and try again.
	Insufficient free disk space to continue. Close the Job Settings session, then try again.	Ensure that there is enough free disk space available, and try again.

Screen	Message	Action
LDAP Connection	LDAP search base setting is invalid.	Correct the LDAP settings.
	LDAP server is busy.	Wait for a while, and try again.
	Search has timed out. Contact a system administrator.	Contact a system administrator.
	Number of matches has reached the maximum allowed. Try refining the search conditions.	Refine the search conditions, and try again.
	Cannot connect to the LDAP server. Check that the LDAP access settings are correct and that the LDAP server is running and accessible.	Contact a system administrator.
	LDAP server connection failed SSL authentication.	Contact a system administrator.
	Insufficient free memory to store data from the LDAP server.	Ensure that there is free memory capacity available, and try again.
	LDAP access user name, password and/or search base settings are invalid.	Enter a valid user name and password, and try again.
	LDAP server access failed. Check that the LDAP access settings and LDAP server settings are correct.	Contact a system administrator.
	Connecting to the LDAP server. Enter a User Name and Password.	Enter a user name and password.
	Could not get data from the LDAP server. Check the LDAP search base settings.	Check the search base settings, and try again.

E.1.2 System Log Messages

System log messages which may appear during administrator operations can be arranged into the following three categories:

- Information
- Error
- Warning

■ Information

Code	Message	Action
01000001	(XXXXXX) Settings were changed. Info: (XXXXXX: Function Name)	No action required.
01000002	Pad assembly usage counter was cleared.	
01000003	Pick roller usage counter was cleared.	
01000004	All users log was prepared for download.	
01000005	System log was prepared for download.	
01000006	User data store was prepared for download.	
01000007	User data store was restored.	
01000008	System settings were prepared for download.	
01000009	System was updated. Info: New System Version = x.x.x.x	
01000010	Test e-mail was sent successfully.	
01000011	User data store was cleared.	
01000012	System time was synchronized successfully.	
01000013	System settings restoral completed.	
01000014	Technical support data was prepared for download.	
01000015	Add-in module was installed successfully. Add-in: xxxxxx Version: xxxxxx	

Code	Message	Action
01000016	Add-in module was uninstalled successfully.	No action required.
01000017	System settings restoral started.	
0C010001	Created new Job. Job name: <i>XXXXXX</i>	
0C010002	Copied existing Job. Job name: <i>XXXXXX</i> Source name: <i>YYYYYY</i>	
0C010003	Edited Job. Job name: <i>XXXXXX</i>	
0C010004	Deleted Job. Job name: <i>XXXXXX</i>	
0C020001	Created new Job Menu. Menu name: <i>XXXXXX</i>	
0C020002	Copied existing Job Menu. Menu name: <i>XXXXXX</i> Source name: <i>YYYYYY</i>	
0C020003	Edited Job Menu. Menu name: <i>XXXXXX</i>	
0C020004	Deleted new Job Menu. Menu name: <i>XXXXXX</i>	
0C030001	Created new User Group. Group name: <i>XXXXXX</i>	
0C030003	Edited User Group. Group name: <i>XXXXXX</i>	
0C030004	Deleted User Group. Group name: <i>XXXXXX</i>	
0C040001	LDAP server access succeeded. Search base: <i>XXXXXX</i>	

■ Error

Code	Message	Action
81001001	Error: problem with XXXXXX. Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider. Error code=xxxxxxx Result code=xxxxxxx (XXXXXX: Function Name)	Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
81001002	Error: problem with XXXXXX. Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider. (XXXXXX: Function Name)	Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
81001003	Corrupted system log file was deleted.	No action required.
81001004	Corrupted user log file was deleted.	
81001005	Settings could not be changed. Info: XXXXXX Add-in: xxxxxx Version: xxxxx	The following character strings are shown for Info: XXXXXX. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Add-in module data format does not match. (This information is shown when the contents of Module.info are invalid, invalid characters are used for file/folder names). Add-in module file is not a target for this system. System version **.**.**.**** or later is required for installation of the Add-in module.
81001006	(IP Address) Settings could not be changed. Info: Specified IP address is already being used. DHCP = Off IP Address = xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx Subnet Mask = xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx Default Gateway = xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Returns to the previous IP address before it was changed. Enter a non-duplicated IP address, and try again.
7C040001	LDAP search base setting is invalid. Search base: XXXXXX	Check the search base settings.

E

Code	Message	Action
7C040002	LDAP server is busy. Search base: XXXXXX	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wait for a while, and try again. • Contact a server administrator to check LDAP server operation.
7C040003	Search has timed out. Contact a system administrator. Search base: XXXXXX	Contact a server administrator to check that the search timeout setting is correct.
7C040005	Cannot connect to the LDAP server. Check that the LDAP access settings are correct and that the LDAP server is running and accessible. Search base: XXXXXX	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the LDAP server and search base settings. • Contact a server administrator to check LDAP server operation.
7C040006	LDAP server connection failed SSL authentication. Search base: XXXXXX	Contact a server administrator to check that the SSL authentication settings and certification for the LDAP server are correct.
7C040008	LDAP access user name, password and/or search base settings are invalid. Search base: XXXXXX	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Specify a valid user name and password. • Check the LDAP server and search base settings.
7C040009	LDAP server access failed. Check that the LDAP access settings and LDAP server settings are correct. Search base: XXXXXX Detail error code: XXXXXX Detail error message: XXXXXX	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a server administrator to check LDAP server operation. • Check that the network settings are correct.
7C040010	Could not get data from the LDAP server. Check the LDAP search base settings. Search base: XXXXXX	Check the search base settings.

■ Warning

Code	Message	Action
82001001	Cannot read data from a scanner unit.	Check the scanner connection.

E.1.3 Alert Monitor System Log Messages

System log messages which may be received from the scanner alert monitor service can be arranged into the following three types:

- Information
- Error
- Warning

■ Information

The following table gives a summary of system log information messages which may be received from the scanner alert monitoring service.

No action is required.

Code	Message	Action
01001014	Scanner alert monitor started. Scanner alert monitor start date/time = <i>MM/dd/yyyy HH:mm:ss</i>	No action required.
01001015	Scanner alert monitor stopped.	
01001016	Scanner alert monitor stopped by system standby mode.	
01001017	Scanner alert monitor restarted after resume from standby.	

E

■ Error

The following table gives a summary of system log error messages which may be received from the scanner alert monitoring service.

The messages shown here are sent to the e-mail address specified in ["4.7.15 Setting the Destination for Alert Notifications"](#) (page 128).

Code	Message	Action
81000001	CPU power supply error.	Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
81000002	1.5V power supply error.	
81000003	3.3V power supply error.	
81000004	5V power supply error.	
81000005	12V power supply error.	
81000006	-12V power supply error.	
81000007	5V Standby power supply error.	
81000008	Battery power supply error.	
81000009	Internal temperature error.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check if the air ventilation inlet is blocked.• Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
81000010	CPU temperature error.	
81000011	System fan speed error.	Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
81000012	CPU fan speed error.	

Code	Message	Action
81002003	Alert notification e-mail could not be sent.	<p>Check the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if the computer connected to the SMTP server is running properly. • Check if an e-mail can be sent to the address from another personal computer in the network. • By performing a ping test, check if the SMTP server or the network connection to the SMTP server is working properly. If there is no response from the SMTP server ping test, check that the system network is functioning normally by performing an SMTP server ping test from another machine in the network. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the system network is not operating properly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions. • If only the SMTP server cannot connect to the network, request the network administrator to check that the SMTP server and the network connection to the server are functioning normally.
81002004	Device monitoring service error.	Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

■ Warning

The following table gives a summary of system log warning messages which may be received from the scanner alert monitoring service.

The messages shown here are sent to the e-mail address specified in ["4.7.15 Setting the Destination for Alert Notifications"](#) (page 128).

Code	Message	Action
82000005	Pad assembly needs replacement soon.	Obtain a replacement pad assembly soon. The pad assembly should be replaced after every 50,000 scanned sheets or once a year.
82000006	Pad assembly needs replacement now.	Pad assembly has passed its rated lifetime (50,000 scanned sheets or once a year) and needs to be replaced.
82000007	Pick roller needs replacement soon.	Obtain a replacement pick roller. The pick roller should be replaced after every 100,000 scanned sheets or once a year.
82000008	Pick roller needs replacement now.	Pick roller has passed its rated lifetime (100,000 scanned sheets or once a year) and needs to be replaced.

E.2 Regular User Messages

The following messages may appear during regular user operation.

E.2.1 Regular User Screen Messages

Screen	Message	Action
Login	Administrator operation in progress, please wait...	Only one administrator or user can login to the scanner at any one time. Please wait until operations are completed.
	Login failed. Check the user name and password, and try again.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Enter a valid user name and password, and try again.• Contact a system administrator and have them check that the LDAP server is set.• Contact a system administrator to have the server status checked.• Contact a system administrator to check if the password has expired.• Login is not possible if the Active Directory account option is "User must change password at next logon". Contact an administrator to set a password, and then try logging in.

E

Screen	Message	Action
Login	Scanner initialization has failed. Try turning the power off and back on again. The administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the cables are connected to the scanner properly. • If the scanner does not restart automatically, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen to turn the power off, and turn the power back on again to restart the scanner. • If the error status persists after the scanner is restarted, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen, disconnect try turning the power off for ten seconds, and back on again. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
	Invalid LDAP Search Base format.	<p>Contact a system administrator to have the LDAP search base format corrected.</p> <p>"4.7.8 Setting the Login LDAP Server" (page 88)</p>
	LDAP server is busy.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to have the network settings checked. • "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388) • Contact a system administrator to have the server status checked.

Screen	Message	Action
Login	Number of user data stores has reached the maximum allowed. New users may not login until the old user data stores are deleted.	Contact a system administrator to have the user information deleted. "Restoring the User Data Store" (page 147)
	Communicating with the Central Admin Server.	Login is not possible while the scanner is communicating with the Central Admin Server. Wait for the communication session to finish, then try again.
	User roaming data could not be downloaded from the Central Admin Server. OK to continue? (If you continue, the scanner will use the currently saved scan settings.)	Check the connection to the Central Admin Server.
Consumable Alert	Replace Soon	Replace the consumable part when convenient. For details, refer to "7.6 Replacing Parts" (page 367) .
	Replace Now	Replace the consumable part when convenient. For details, refer to "7.6 Replacing Parts" (page 367) .

E

Screen	Message	Action
Scanning	Document not found. Load a document into the ADF, making sure the side guides are adjusted correctly and try again.	Load the document into the ADF paper chute, and try again. Load the document to prevent any space between the side guides and the edges of the documents. For details, refer to "6.1 Loading Documents" (page 250) .
	Paper jam has occurred. Remove the documents from the ADF and try again.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remove the documents from the ADF. • Remove the pages which were not scanned correctly.
	Top cover may be open. Close the top cover, reload the documents and try again.	Close the top cover, reload the documents and try again.
	Feed Error: Document(s) may not match the set paper size, ADF may have grabbed more than one sheet, or documents may not be suitable for scanning. Remove the documents from the ADF, check them and try again. If problem persists, consult the manual.	Press the ADF release button to open the top cover, and remove the documents from the ADF. If more than one sheet has been fed, reset the document and try again. Check that the actual document(s) size matches the paper size specified in the "Paper Size" screen. If not, specify the paper size again. For details, refer to "6.8.3 Paper Size" (page 312) .

Screen	Message	Action
Scanning	Insufficient memory. Try turning the power off and back on again. If problem persists, the administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduce the size of the scan data or set a lower resolution level, and try again. • If the scanner does not restart automatically, press the [Shut-down] button on the "Login" screen to turn the power off, and turn the power back on again to restart the scanner. • If the error status persists after the scanner is restarted, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen, disconnect the AC cable from the scanner to turn the power off, wait for at least ten seconds, then reconnect the AC cable and try turning the power back on again. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
	<p>An error has occurred. Some pages were skipped. Try again after turning the power off and back on again. If problem persists, the administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help.</p> <p>Number of Skipped Pages: XXX</p>	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the scanner does not restart automatically, press the [Shut-down] button on the "Login" screen to turn the power off, and turn the power back on again to restart the scanner. • If the error status persists after the scanner is restarted, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen, disconnect the AC cable from the scanner to turn the power off, wait for at least ten seconds, then reconnect the AC cable and try turning the power back on again. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

Screen	Message	Action
Scanning	Scanner hardware failure. The administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the scanner does not restart automatically, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen to turn the power off, and turn the power back on again to restart the scanner. • If the error status persists after the scanner is restarted, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen, disconnect the AC cable from the scanner to turn the power off, wait for at least ten seconds, then reconnect the AC cable and try turning the power back on again. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
	When the file format is [MTIFF], the maximum file size for the total scanned data is 2GB. If the size of the scanned data exceeds 2GB, no MTIFF files can be created.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete scanned pages from Scan Viewer until the total file size of the scanned data is less than 2GB. • Increase the compression level and try scanning again.
	Scanning with the carrier sheet failed. Make sure the document is fully inserted into the top of the carrier sheet and the folded edge is on the side marked with the thick line, then try again. If the problem persists, the administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help.	Make sure the document is fully inserted into the top of the Carrier Sheet and the folded edge is on the side marked with the thick line, then try again. If the problem persists, the administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help.

Screen	Message	Action
Roller Cleaning	Scanner top cover is closed. Open the cover and try again.	Open the top cover to clean the feed rollers, and try again. For details, refer to "7.2.1 Cleaning the ADF" (page 358) .
	Press the keyboard [C] key to step the feed rollers forward. Press the [OK] button after the feed rollers have been cleaned.	Clean the rollers, and then press the [OK] button.
Shutdown	Shutdown will occur after all jobs finish. Please wait...	Operations cannot be carried out while the scanner is shutting down. The scanner will shutdown automatically. Please wait.
Scan Test	Document not found. Load a document into the ADF, making sure the side guides are adjusted correctly and try again.	Load the document into the ADF paper chute, and try again. Load the document to prevent any space between the side guides and the edges of the documents. For details, refer to "6.1 Loading Documents" (page 250) .
	Feed Error: Document(s) may not match the set paper size, ADF may have grabbed more than one sheet, or documents may not be suitable for scanning. Remove the documents from the ADF, check them and try again. If problem persists, consult the manual.	Press the ADF release button to open the top cover, and remove the documents from the ADF. If more than one sheet has been fed, reset the document and try again. Check that the actual document(s) size matches the paper size specified in the "Paper Size" screen. If not, specify the paper size again. For details, refer to "6.8.3 Paper Size" (page 312) .
	Paper jam has occurred. Remove the documents from the ADF and try again.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remove the documents from the ADF. • Remove the pages which were not scanned correctly.

Screen	Message	Action
Scan Test	Scanner initialization has failed. Try turning the power off and back on again. The administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the cables are connected to the scanner properly. • If the scanner does not restart automatically, press the [Shut-down] button on the "Login" screen to turn the power off, and turn the power back on again to restart the scanner. • If the error status persists after the scanner is restarted, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen, disconnect the AC cable from the scanner to turn the power off, wait for at least ten seconds, then reconnect the AC cable and try turning the power back on again. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
Send e-Mail	Invalid "From" address. Re-enter the address and try again.	Enter a valid e-mail address including "@".
	Invalid "To" address. Re-enter the address and try again.	Enter a valid e-mail address including "@".
	Invalid "Cc" address. Re-enter the address and try again.	Enter a valid e-mail address including "@".
	Invalid "Bcc" address. Re-enter the address and try again.	Enter a valid e-mail address including "@".
	No more than 30 "To" addresses are allowed.	Reduce the number of "To" addresses to 30 or less.
	No more than 30 "Cc" addresses are allowed.	Reduce the number of "Cc" addresses to 30 or less.
	No more than 30 "Bcc" addresses are allowed.	Reduce the number of "Bcc" addresses to 30 or less.
	Current login (LDAP account) has become invalid.	Contact a system administrator to have the login account validated.

Screen	Message	Action
e-Mail Address Book	Search has timed out. Contact a system administrator.	Contact a system administrator to check the time of the search timeout. "4.7.8 Setting the Login LDAP Server" (page 88)
	LDAP server is busy.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to have the network settings checked. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388) • Contact a system administrator to have the server status checked.
	Number of matches has reached the maximum allowed. Try refining the search conditions.	Enter more specific search conditions to narrow down the search.
Send Fax	Invalid fax number. Try again.	Enter a valid fax number. Only numbers 0 to 9, -, *, and # can be used.
	Invalid notification address (Sender's e-Mail Address). Try again.	Enter a valid notification address.
	Current login (LDAP account) has become invalid.	Contact a system administrator to have the login account validated.
Add Fax Number	Invalid fax number. Try again.	Enter a valid fax number. Only numbers 0 to 9, -, *, and # can be used.
Edit Fax Number	Invalid fax number. Try again.	Enter a valid fax number. Only numbers 0 to 9, -, *, and # can be used.
Print	Network is busy. Try again later.	Wait for a while, and try again.
	Cannot find the network printer path.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a server administrator. • Check that the spooler is operating properly.

Screen	Message	Action
Print	Not connected to the network.	Check that the system network is functioning normally by performing a ping test from another machine in the network, other than the server with network printer. If the system network is not operating properly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.
	Access to network printer was refused.	Contact a server administrator to find out if an access permit has been set.
	Network path is too long.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set a shorter printer alias. • Contact a system administrator to have the network path shortened.
	Number of network path connections has reached the maximum allowed. No more may be specified.	Close unneeded network connections, then try specifying the desired network path again.
	Current login (LDAP account) has become invalid.	Contact a system administrator to have the login account validated.
	Specified user is no longer able to login to this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated.
	Specified password is no longer valid for this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated again.

Screen	Message	Action
Print	Specified user needs to renew their password for this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password changed.
	Access to network printer was refused. The specified account is currently locked out.	Contact a network administrator to have the account unlocked.
	Access to network printer was refused. Login is not possible at this time.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try again when login is possible. • Contact a network administrator to have the time setting changed.
	Could not connect to the network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable is connected properly to the scanner and print server. • Contact a network administrator to check that the print server is working properly. • Check that the print server spooler is operating properly. • Contact a network administrator to find out if an access permit has been set. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and network printer settings are correct. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)
	Error: network printer could not be accessed.	Contact a network administrator to check whether the network printer can be accessed.
	Invalid No. of copies. Enter a value between 1 and 99, and try again.	Enter a valid No. of copies. Only numbers 1 to 99 can be used.

Screen	Message	Action
Print Server Authentication	User name is required.	Enter a user name.
	Network is busy. Try again later.	Wait for a while, and try again.
	User name or password may be incorrect.	Re-enter the user name and password.
	Cannot find the network printer path.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a server administrator. • Check that the spooler is operating properly.
	Not connected to the network.	Check that the system network is functioning normally by performing a ping test from another machine in the network, other than the server with network printer. If the system network is not operating properly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.
	Access to network printer was refused.	Contact a server administrator to find out if an access permit has been set.
	Number of network path connections has reached the maximum allowed. No more may be specified.	Close unneeded network connections, then try specifying the desired network path again.
	Specified user is no longer able to login to this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated.

Screen	Message	Action
Print Server Authentication	Specified password is no longer valid for this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated again.
	Specified user needs to renew their password for this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password changed.
	Access to network printer was refused. The specified account is currently locked out.	Contact a network administrator to have the account unlocked.
	Access to network printer was refused. Login is not possible at this time.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try again when login is possible. • Contact a network administrator to have the time setting changed.
	Could not connect to the network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable is connected properly to the scanner and print server. • Contact a network administrator to check that the print server is working properly. • Check that the print server spooler is operating properly. • Contact a network administrator to find out if an access permit has been set. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and network printer settings are correct. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)
	Error: network printer could not be accessed.	Contact a network administrator to check whether the network printer can be accessed.

Screen	Message	Action
Save	User name or password may be incorrect.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Directly enter a valid user name and password. • Check that the proxy server is operating properly. • Contact an administrator to check that the IP address settings, FTP server network folder, or proxy server settings are correct. <p>"8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)</p>
	Cannot find the network folder path.	Contact a server administrator.
	File already exists. Choose a different name or change the overwrite permission setting.	Change the file name, or select [Yes] to overwrite the file with the same name.
	Not connected to the network.	Check that the system network is functioning normally by performing a ping test from another machine in the network, other than the server with network folder. If the system network is not operating properly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.
	Access to network folder was refused.	Contact a server administrator to find out if an access permit has been set.
	Network path is too long.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set a shorter file name. • Select a "Save in" folder with a shorter name. • Contact a system administrator to have the folder path name shortened.
	Insufficient free space in the designated network folder.	Ensure the free space requirements are met, and try again.
	Number of network path connections has reached the maximum allowed. No more may be specified.	Close unneeded network connections, then try specifying the desired network path again.

Screen	Message	Action
Save	The file to be overwritten may be in use elsewhere.	Check that the file to be overwritten is closed, and try again.
	Current login (LDAP account) has become invalid.	Contact a system administrator to have the login account validated.
	Specified user is no longer able to login to this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated.
	Specified password is no longer valid for this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password validated again.
	Specified user needs to renew their password for this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password changed.
	Access to network folder was refused. The specified account is currently locked out.	Contact a network administrator to have the account unlocked.
	Access to network folder was refused. Login is not possible at this time.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try again when login is possible. • Contact a network administrator to have the time setting changed.
	Error: network folder could not be accessed.	Contact a network administrator to check whether the network folder can store data.
	When the file format is [MTIFF], the maximum file size for the total scanned data is 2GB. If the size of the scanned data exceeds 2GB, no MTIFF files can be created.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delete scanned pages from Scan Viewer until the total file size of the scanned data is less than 2GB. • Increase the compression level and try scanning again.

Screen	Message	Action
File Server Authentication	User name or password may be incorrect.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Directly enter a valid user name and password. • Check that the proxy server is operating properly. • Contact an administrator to check that the IP address settings, FTP server network folder, or proxy server settings are correct. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)
	Specified user is no longer able to login to this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated.
	Specified password is no longer valid for this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password validated again.
	Specified user needs to renew their password for this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password changed.
	Access to network folder was refused. The specified account is currently locked out.	Contact a network administrator to have the account unlocked.
	Access to network folder was refused. Login is not possible at this time.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try again when login is possible. • Contact a network administrator to have the time setting changed.
	Error: network folder could not be accessed.	Contact a network administrator to check whether the network folder can store data.

Screen	Message	Action
Startup Scanner	Application could not be started. System restored to last known good state. Contact a system administrator.	System or user settings were restored at system restart. The administrator should check the restored system or user settings.
Scan Viewer	Scan not possible. Number of scan pages exceeds the maximum (XXX pages).	Finish all operations (sending mail or fax, printing, saving to network folders), and try again.
	All scanned pages are blank. Check the documents. "Blank Page Skip" is set to "Auto", so all scanned pages were cleared.	Turn the "Blank Page Skip" option "Off", and try again. "6.8.15 Blank Page Skip" (page 333)
Job Menu	Notification e-mail could not be sent to the administrator.	Contact an administrator to check if sending e-mail is possible.
Others	Cannot connect to the LDAP server.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The network settings may not be valid. Contact a system administrator to have the network settings checked. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388) • The server is not working. Contact a system administrator to have the server status checked. • If using SSL communication when connection to the LDAP server, contact an administrator to check if the server certificate, issued from a root certification authority, is installed on the LDAP server. • Enter a valid user name and password.
	LDAP server response error.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check whether the LDAP server is available. • Set a valid user name and password.

Screen	Message	Action
Others	<p>An error has occurred. Try turning the power off and back on again. The administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help.</p> <p>[alphanumeric eight digits]</p>	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the scanner does not restart automatically, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen to turn the power off, and turn the power back on again to restart the scanner. • If the error status persists after the scanner is restarted, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen, disconnect the AC cable from the scanner to turn the power off, wait for at least ten seconds, then reconnect the AC cable and try turning the power back on again. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
	<p>An error has occurred. The system must be restarted. Any buffered jobs will be canceled. If problem persists, the administrator should contact a FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help.</p> <p>[alphanumeric eight digits]</p>	<p>If the problem persists, the administrator should contact a FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.</p>
	<p>An error has occurred. The system must be restarted. Any buffered jobs will be canceled. After restarting the system, if the same error occurs, it may be due to a scanner failure. In this case, remove any documents that have been fed into the scanner, disconnect and reattach the power cord, and restart the system again. If problem persists, the administrator should contact a FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help. [alphanumeric eight digits]</p>	<p>If the problem persists, the administrator should contact a FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.</p>

E.2.2 System Log Messages

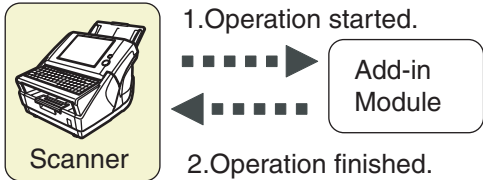
System log messages which may appear during user operations can be arranged into the following three categories:

- Information
- Warning
- Error

■ Information

Code	Message	Action
01080101	Pick roller cleaned.	No action required.
01091000	Language setting changed to <i>XXXX</i> .	No action required.
010D0001	User name <i>XXXX</i> logged in.	No action required.
010D0002	User name <i>XXXX</i> logged out.	No action required.
01121001	Scanner started up.	No action required.
01121002	Scanner resumed from standby mode.	No action required.
01131001	Scanner will be shutdown.	No action required.
01131002	Scanner entered standby mode.	No action required.
03080001	Scanner firmware has been updated. Scanner firmware version: <i>XXXX</i>	No action required.
05050000	Add-in module loaded successfully.	No action required.

E

Code	Message	Action
05050001	Add-in module operation started.	<p>No action is required. However, the finish status of the Add-in module will also be displayed later on.</p> <div>  </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> "1. Operation started" message <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 05050001 "2. Operation finished" message <p>The finish status of the Add-in module is displayed, and one of the following message codes is output.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 05050002 05050003 05050004 15050002 <p>After the "1. Operation started" message is displayed, if the "2. Operation finished" message is not displayed, control is not returned from the Add-in module to the scanner. Contact an Add-in module administrator.</p>
05050002	Add-in module operation finished successfully.	No action required.
05050003	Add-in module operation was canceled.	No action required.
05050004	Add-in module operation finished automatically.	No action required.
05050005	Add-in module passed self-authentication.	No action required.
05050006	Add-in module failed self-authentication.	No action required.

■ Warning

Code	Message	Action
110C0010	Password contains invalid characters. Re-enter the password, and try again.	Enter a password and try again.
15050001	Add-in module could not be loaded.	Contact a system administrator.
15050002	Add-in module operation error.	Contact a system administrator.
83070001	Pad assembly needs replacing. Contact a system administrator.	To have the pad assembly replaced, contact a system administrator. The system administrator should open the top cover and replace the pad assembly. "7.6.3 Replacing the Pad Assembly" (page 370)
83070002	Pick roller needs replacing. Contact a system administrator.	To have the pick roller replaced, contact a system administrator. The system administrator should open the top cover and replace the pick roller. "7.6.4 Replacing the Pick Roller" (page 371)

■ Error

Code	Message	Action
100B0001	Network is busy. Try again later.	Wait for a while, and try again.
11030003	Cannot find the network printer path.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Contact a network administrator to check server status.• Check that the spooler is operating properly.
11040003	Cannot find the network folder path.	Contact a network administrator to check server status.
11040005	Insufficient free space in the designated network folder.	Ensure the free space requirements are met, and try again.

Code	Message	Action
11080001	Number of user data stores has reached the maximum allowed. New users may not login until the old user data stores are deleted.	To have the user data store cleared, contact a system administrator. Clearing the user data store is not an undoable action. "Clearing the User Data Store" (page 148)
11090001	Application could not be started. System restored to last known good state. Contact a system administrator.	System or user settings were restored at system restart. Contact a system administrator. The administrator should check the restored system or user settings.
110B0001	Search has timed out. Contact a system administrator.	Contact a system administrator to check the time of the search timeout. "4.7.8 Setting the Login LDAP Server" (page 88)
110B0002	Not connected to the network.	Check that the system network is functioning normally by performing a ping test from another machine in the network, other than from a machine in the same server as network printer. If the system network is not operating properly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.
110B0004	LDAP server is busy.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to have the network settings checked. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388) • Contact a system administrator to have the server status checked.
110B0100	LDAP server response error.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check whether the LDAP server is available. • Set a valid user name and password.

Code	Message	Action
110D0001	Login failed. Check the user name and password, and try again.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter a user name and password, and try again. • Enter a valid user name and password, and try again. • Contact a system administrator and have them check that the LDAP server is set. • Contact a system administrator to have the server status checked. • Contact a system administrator to check if the password has expired. • Login is not possible if the Active Directory account option is "User must change password at next logon". Contact an administrator to set a password, and then try logging in.
110D0002	Cannot connect to the LDAP server.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The network settings may not be valid. Contact a system administrator to have the network settings checked. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388) • The server is not working. Contact a system administrator to have the server status checked. • If using SSL communication when connecting to the LDAP server, contact an administrator to check if the server certificate, issued from a root certification authority, is installed on the LDAP server. • Set a valid user name and password.
110D0004	Access to network folder was refused.	Contact a server administrator to find out if an access permit has been set.
110D0005	Number of network path connections has reached the maximum allowed. No more may be specified.	Close unneeded network connections, then try specifying the desired network path again.
110D0006	Invalid LDAP Search Base format.	<p>Contact a system administrator to have the LDAP search base format corrected.</p> <p>"4.7.8 Setting the Login LDAP Server" (page 88)</p>

Code	Message	Action
110D0007	Current login (LDAP account) has become invalid.	Contact a system administrator to have the login account validated.
110D0008	The file to be overwritten may be in use elsewhere.	Check that the file to be overwritten is closed, and try again.
110D0009	Specified password is no longer valid for this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password validated again.
110D000A	Specified user needs to renew their password for this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password changed.
110D000B	Specified user is no longer able to login to this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login a with different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated.
110D000C	Access to network folder was refused. The specified account is currently locked out.	Contact a network administrator to have the account unlocked.
110D000D	Access to network folder was refused. Login is not possible at this time.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try again when login is possible. • Contact a network administrator to have the time setting changed.
110D0044	Access to network printer was refused.	Contact a server administrator to find out if an access permit has been set.
110D0049	Specified password is no longer valid for this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login a with different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated again.
110D004A	Specified user needs to renew their password for this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login a with different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password changed.
110D004B	Specified user is no longer able to login to this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login a with different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated.

Code	Message	Action
110D004C	Access to network printer was refused. The specified account is currently locked out.	Contact a network administrator to have the account unlocked.
110D004D	Access to network printer was refused. Login is not possible at this time.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try again when login is possible. • Contact a network administrator to have the time setting changed.
110D004E	Could not connect to the network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable is connected properly to the scanner and print server. • Contact a network administrator to check that the print server is working properly. • Check that the print server spooler is operating properly. • Contact a network administrator to find out if an access permit has been set. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and network printer settings are correct. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)
110D0100	Error: network folder could not be accessed.	Contact a network administrator to check whether the network folder can store data.
110D0140	Error: network printer could not be accessed.	Contact a network administrator to check whether the network printer can be accessed.
110E0001	Notification e-mail could not be sent to the administrator.	Contact an administrator to check if sending e-mail is possible.
11150001	Corrupted system log file was deleted.	System log file was deleted because the scanner was turned off during operations. No action required.
11150002	Corrupted user log file was deleted.	User log file was deleted because the scanner was turned off during operations. No action required.

Code	Message	Action
12010001	Scanned data size exceeded maximum size allowed for e-mail attachments.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduce the number of pages to be scanned and send the e-mail in separate parts. • Select a higher compression level and try again. <p>"6.8.9 Compression" (page 325)</p> <p>If the problem persists, contact a system administrator to check the "Maximum Attachment Size" setting.</p> <p>"4.7.11 Setting the e-Mail Server (SMTP Server)" (page 100)</p>
12010002	Could not connect to server when sending e-mail.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and SMTP server is connected properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and SMTP server settings are correct. <p>"8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check that the SMTP server is working properly.
12010003	"From" address was rejected by the server when sending e-mail.	Contact a system administrator to check that the specified e-mail source address is authorized for use on the server.
12010004	"To" address was rejected by the server when sending e-mail.	Contact a system administrator to check that the specified e-mail destination address is authorized for use on the server.
12010005	e-Mail size exceeded maximum e-mail size allowed by the SMTP server.	Contact a system administrator to check the maximum e-mail size allowed by the SMTP server.

Code	Message	Action
12010006	SMTP server connection was lost while sending e-mail.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and SMTP server is connected properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and SMTP server settings are correct. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388) • Contact a system administrator to check that the SMTP server is working properly. • Contact a system administrator to check the maximum e-mail size allowed by the SMTP server.
12010100	Error: e-mail could not be sent.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check if sending e-mail is allowed. • If the [e-Mail address of user] option button is selected for [To] and/or [From], an error will occur during the job process in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the currently logged in user does not have an e-mail address • If the currently logged in user is using the guest account <p>In this case, specify a user with a registered e-mail address and perform the job sequence.</p>
12020001	Scanned data size exceeded maximum size allowed for sending by fax.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduce the number of pages to be scanned and send the fax in separate parts. • Select a higher compression level, and try again. "6.8.9 Compression" (page 325) <p>If the problem persists, contact a system administrator to check the "Maximum Attachment Size" setting. "4.7.11 Setting the e-Mail Server (SMTP Server)" (page 100)</p>

Code	Message	Action
12020002	Could not connect to server when sending fax.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and SMTP server is connected properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address, SMTP server and fax server settings are correct. <p>"8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check that the SMTP and fax servers are working properly.
12020003	"From" address was rejected by the server when sending fax.	Contact a system administrator to check that the specified e-mail source address is authorized for use on the server.
12020004	"To" address was rejected by the server when sending fax.	Contact a system administrator to check that the specified e-mail destination address is authorized for use on the server.
12020005	Fax size exceeded maximum fax size allowed by the SMTP server.	Contact a system administrator to check the "Maximum Attachment Size" setting. "4.7.11 Setting the e-Mail Server (SMTP Server)" (page 100)
12020006	SMTP server connection was lost while sending fax data.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and SMTP server is connected properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and SMTP server settings are correct. <p>"8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check that the SMTP server is working properly. • Contact a system administrator to check the maximum e-mail size allowed by the SMTP server.

Code	Message	Action
12020100	Error: fax could not be sent.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check if sending fax is allowed. • If the [e-Mail address of user] option button is selected for "Notification To (Sender's e-Mail Address)", an error will occur when a job sequence is performed in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the currently logged in user does not have an e-mail address • If logged in with the guest account <p>In this case, specify a user with a registered e-mail address and perform the job sequence.</p>
12030001	Cannot find the network printer path.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and print server is connected properly. • Contact a network administrator to check that the print server is working properly. • Check that the spooler is operating properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and network printer settings are correct. <p>"8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)</p>
12030002	Access to network printer was refused.	Contact a server administrator to find out if an access permit has been set.
12030005	Network is busy. Try again later.	Wait for a while, and try again.
12030006	User name or password may be incorrect.	Re-enter the user name and password.
12030007	Not connected to the network.	<p>Check that the system network is functioning normally by performing a ping test from another machine in the network, other than from a machine in the same server as network printer. If the system network is not operating correctly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.</p>

Code	Message	Action
1203000A	Number of network path connections has reached the maximum allowed. No more may be specified.	Close unneeded network connections, then try specifying the desired network path again.
1203000C	Specified user is no longer able to login to this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login a with different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated.
1203000D	Specified password is no longer valid for this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login a with different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password validated again.
1203000E	Specified user needs to renew their password for this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login a with different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password changed.
1203000F	Access to network printer was refused. The specified account is currently locked out.	Contact a network administrator to have the account unlocked.
12030010	Access to network printer was refused. Login is not possible at this time.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try again when login is possible. • Contact a network administrator to have the time setting changed.
12030011	Could not connect to the network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable is connected properly to the scanner and print server. • Contact a network administrator to check that the print server is working properly. • Check that the print server spooler is operating properly. • Contact a network administrator to find out if an access permit has been set. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and network printer settings are correct. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)

Code	Message	Action
12030100	Error: could not print.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and file server is connected properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and registered network printer path settings are correct. • Check the network printer authority privileges.
12040001	Cannot find the network folder path.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and file server is connected properly. • Check that the file server is working properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and network folder settings are correct. <p>"8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When creating a folder, if the name of the folder to be created is already used by a file in the target network folder for saving, it cannot be created. Change the name of the file, or change the file name settings. <p>For saving to the FTP server network folder, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check whether or not read or write access to the FTP server network folder is permitted for the currently logged in user or authenticated user. • Check if the file attribute has been set as hidden. • Check that the target file to be overwritten is not used, and try again.
12040002	Access to network folder was refused.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check whether or not access to the network folder is permitted for the currently logged in user or authenticated user. • Check if the file attribute has been set as hidden.

Code	Message	Action
12040003	File already existed, so data could not be saved.	To overwrite the existing file, on the "Save" screen, set "Overwrite old files?" as "Yes", and try again.
12040005	Network is busy. Try again later.	Try again later.
12040006	User name or password may be incorrect.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Re-enter the user name and password. • Check that the proxy server is operating properly. • Contact an administrator to check that the IP address settings, FTP server network folder, or proxy server settings are correct. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)
12040007	Not connected to the network.	Check that the system network is functioning normally by performing a ping test from another machine in the network, other than the server with network folder. If the system network is not operating correctly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.
12040009	Insufficient free space in the designated network folder.	Ensure the free space requirements are met, and try again.
1204000A	Number of network path connections has reached the maximum allowed. No more may be specified.	Close unneeded network connections, then try specifying the desired network path again.
1204000B	File targeted for overwriting may already be in use.	Check that the file to be overwritten is closed, and try again.
1204000C	Specified user is no longer able to login to this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated.
1204000D	Specified password is no longer valid for this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password validated again.

Code	Message	Action
1204000E	Specified user needs to renew their password for this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password changed.
12040100	Error: network folder access was refused.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a network administrator to check whether the network folder is ready for use. • For the MTIFF format, the file size for the scanned data may not exceed 2GB. Try adjusting the scan parameters to decrease the size of the file. • Check that the file name format and number of characters of the file name are allowed for the file server. For saving to the FTP server network folder, try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable is connected properly to the scanner and FTP server. • Contact a network administrator to check that the FTP server is working properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address setting and FTP server network folder path are correct. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure the free space requirements are met, and try again. • Close unneeded network connections, and try specifying the network path again.
1204000F	Access to network folder was refused. The specified account is currently locked out.	Contact a network administrator to have the account unlocked.
12040010	Access to network folder was refused. Login is not possible at this time.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try again when login is possible. • Contact a network administrator to have the time setting changed.

Code	Message	Action
12040011	"Save as:" filename contains invalid characters (:*?"<>), or is set to a reserved string (CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, ..., COM9, LPT0, ..., LPT9). Re-enter the filename and try again.	The following characters and reserved strings cannot be used. : * ? " < > CON PRN AUX CLOCK\$ NUL COM0 ... COM9 LPT0 ... LPT9 Re-enter the file name using only valid characters.
12130001	Error: Scan&Buffer process could not output data for the scheduled jobs.	Try again.
13060001	Scanner initialization has failed. Try turning the power off and back on again. The administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the cables are connected to the scanner properly. • If the scanner does not restart automatically, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen to turn the power off, and turn the power back on again to restart the scanner. • If the error status persists after the scanner is restarted, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen, disconnect the AC cable and try turning the power back on again. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
1306001A		
1306001D		
1306002C	Insufficient memory. Try turning the power off and back on again. If problem persists, the administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help.	System might be unstable. Shutdown and press the startup button to restart the scanner. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
1314002C	Insufficient memory. Try turning the power off and back on again. If problem persists, the administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help.	Reduce the size of the scan data or set a lower resolution level, and try again.

Code	Message	Action
13061001	Scan error occurred. File name: <i>XXXX</i> Error code: <i>XXXX</i>	Shutdown and press the startup button to restart the scanner. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
13061002		
13061003		
13080001	Scanner firmware update failed. The administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help. Scanner firmware version: <i>XXXX</i>	Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
83070006	Scanner hardware failure. The administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help.	Shutdown and press the startup button to restart the scanner. If the problem persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
83070007		
83070008		
8307000C		
84000001	An error has occurred. Try turning the power off and back on again. If problem persists, the administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help. [alphanumeric eight digits]	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the scanner does not restart automatically, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen to turn the power off, and turn the power back on again to restart the scanner. • If the error status persists after the scanner is restarted, press the [Shutdown] button on the "Login" screen, disconnect the AC cable from the scanner to turn the power off, wait for at least ten seconds, then reconnect the AC cable and try turning the power back on again. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

Code	Message	Action
84000002	An error has occurred. The system must be restarted. Any buffered jobs will be canceled. If problem persists, the administrator should contact a FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help. [alphanumeric eight digits]	If the problem persists, the administrator should contact a FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
84000003	An error has occurred. The system must be restarted. Any buffered jobs will be canceled. After restarting the system, if the same error occurs, it may be due to a scanner failure. In this case, remove any documents that have been fed into the scanner, disconnect and reattach the power cord, and restart the system again. If problem persists, the administrator should contact a FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help. [alphanumeric eight digits]	If the problem persists, the administrator should contact a FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

E.2.3 User Log

Code	Message	Action
00000000	-----	No action required.
12010001	Scanned data size exceeded maximum size allowed for e-mail attachments.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Reduce the number of pages to be scanned and send the e-mail in separate parts.• Select a higher compression level and try again. <p>"6.8.9 Compression" (page 325)</p> <p>If the problem persists, contact a system administrator to check the "Maximum Attachment Size" setting.</p> <p>"4.7.11 Setting the e-Mail Server (SMTP Server)" (page 100)</p>
12010002	Could not connect to server when sending e-mail.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and SMTP server is connected properly.• Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and SMTP server settings are correct. <p>"8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Contact a system administrator to check that the SMTP server is working properly.
12010003	"From" address was rejected by the server when sending e-mail.	Contact a system administrator to check that the specified e-mail source address is authorized for use on the server.
12010004	"To" address was rejected by the server when sending e-mail.	Contact a system administrator to check that the specified e-mail destination address is authorized for use on the server.
12010005	e-Mail size exceeded maximum e-mail size allowed by the SMTP server.	Contact a system administrator to check the maximum e-mail size allowed by the SMTP server.

Code	Message	Action
12010006	SMTP server connection was lost while sending e-mail.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and SMTP server is connected properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and SMTP server settings are correct. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388) • Contact a system administrator to check that the SMTP server is working properly. • Contact a system administrator to check the maximum e-mail size allowed by the SMTP server.
12010100	Error: e-mail could not be sent.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check if sending e-mail is allowed. • If the [e-Mail address of user] option button is selected for [To] and/or [From], an error will occur during the job process in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the currently logged in user does not have an e-mail address • If the currently logged in user is using the guest account <p>In this case, specify a user with a registered e-mail address and perform the job sequence.</p>
12020001	Scanned data size exceeded maximum size allowed for sending by fax.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reduce the number of pages to be scanned and send the fax in separate parts. • Select a higher compression level, and try again. "6.8.9 Compression" (page 325) <p>If the problem persists, contact a system administrator to check the "Maximum Attachment Size" setting. "4.7.11 Setting the e-Mail Server (SMTP Server)" (page 100)</p>

Code	Message	Action
12020002	Could not connect to server when sending fax.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and SMTP server is connected properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address, SMTP server and fax server settings are correct. <p>"8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check that the SMTP and fax servers are working properly.
12020003	"From" address was rejected by the server when sending fax.	Contact a system administrator to check that the specified e-mail source address is authorized for use on the server.
12020004	"To" address was rejected by the server when sending fax.	Contact a system administrator to check that the specified e-mail destination address is authorized for use on the server.
12020005	Fax size exceeded maximum fax size allowed by the SMTP server.	Contact a system administrator to check the "Maximum Attachment Size" setting. "4.7.11 Setting the e-Mail Server (SMTP Server)" (page 100)
12020006	SMTP server connection was lost while sending fax data.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and SMTP server is connected properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and SMTP server settings are correct. <p>"8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check that the SMTP server is working properly. • Contact a system administrator to check the maximum e-mail size allowed by the SMTP server.

Code	Message	Action
12020100	Error: fax could not be sent.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check if sending fax is allowed. • If the [e-Mail address of user] option button is selected for "Notification To (Sender's e-Mail Address)", an error will occur when a job sequence is performed in the following cases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the currently logged in user does not have an e-mail address • If logged in with the guest account <p>In this case, specify a user with a registered e-mail address and perform the job sequence.</p>
12030001	Cannot find the network printer path.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and the print server are connected properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the print server is working properly. • Check that the spooler is operating correctly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and SMTP server settings are correct. <p>"8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)</p>
12030002	Access to network printer was refused.	Contact a network administrator to find out if an access permit has been set.
12030005	Network is busy. Try again later.	Wait for a few minutes, and try again.
12030006	User name or password may be incorrect.	Enter the user name and password correctly.
12030007	Not connected to the network.	<p>Check that the system network is functioning normally by performing a ping test from another machine in the network, other than the server with network folder.</p> <p>If the system network is not operating correctly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393).</p>

Code	Message	Action
1203000A	Number of network path connections has reached the maximum allowed. No more may be specified.	Close unneeded network connections, then try specifying the desired network path again.
1203000C	Specified user is no longer able to login to this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account for the network printer validated.
1203000D	Specified password is no longer valid for this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password validated again.
1203000E	Specified user needs to renew their password for this network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password for the network printer changed.
1203000F	Access to network printer was refused. The specified account is currently locked out.	Contact a network administrator to have the account for the network printer unlocked.
12030010	Access to network printer was refused. Login is not possible at this time.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try again when login is possible. • Contact a network administrator to have the time setting changed.
12030011	Could not connect to the network printer.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable is connected properly to the scanner and print server. • Contact a network administrator to check that the print server is working properly. • Check that the print server spooler is operating properly. • Contact a network administrator to find out if an access permit has been set. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and network printer settings are correct. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)

Code	Message	Action
12030100	Error: could not print.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and file server is connected properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and registered network printer path settings are correct. • Check the network printer authority privileges.
12040001	Cannot find the network folder path.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable of the scanner and file server is connected properly. • Check that the file server is working properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address and network folder settings are correct. <p>"8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When creating a folder, if the name of the folder to be created is already used by a file in the save location network folder, it cannot be created. Change the name of the file, or change the file name settings. <p>For saving to the FTP server network folder, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check whether or not read or write access to the FTP server network folder is permitted for the currently logged in user or authenticated user. • Check if the file attribute has been set as hidden. • Check that the target file to be overwritten is not used, and try again.
12040002	Access to network folder was refused.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a system administrator to check whether or not access to the network folder is permitted for the currently logged in user or authenticated user. • Check if the file attribute has been set as hidden.

Code	Message	Action
12040003	File already existed, so data could not be saved.	To overwrite the existing file, on the "Save" screen, set "Overwrite old files?" as "Yes", and try again.
12040005	Network is busy. Try again later.	Try again later.
12040006	User name or password may be incorrect.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Re-enter the user name and password. • Check that the proxy server is operating properly. • Contact an administrator to check that the IP address settings, FTP server network folder, or proxy server settings are correct. "8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)
12040007	Not connected to the network.	Check that the system network is functioning normally by performing a ping test from another machine in the network, other than the server with network folder. If the system network is not operating correctly, refer to "Failure to connect to a server using its IP address" (page 393) for further solutions.
12040009	Insufficient free space in the designated network folder.	Ensure the free space requirements are met, and try again.
1204000A	Number of network path connections has reached the maximum allowed. No more may be specified.	Close unneeded network connections, then try specifying the desired network path again.
1204000B	File targeted for overwriting may already be in use.	Check that the file to be overwritten is closed, and try again.
1204000C	Specified user is no longer able to login to this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the account validated.
1204000D	Specified password is no longer valid for this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password validated again.

Code	Message	Action
1204000E	Specified user needs to renew their password for this network folder.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Login with a different account. • Contact a network administrator to have the password changed.
1204000F	Access to network folder was refused. The specified account is currently locked out.	Contact a network administrator to have the account unlocked.
12040010	Access to network folder was refused. Login is not possible at this time.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try again when login is possible. • Contact a network administrator to have the time setting changed.
12040011	"Save as:" filename contains invalid characters (:*?"<>), or is set to a reserved string (CON, PRN, AUX, CLOCK\$, NUL, COM0, ..., COM9, LPT0, ..., LPT9). Re-enter the filename and try again.	Do not use the following symbols or character strings: : * ? " < > CON PRN AUX CLOCK\$ NUL COM0 ... COM9 LPT0 ... LPT9 Re-enter the file name using only valid characters.

Code	Message	Action
12040100	Error: network folder access was refused.	<p>Try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contact a network administrator to check whether the network folder is ready for use. • For the MTIFF format, the file size for the scanned data may not exceed 2GB. Try adjusting the scan parameters to decrease the size of the file. • Check that the file name format and number of characters of the file name are allowed for the file server. <p>For saving to the FTP server network folder, try the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that the LAN cable is connected properly to the scanner and FTP server. • Contact a network administrator to check that the FTP server is working properly. • Contact a system administrator to check that the scanner IP address setting and FTP server network folder path are correct. <p>"8.3 Network Connection Troubleshooting" (page 388)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ensure the free space requirements are met, and try again. • Close unneeded network connections, and try specifying the network path again.
F4B30000	An error has occurred. Try turning the power off and back on again. The administrator should contact the FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider for help. [alphanumeric eight digits]	Shutdown and press the startup button to restart the scanner. If the error status persists, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
F4CA0000		
F4EF0000		
F2010002		
F2020002		
F2040002		

E.3 Central Admin Messages

The following messages may appear during central admin operations.

E.3.1 Central Admin Console Messages

Screen	Message	Action
Connect	Check the port number setting.	Enter a port number.
	Check the target server setting.	Enter a target server.
	Connection error.	Check the connection origin and port number, and try again.
	Language setting is different to that used by the Central Admin server.	Set the same language setting for the Central Admin server and Central Admin console operating systems.
Central Admin Console	fi Network Scanner Admin Tool could not be started. Check that it has been installed.	Check that the Admin Tool has been installed correctly.
Error	Output was interrupted before it could finish, and the results cannot be displayed. Return to the previous screen, and try again.	Try again.
System Error	Cannot connect to the database. The server may be overloaded. Contact the administrator if this error persists. (<i>Error code</i>)	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Try again.• Restart the Central Admin Server.
	Internal error has occurred . (<i>Error type</i>)	Try the following with reference to the contents of the error details. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Disconnect and re-login to the Central Admin console.• Close and restart the Central Admin console.• Restart the Central Admin server.• Check the amount of available free disk space

Screen	Message	Action
Edit Scanner Details	Scanner details cannot be found. This scanner may have already been deleted.	Check the Central Admin server scanner configuration.
	Scanner registration limit has been reached.	Delete scanner configuration from the Central Admin server for scanners which are no longer needed, and try again.
	This scanner name or MAC address is already registered.	Delete scanner configuration information from the Central Admin server for scanners which are no longer needed, and try again. The MAC address may have been changed in the maintenance process. In this case, after deleting the relevant scanner configuration, restart the scanner.
	Scanner name must be specified.	Enter a scanner name.
	Scanner name contains invalid characters.	Re-enter the scanner name using only specified valid characters.
	Invalid IP address format.	Re-enter the IP address in the valid format.
	Invalid MAC address format.	Re-enter the MAC address in the valid format.
	Settings Group name contains a reserved string.	Enter a valid settings group name.
Scanner Details	Add-in Group name contains a reserved string.	Enter a valid Add-in group name.
	Duplicate scanner name or MAC address.	Ensure that there are no duplications in scanner configuration files.
Scanner Details	No more WakeOnLAN packets may be sent at this time. Wait, then try again.	Wait for a few minutes, and try again.

Screen	Message	Action
System Updates	File format is not valid.	Specify a valid file.
	Specified file does not exist or is empty.	Specify a valid update file. The error may also occur if the authority to access the file does not exist.
	A date/time within one month from now must be specified.	Specify a valid update call date/time.
	A date/time within one month from now must be specified.	Enter a valid date/time.
	File must be specified.	Specify a file, and try again.
	The same or a newer system update has already been uploaded.	No action required.
	The same Add-in install module has already been uploaded.	No action required. However, to upload the same version of the Add-in install module again, first cancel the currently uploaded file.
Scanner Settings/ Job Mode Settings	Cannot open the Setting window. It may be being accessed by another user.	Another user may be editing job mode settings or scanner configuration settings. Wait the other user to finish the operation, and try again.
Central Admin Server Settings	Invalid Central Admin Console port number.	Enter a valid Central Admin Console port number.
	Invalid scanner communication port number.	Enter a valid scanner communication port number.
	Invalid WakeOnLAN port number.	Enter a valid Wake-On-LAN port number.
	LDAP server must be specified.	Specify an LDAP server.
	Invalid LDAP server address.	Enter a valid LDAP server address.
	Specified port number is already being used.	Specify a free port number.

Screen	Message	Action
iScanner Central Admin	Could not get data from the server. Status code: (XXXX)	<p>Some of the status codes are as follows. Errors 12007 or 12029 may appear immediately after resuming from standby mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • -1: Timeout occurred waiting for a response from the server • 500: SQL server instance is not running • 503: Application pool is not running • 12007: Network error • 12029: Cannot communicate with Web site (AmConsole) • 12031: Network error

E.3.2 System Log Messages

System log messages which may appear during central admin operations can be arranged into the following three categories:

- Information
- Warning
- Error

System log messages are shown in the scanner system log.

■ Information

Code	Message	Action
0B020001	Scanner registered by Central Admin server.	No action required.
0B020020	Add-in updated.	
0B020021	Scanner settings updated.	
0B020022	System updated.	
0B020023	User roaming data updated.	
0B020024	Job mode settings updated.	
0B020005	User roaming data uploaded.	
0B020006	Update process halted by login.	

■ Warning

Code	Message	Action
6B020003	Request received from invalid server.	The scanner received an invalid access request. If the problem persists, contact the network administrator.
6B020004	Network error occurred while contacting Central Admin server.	Refer to Code "7B020001" (page 507). The Central Admin Server will be contacted again when the scanner is re-started, resumed from standby mode, or when the user logs out.

■ Error

Code	Message	Action
7B020001	Scanner registration by Central Admin server failed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For Central Admin Server Check that the scanner is registered on the Central Admin Console "Scanner List" screen. • For Scanner Enter the address of the Central Admin Server on the "Ping" screen on the [Network Settings] tab, and check whether or not there is a response from the Central Admin Server. If there is no response from the Central Admin Server, check whether or not DHCP is enabled on the "IP Address" screen on the [Network Settings] tab. If DHCP is disabled, check that the IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway settings are correct. Check also that the network between the scanner and the Central Admin Server is connected correctly. Also check that the scanner's server-side status is "Registered" on the "Central Admin Server" screen on the [Network Settings] tab. If the scanner's server-side status is "Unregistered", check the address and the port number of the Central Admin Server, and register the scanner on the Central Admin Server.

E

Code	Message	Action
7B020050	Add-in update failed.	Refer to Error Code "7B020001" (page 507). Update is not complete. If the "Status Details" window in Central Admin Console displays "Error" status for the scanner, clear the error. Update process will be run again by logout.
7B020051	System update failed.	
7B020038	Scanner settings could not be applied.	
7B020039	Some scanner settings could not be applied.	When the scanner settings were applied, some settings may have failed to be applied. Using the Admin Tool, check the contents of the system error log, and try again. For more details about running the update process, refer to the action for error "7B020038" (page 508).

Code	Message	Action
7B020060	User Roaming Data download failed.	<p>Refer to Error Code "7B020001" (page 507).</p> <p>The latest user roaming data may not be used because the user roaming data download failed. To use the latest user roaming data, deal with errors and try to login again.</p> <p>If the user roaming data download fails and the error persists, new user roaming data is not uploaded to the Central Admin Server, even if the user data in the scanner is changed or the scanner is logged out.</p> <p>If both "Roaming Mode" and "Job Mode" are set as "On" on the [Central Admin Server] screen of the [Network Settings] tab, new job mode settings may also not be downloaded.</p> <p>To use the latest user roaming data, it must be downloaded from the Central Admin Server. After dealing with the error, re-login using the Central Admin Console and try again.</p>
7B020061	Job Mode Settings download failed.	<p>Refer to Error Code "7B020001" (page 507).</p> <p>Job mode settings cannot be downloaded because the job mode settings have not been updated. To use the job mode settings, they must be downloaded from the Central Admin Server. After dealing with the error, re-login using Central Admin Console and try again.</p>

Code	Message	Action
7B020023	New user data could not be uploaded to the server's User Roaming store.	Refer to Error Code "7B020001" (page 507). User roaming data cannot be updated because the new user data has not be uploaded to the Central Admin Server.
7B020035	Network error occurred while contacting Central Admin server.	Refer to Error Code "7B020001" (page 507). The new user roaming data and job mode settings cannot be used. To use the user roaming data and job mode settings, they must be downloaded from the Central Admin Server. After dealing with the error, re-login using Central Admin Console and try again.
7B020036	Network error occurred while contacting Central Admin server.	Refer to Error Code "7B020001" (page 507). The applied status was not notified to the Central Admin Server. The applied status will be notified to the Central Admin Server the next time the scanner is restarted, resumed from standby mode, or when the user logs out.
7B020011	Inventory Information acquisition failed.	Try the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check that physical network connection to the DHCP server is functioning correctly. • Check the DHCP server. The server may not be operating normally, or the DHCP settings (restricted number of leases or MAC address validation) may be causing invalid IP addresses to be assigned. If there are no problems with the items described above, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

Code	Message	Action
7B020025	Contact with Central Admin server failed.	An error occurred. Contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.
7B020026	Contact with Central Admin server failed.	

E.3.3 Event Log

■ System Event Log

The system event log shows a list of all system events.

- Log Type: Application
- Event source: iScanner Central Admin

Code	Message	Action
11001	iScanner Central Admin server started up.	No action required.
11002	iScanner Central Admin server shut down.	
11901	Service started successfully.	
11902	Service stopped successfully.	
12001	Default setting is being used in place of invalid value. Parameter: XXXX Invalid value: XXXX Default value: XXXX	
12002	Tried to exceed the scanner registration limit.	Delete unneeded scanner configuration.
12003	Tried to exceed the user roaming data registration limit.	Delete any unneeded user roaming data.
12902	Schedule notification failed. Retrying. (XXXX)	No action required.
13001	Error has occurred. Type: Error Type Details: Error Details	Check the error details and other event logs.
13002	Inhospitable execution environment – process cannot continue. Details: Error Details	Check the error details and other event logs.
13003	Database could not be accessed. Details: Error Details	Check the database operating status.
13004	Schedule could not be set. Details: Error Details	Restart the iScanner Central Admin service.
13005	Settings used for communication between the Central Admin Server and Central Admin Console could not be changed. Details: Error Details	Restart the iScanner Central Admin service.

Code	Message	Action
13901	Scheduler could not be started. (XXXX)	Restart the iScanner Central Admin service.
13902	Schedule notification failed. (XXXX)	Check the operating status of the Web site using IIS Manager. If the operating system of the Central Admin Server is either Windows Server® 2003 or Windows Server® 2008, check the operating status of the Web site "AmService" and the application pool "AmService". If the operation system of the Central Admin Server is Windows® 2000 Server, check the operating status of the Web site "AmService".
13903	Schedule (XXXX) expired and was deleted. [XXXX] events	The release schedules for seven or more days ago were deleted. Check the status of updates to the scanner, and issue any necessary update calls to scanners with "Pending" status.
13904	Error has occurred. (XXXX)	Restart the iScanner Central Admin service.

■ Central Admin Console Event Log

This displays the Central Admin Console event list. For message error details, only text up to the maximum character limit (256 characters) will be shown.

Code	Message	Action
0A011001	New system update <i>System_version</i> has been released. [Scanner Notification Schedule: <i>Date/time</i>]	No action required. This indicates whether or not the [Scanner Notification Schedule: <i>Date/time</i>], [] is shown.
0A011002	New Add-in install <i>Add-in_name</i> [<i>Add-in_group</i>] has been released. [Scanner Notification Schedule: <i>Date/time</i>]	
0A011003	New scanner settings <i>Settings_group</i> have been released. [Scanner Notification Schedule: <i>Date/time</i>]	
0A011004	Notifying target scanners of system update <i>System_version</i> .	No action required.
0A011005	Target scanners notified of system update <i>System_version</i> .	
0A011006	Notifying target scanners of Add-in install <i>Add-in_name</i> [<i>Add-in_group</i>].	
0A011007	Target scanners notified of Add-in install <i>Add-in_name</i> [<i>Add-in_group</i>].	
0A011008	Notifying target scanners of scanner settings <i>Settings_group</i> .	
0A011009	Target scanners notified of scanner settings <i>Settings_group</i> .	
0A011010	New Job Mode Settings released.	
0A011011	User roaming data uploaded to server. User: XXXX	
0A011012	Update call for system update <i>System_version</i> was canceled.	

Code	Message	Action
0A011013	Update call for Add-in install <i>Add-in_name</i> [<i>Add-in_group</i>] was canceled.	No action required.
0A011014	Update call for scanner settings <i>Settings_group</i> was canceled.	
0A011015	System update <i>System_version</i> release has been canceled.	
0A011016	Add-in module <i>Add-in_name</i> [<i>Add-in_group</i>] release has been canceled.	
0A011017	System settings <i>Settings_group</i> release has been canceled.	
0A011018	Job Mode Settings release has been canceled.	
0A021101	System update successfully applied.	
0A021102	Add-in install successfully applied.	
0A021103	Scanner settings successfully applied.	
0A021104	Scanner inventory has been updated.	
0A021105	Scanner has been registered.	
0A021106	Update call has been sent to scanner.	
0A021107	Wake-On-LAN magic packet sent to scanner.	
0A021108	Update cannot be applied immediately, because the scanner is being used, or for some other reason. It will be applied as soon as it is possible.	
6A022101	Illegal access attempt. Scanner name: <i>XXXX</i> MAC address: <i>XXXX</i> IP address: <i>XXXX</i>	No action required. When registering from the scanner, if the its scanner configuration is not added to the Central Admin Server, "Central Admin" is set to "On", and the "Automatically add new scanners to the Central Admin configuration when they are discovered." checkbox is not selected, this message appears.

Code	Message	Action
6A012002	Duplicate scanner name. Scanner name: <i>XXXX</i> MAC address: <i>XXXX</i> IP address: <i>XXXX</i>	Change the scanner name or delete unneeded scanner data, and try again. This error may occur when the MAC address is changed in the maintenance process. In this case, delete scanner configuration data, and re-start the scanner.
6A012003	Tried to exceed the scanner registration limit.	Delete any unneeded scanner configuration data.
6A012004	Tried to exceed the user roaming data registration limit.	Delete any unneeded user roaming data.
7A013001	System update <i>System_version</i> could not be released. Details: <i>XXXX</i>	Ensure that there is enough free disk space available. Check that there are no errors in the event viewer.
7A013002	Add-in install <i>Add-in_name</i> [<i>Add-in_group</i>] could not be released. Details: <i>XXXX</i>	
7A013003	Scanner settings <i>XXXX</i> could not be released. Details: <i>XXXX</i>	
7A013004	Job Mode Settings could not be released. Details: <i>XXXX</i>	
7A013005	Update call for system update <i>System_version</i> failed. Details: <i>XXXX</i>	Check the network status.
7A013006	Update call for Add-in install <i>Add-in_name</i> [<i>Add-in_group</i>] failed. Details: <i>XXXX</i>	
7A013007	Update call for scanner settings <i>Settings_group</i> failed. Details: <i>XXXX</i>	
7A023101	System update could not be applied. Details: <i>XXXX</i>	Refer to the system log for the scanner.
7A023102	Add-in install could not be applied. Details: <i>XXXX</i>	
7A023103	Scanner settings could not be applied. Details: <i>XXXX</i>	

E.3.4 Backup/Restore Command Messages

Backup/restore command messages which may appear during central admin operations can be arranged into the following two categories:

- Information
- Error

Backup/restore command messages will be shown on the command prompt.

■ Information

Code	Message	Action
0A040001	Starting backup.	No action required.
0A040002	Finishing backup.	
0A040003	Starting restore.	
0A040004	Finishing restore.	

■ Error

Code	Message	Action
7A040010	iScanner Central Admin is not installed.	Central Admin Server software is not installed. Try again in a Central Admin Server that has been correctly installed.
7A040011	Backup folder has not been specified.	The backup file name is not specified in the parameters of the backup command and restore command. Specify the backup file, and try again.
7A040012	Backup folder does not exist.	Specify the backup folder that was specified with the backup command, and try again. Or, check the read privilege for the specified backup folder.
7A040013	Backup folder contents are invalid.	The backup folder specified in the parameter for the restore command is not a backup folder for Central Admin. Specify the Central Admin backup folder and try again.

E

Code	Message	Action
7A040014	Backup file already exists.	A file or folder exists in the backup folder. Specify an empty folder. If a folder which does not exist is specified, it will be created.
7A040015	Backup folder specification is invalid.	This error message is output in the following cases. After checking the error, run the command again. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The backup folder specified in the parameter for the restore command does not have write access • The specified backup folder name already exists as a file • The backup file full path is longer than 128 bytes
7A040016	Server is busy. Try again later.	This message appears if the backup/restore command is executed during an update call on the Central Admin Server. Wait until the update call is finished, and try again.
7A040017	Backup failed.	If this message appears with auxiliary code [7A041012], free disk space may be insufficient. Ensure that there is enough free disk space available, and try again. If this message appears with auxiliary code [7A041015], it is possible that the database file used in the Central Admin Server is being used with a software other than the Central Admin Server software. Stop using the database file and try again. If this message appears without auxiliary code, the contents of the problem are shown in the following format. ... Problem details ... If this message appears frequently with auxiliary code other than those mentioned above, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.

Code	Message	Action
7A040018	Restore failed.	<p>If this message appears with auxiliary code [7A041013], free disk space may be insufficient. Ensure that there is enough free disk space available, and try again.</p> <p>If this message appears with auxiliary code [7A041008], a file in the restoration folder may be in use. Check that the file is not in use, and try again.</p> <p>If this message appears with auxiliary code [7A041015], it is possible that the database file used in the Central Admin Server is being used with a software other than the Central Admin Server software. Stop using the database file and try again.</p> <p>If this message appears without auxiliary code, the contents of the problem are shown in the following format.</p> <p>...</p> <p>Problem details</p> <p>...</p> <p>If this message appears frequently with auxiliary code other than those mentioned above, contact your FUJITSU scanner dealer or an authorized FUJITSU scanner service provider.</p>
7A040019	Backup or restore is already running.	Try again, after finishing the backup or restoration.
7A040020	Port number (XXXX) is already in use.	Port number (XXXX) is already in use by another application. Change the settings of the application using XXXX, and try restoring again.
7A040021	Backup folder is not empty.	<p>A file or folder exists in the backup folder. Specify an empty folder.</p> <p>If a folder which does not exist is specified, it will be created.</p>

Appendix F

Glossary

Admin

User



A4 size

A standard international paper size. (210 × 297mm / approximately 8.27 × 11.7inches)

A5 size

A standard international paper size. (148 × 210mm / approximately 15.83 × 8.27inches)

A6 size

A standard international paper size. (105 × 148mm / approximately 14.13 × 5.83inches)

ADF (Automatic Document Feeder)

A unit that allows the user to scan a number of pages consecutively.

Documents are transported from the ADF paper chute past the scanning area to the output tray. Actual scanning is performed by the CCD sensors inside of this unit.

B5 size

A standard international paper size. (182 × 257mm / approximately 7.17 × 10.12inches)

B6 size

A standard international paper size. (128 × 182mm / approximately 5.04 × 7.17inches)

Brightness

Refers to the brightness level of the scanned images.

Business card size

A standard paper size. (89 × 51mm)

Portrait orientation is used for this scanner.

Canadian DOC Regulations

A standard issued by Industry Canada, a department of the Canadian government, which sets out the technical requirements relative to the radiated and conducted radio noise emissions from digital apparatus.

Carrier Sheet

A Carrier Sheet is a plastic sheet specifically used for loading non-standard documents onto the scanner.

Default settings

The settings installed at time of factory shipping.

Duplex scan mode

A scan mode where both sides of each document sheet are scanned. See also "Simplex scan mode".

dpi (dots per inch)

Dots per inch. Number of dots lined along one inch. The measurement of resolution normally used for scanners and printers. Higher dpi means better resolution.

Executive size

A standard international paper size. (266.7 × 184.2mm / approximately 10.5 × 7.25inches)

FCC

Acronym for "The Federal Communications Commission", an independent United States government agency which is in charge of regulating interstate and international communications via radio, television, wire, satellite and cable. The Part 15 of the FCC regulations mentioned in this manual is designed to prevent harmful interferences on radio communication of radio receivers and other devices which radiate radio frequency energy, and provides for the certification of radio receivers. It also provides the certification of low power transmitters and the operation of certificated transmitters without a license.

F

Feed roller

Rollers that feed documents through the ADF.

Idler roller

Rollers that feed documents through the ADF.

Interface

The connection that allows communication from the computer to the scanner.

Landscape orientation

A document with its long side horizontal and its short side vertical. See also "Portrait orientation".

LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol)

A protocol for accessing a directory database over a TCP/IP network.

Legal size

A standard international paper size. (215.9 × 355.6mm / 8.5 × 14inches)

Letter size

A standard North American paper size. (8.5 × 11inches / 215.9 × 279.4mm)

MMR

ITU-T (CCITT) T.6 compression.

A compression method used when the color mode is black and white.

Multifeed detection

A scanner function which detects accidental feeding of multiple sheets into the ADF.

Noise

Isolated white (black) dots appearing on black (white) areas of an image.

Pad assembly (PAD ASSY)

A collection of rubber pads and metal leaf springs that is used to help separate a single document sheet from a batch in the ADF paper chute for feeding into the ADF.

Paper jam

A warning that appears when a document sheet is jammed in the document feed path, or document feeding is interrupted by a slipping sheet.

Pick roller

A roller that picks the next document sheet out of the ADF paper chute and the ADF.

Portrait orientation

A document with its long side vertical and its short side horizontal.
See also "Landscape orientation".

Postcard size

A standard paper size. (148 × 100mm / approximately 5.83 × 5.94inches)
Portrait orientation is used for this scanner.

Resolution

A measure of the fineness of details or grain of images. The customary metric of resolution is dpi (dots per inch). For any given image, the higher the resolution, the more dots or pixels that can be used, and the greater the resulting fineness of detail that can be expressed.

Simplex scan mode

A scan mode where only one side of each document sheet is scanned. See also "Duplex scan mode".

Ultrasonic sensor

A type of sensor that uses ultrasonic sound waves, in this case to detect document multifeeds by recognizing differences in how the sound penetrates single versus multiple sheets.

Index

A

AC adaptor connector	5
Add-in module	155
adding	
a contact to the e-mail address book	273
a contact to the fax number list	282
a job group	182
a job menu	176
a job sequence	163
ADF	6
ADF paper chute	5
ADF release button	5
admin password	66
Admin Tool	42, 47
administrator login	39
administrator	27, 31, 48, 193
administrator login	37
administrator screen messages	435
administrator screens	
via the network interface	34
via the touch panel	32
alert notification	128
AmBackup.exe	244
AmRestore.exe	246, 247
area not to be perforated	415
auto logout	61

B

background removal	332
--------------------------	-----

backing up	
system settings	150
the user data store	145
black & white	311
blank page skip	333
brightness	328

C

carbonless paper	412
care	355
carrier sheet	310, 366, 368
Central Admin Console	
main window	210
Central Admin Console window	194
central admin settings	
backing up	244
maintaining	244
restoring	246
changing	
the admin password	66
checking	
the user log	346
cleaner F1	356
cleaning	356
frequency	357
the ADF	358
the carrier sheet	366
the keyboard	365
the keyboard cover	365
the LCD touch panel	364
cleaning paper	356

cleaning wipe	356
clearing	
the system log	142
the user data store	148
the user logs	139
color mode	311
common buttons and indicators	256
compression	318, 325
contrast	329
converting scanned data	
into a searchable PDF	320
copying	
a job menu	180
a job sequence	171
CSV format	139, 142, 149
custom	306

D

date/time	59
default	306
deleting	
a contact from the e-mail address book	276
a contact from the fax number list	285
a job group	187
a job menu	181
a job sequence	172
a scanned page	345
device specifications	430
DHCP server	16
document loading capacity	414
downloading	
the system log	142
the system settings	149
the user logs	139
dropout color	331

duplex	298
--------------	-----

E

edge cropping	338
editing	
a contact in the e-mail address book	275
a contact in the fax number list	284
a job group	187
a job menu	180
a job sequence	171
e-mail	265
e-mail address book	269, 273, 275, 276
e-mail LDAP server	93

F

fax number list	279, 282, 285
fax number maximum contacts	282
fax server	16, 101
features	2
feed rollers	357, 361
file format	318, 319
file server	15
filtering job sequence	172
firewall	205
folder alias	118, 120, 123
folder list	299
FTP path	121
FTP server	15

G

glass scanner windows	6, 362
glossary	521
grayscale	311

I	
idler rollers	357, 362
installing	
add-in	230
an add-in module	155
the Admin Tool	42
the Central Admin Console	202
the Central Admin Server software	198
IP address	76

J	
job menu	260
job progress	350
job report	351
job setting quick user guide	161

K	
keyboard	5, 25, 365
keyboard cover	365, 376

L	
LAN connector	5
LCD touch panel	5, 24, 364
LDAP list	173, 190, 269
LDAP server	262
location	58
login	262
via the Admin Tool	48
via the Central Admin Console	207
via the touch panel	37
logout	32
long page	314

M	
main menu	258
maintenance	143
managing	
the system log	140
user logs	137
materials	
cleaning	356
maximum document loading capacity	414
maximum e-mail address book contacts	273
menu mode	258, 260
menu tab	32
multifeed detection	71, 337
multi-function main menu	189
my list	273, 275, 276

N	
network folder	116
network folder details	127
network path	119
network printer alias	109, 111, 119
network settings	76, 82
network tree	107
NTP server	16

O	
obtaining technical support	158
offset	74
operation logs	137
operation messages	433
operations	7, 27, 249
output tray	5

P

pad assembly	6, 357, 360, 367, 370
PAD ASSY	367
page orientation	334
paper quality	411
paper requirements	411
paper size	312, 314, 410
paper type	411
paper weight	411
part name	4
part to clean	357
PDF password	318, 323
pick roller	6, 357, 362, 367, 371
ping	129
plastic cards	413
port number list	18
positioning	296
pre-settings	
for using Central Admin Console	198
print	286
print server	16
printer details	114
printer list	286
processing a job	349
proxy server	87

Q

quick guide	
Central Admin Console	196

R

region/timezone	58
registering	
a network folder	116, 119
a network printer	107, 110

regular user	249
removing	
a network folder	126
a network printer	113
renaming	
a network folder	124
a network printer	112
replacement cycle	367, 368
replacing	
the keyboard cover	365, 376
the pad assembly	370
the pick roller	371
replacing parts	367
report to administrator	351
required scanner function settings	29
resetting the usage counter	135
resolution	316
restoring	
the user data store	147
rotating a scanned page	344

S

SAM account name	92
save	299
saving	
to a network folder	299
scaling	291
scan mode	317
scan settings	304, 318
scan test	378
scan viewer	340, 343
scanner specifications	431
search string	280
searchable PDF	318, 320

selecting	
a fax number	279
an e-mail address	269
semi-transparent documents	412
send fax	279
sending	
by e-mail	265
by fax	277
setting	
a file name format	67
a job group	182
a job item	166
a job menu	176
a job sequence	163
job features	159
scanner configuration	220
scanning performance	74
the Central Admin Server	215
the date/time	59, 61
the destination for alert notifications	128
the DNS server	82
the e-mail server	100
the fax server	101
the information output level	157
the job mode	236
the language	57
the LDAP search parameters	95
the multideed detection method	71
the network folders	115
the NTP server	85
the proxy server	87
the region/timezone	58
the scan options	304
the time to standby mode	61
the WINS server	84

sharpness	330
sheet guide	6
side guides	5
simplex	298
SMTP server	15, 100
specifications	419, 425, 429
standby	22
standby mode	62
startup button	5, 22, 263
system log	140
system settings	51
system settings file	149
system status	133

T

text recognition language	322
top cover	5
touch panel	32

U

ultrasonic sensor	357, 362
uninstalling	
an Add-in module	156
updating	
scanner system settings	232
the scanner's system software	153
updating System	228
URL	42
usage status	134, 135
user data store	148
user log	137, 346
user log summary	137
user principal name	92

V

viewing

a scanned page	343
event log	242
scanner-side status	239
the detailed settings for a job menu	181
the status of consumable parts	134
the system log details	140
the system status	133
the user log details	137

W

WINS server	16
wood containing paper	412

Symbols

[SCAN] button	5
---------------------	---

fi-6010N Network Scanner

Operator's Guide

P3PC-2372-01ENZ0

Date of issuance: July, 2008

Issuance responsibility: PFU LIMITED

- The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.
- PFU LIMITED is not liable whatsoever for any damages resulting from the use of this scanner and procedures described in this manual, profit loss due to defects, and any claims by a third party.
- Copying of the contents of this manual in whole or in part and copying of the scanner application is forbidden under the copyright law.